



البريد  
3rd

**SEC**  
PART ONE

**GREAT  
EXPECTATIONS**

**NEW!** 20  
24  
**HELLO!**





New Hello!

Great Expectations

الصف الثالث الثانوى

الجزء الاول

By

Mohamed Abdel Aal

Emad Fawzy

12

EXAMIN



# Contents

<b>Unit 1</b>	Read all about it! .....	7
	Al-Adwaa Test 1 .....	55
<b>Unit 2</b>	Her story .....	62
	Al-Adwaa Test 2 .....	109
<b>Unit 3</b>	Beyond imagination .....	116
	Al-Adwaa Test 3 .....	162
<b>Revision A</b>	Units 1, 2 & 3 .....	169
<b>Unit 4</b>	Taking care of ourselves .....	178
	Al-Adwaa Test 4 .....	221
<b>Unit 5</b>	The future of work .....	228
	Al-Adwaa Test 5 .....	276
<b>Unit 6</b>	Let's get it done! .....	283
	Al-Adwaa Test 6 .....	320
<b>Revision B</b>	Units 4, 5 & 6 .....	327
<b>Great Expectations</b>		
Chapter 1 .....		339
Chapter 2 .....		349
Chapter 3 .....		360
Chapter 4 .....		
Chapter 5 .....		381
Chapter 6 .....		392
Advanced General Exercises .....		403
Advanced General Exercises .....		412





# Read all about it!

## Unit 1

## Objectives

- Reading** : Compare different newspaper styles
- Writing** : A persuasive essay
- Listening** : Understand the key points in a lecture
- Speaking** : Report an event
- Language** : Review past simple, past continuous and present perfect tense
- Life Skills** : Identify bias and exaggeration

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى  
قناة الرقمية





## A Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

announce (v) (d)	يعلن/يذيع
broadsheet (n)	صحيفة بصفحات عريضة
casualty (n)	ضحية/مصاب
cheat (n) (v) (ed)	خداع/محتال/يخدع
claim (v) (ed)	يزعم/يدعي
compensate (v) (d)	يعوض عن
demand (n) (v) (ed)	طلب/يطلب

investigate (v) (d)*	يفحص/يتحقق
occur (v) (red)	يحدث
piracy (n)	قرصنة
ruin (v) (ed)	يدمر
shocked (adj)	مصدوم/متفاجئ
spin (v)	يدور/يدير
tabloid (n)	صحيفة شعبية

The police are **investigating** the crime.

لقرءاءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

accurate (adj)	دقيق	contents (n)	محتويات
afford (v) (ed)	يحمل نفقات	copy (n) (v) (ied)	نسخة/ينسخ
amazing (adj)	مذهل	crime (n)	جريمة
annoying (adj)	مزعج	dishonest (adj)	غير صادق/غير أمين
apply for (v) (ied)	يتقدم بطلب	exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب في مهنة	extreme (adj)	شديد/متطرف
article (n)	مقال	factual (adj)	حقيقي
author (n)	مؤلف/كاتب	fans (n)	مشجعون/معجبون
authority (n)	سلطة/هيئة	financially (adv)	مادياً/مالياً
block (v) (ed)	يسد/يعوق	full-time (adj)	دوام كامل
booksellers (n)	بائعو الكتب	give up (v)	يستسلم/يتخلى عن
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور	headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي (فد، الأذاعة)



illegal (adj)	غير شرعى/غير قانونى	rescuer (n)	منقذ
incident (n)	حدث	result (n)	نتيجة
journalism (n)	الصحافة	rhyme (n)	قافية/قصيدة (أغنية) صغيرة
journalist (n)	صحفى	route (n)	طريق
media (n)	إعلام/وسائل الإعلام	sand (n)	رمال
nervousness (n)	عصبية/توتر	security (n)	أمن
nosy (adj)	فضولى	site (n)	موقع
obviously (adv)	بوضوح	square (n) (adj)	مربع
product (n)	منتج	storm (n)	عاصفة
publish (v) (ed)	يطبع/ينشر	strict (adj)	حازم/صارم
qualities (n)	سمات	tonne (n)	طن
quote (n) (v) (d)	اقتباس/يقتبس	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
reporter (n)	مراسل صحفى	warning (n)	تحذير

### Workbook Vocabulary

convict (n)	مدان/محكوم عليه	permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
copyright (n)	حقوق الملكية الفكرية/حقوق التأليف والنشر	pirated (adj)	مقرصنة
court (n)	محكمة	punish (v) (ed)	يعاقب
criminal (adj)	إجرامى/جناي	punishment (n)	عقاب
Danish (adj)	دانماركى	refer to (v) (red)	يحيل إلى
digital (adj)	رقمى	require (v) (d)	يتطلب
former (adj)	سابق	sum (n)	مبلغ من المال
lawyer (n)	محام	textbooks (n)	كتب مدرسية
obtain (v) (ed)	يحصل على	violate (v) (d)	يخالف/ينتهك
pay (v)	أجر/يدفع		



## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The oil company ..... to be the biggest company in the Middle East, which is not true.  
a) improves      b) tries      c) claims      d) reminds
- 2 I am taking my son to the funfair to ..... him for not allowing him to go to the cinema last week.  
a) punish      b) compensate      c) pay      d) rule
- 3 The Prime Minister has ..... that public spending will be increased next year.  
a) announced      b) applied      c) presented      d) required
- 4 Hospitals in Turkey and Syria were on standby, ready to deal with ..... being brought from the earthquake site.  
a) builders      b) workers      c) celebrities      d) casualties
- 5 Experts say that there should be strict penalties ..... for tax .....  
a) fans      b) cheats      c) bosses      d) writers
- 6 Naguib Mahfouz's novels are a/an ..... description of life in Egypt during the early 20<sup>th</sup> century.  
a) strict      b) accurate      c) vague      d) unintended
- 7 Hedaya Malak became a/an ..... after winning two bronze medals at the Olympics.  
a) detective      b) author      c) celebrity      d) editor
- 8 A/An ..... neighbour actually videotaped the famous actor's family in their own backyard.  
a) nosy      b) honest      c) rescuer      d) innocent
- 9 The article about the crime included ..... from the detectives who worked on the case.  
a) rules      b) permissions      c) proverbs      d) quotes
- 10 My friend decided to ..... up smoking because of its bad effects.  
a) ruin      b) block      c) give      d) get

### Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة	find a chance for	يجد فرصة لـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	for that reason	لذلك السبب
(be) kept a secret	يحتفظ به كسر	return to normal	يعود إلى طبيعته
do an amazing job	يقوم بعمل مذهل	with bated breath	بفارغ الصبر
find out	يكشف	pass through	يمر عبر
go around	يدور حول	share on	يشارك على
open for	مفتوح لـ	travel through	يسافر عبر



## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
announce	يعلن	announcement announcer	إعلان/إذاعة مذيع	announced	معلن
compensate	يعوض	compensation	تعويض	compensatory	تعويضي
exist*	يوجد	existence	وجود	existent/existing	موجود
investigate	يحقق	investigation investigator	تحقيق محقق	investigative	تحقيقي
occur	يحدث	occurrence	حدوث		
		nublishing	نشر	published	منشور
			تحذير	warning	تحذيري

- Dinosaurs don't **exist** anymore.
- The **existence** of dinosaurs was thousands of years ago.
- Dinosaurs aren't **existent**.

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
block	يسد/يعوق	obstruct/hinder	allow/facilitate
claim	يدعى	allege/assert	conceal/hide
compensate	يعوض	make up for/repay	penalise
demand	يطلب	order/request	reply/offer
extreme	شديد	intense/severe	mild/low
factual	حقيقي/واقعي	real/realistic	false/fictional
nosy	فضولي	curious/inquisitive	uninterested/uncaring
occur	يحدث	take place/ happen	stop
result	نتيجة	consequence/outcome	cause
ruin	يهدم	devastate/ destroy	construct/repair
strict	صارم/حازم	stern	flexible/gentle



## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The real name of the winner was ..... a secret until the day of the ceremony.  
a) found                      b) offered                      c) kept                      d) covered
- 2 A nosy woman once asked him about his personal life. The synonym of the adjective "nosy" is ".....".  
a) curious                      b) uninterested  
c) uncaring                      d) ignorant
- 3 Poverty still exists in some African countries. The noun of the verb "exist" is ".....".  
a) exists                      b) existence  
c) existed                      d) existential
- 4 I waited for the results of my daughter's blood tests with bated .....  
a) interest                      b) wind                      c) breeze                      d) breath
- 5 You'll completely ruin the flowers if you touch them. The antonym of the verb "ruin" is ".....".  
a) devastate                      b) repair                      c) destroy                      d) reply
- 6 After the project of the New Suez Canal, the Canal is open ..... a larger number of ships.  
a) of                      b) at                      c) in                      d) for
- 7 He's quite a strict trainer, but we all like him. The adjective "strict" is the opposite of .....  
a) stern                      b) real                      c) flexible                      d) hard
- 8 With all the office work you are doing, you must ..... a chance for some mild exercises.  
a) find                      b) give                      c) open                      d) take
- 9 He claims to have met the President, but I don't believe him. The verb "claim" is similar in meaning to .....  
a) conceal                      b) allege                      c) hide                      d) inspect
- 10 The police sent a reporter to investigate the rumour. The adjective of the verb "investigate" is .....  
a) investigates                      b) investigating  
c) investigation                      d) investigative



## Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

**factual** واقعي/حقيقي (غير خيالي)

*based on facts, or involving facts*

The court makes its decision based on **factual** evidence.

**true** حقيقي/صادق

*based on real facts, and not imagined or invented*

The film was based on a **true** story.

**newspaper/paper** جريدة/صحيفة

There was an interesting article in the local **paper/newspaper** today.

**the press** الصحافة (تشمل كل المطبوعات الإخبارية كالجرائد والمجلات)

**The press** are always interested in stories about the royal family in England.

**the media** وسائل الإعلام (تشمل الصحف والمجلات والإذاعة والتلفزيون)

Terrorism is an issue that receives a lot of attention in **the media**.

**tabloid** صحيفة شعبية (صغيرة الحجم وتكثر فيها الصور والقصص البسيطة)

The famous actor earned much money after selling his wedding photos to **tabloids**.

**broadsheet** صحيفة ذات صفحات عريضة (تقل فيها الصور وتتناول الأخبار الجادة والدولية)

**Broadsheets** are aimed at educated readers with their serious articles.

**incident** حدث غير عادي أو غير سار أو جزء من سلسلة من الأحداث

*something that happens, especially something that is unusual or unpleasant, or something that is one of several events*

He died after a violent **incident** outside the club.  
This latest **incident** could put an end to his career.

**event** حدث مهم أو مشوق

*something that happens, especially something important or interesting*

There was much attention to the recent political **events** in the Middle East.

**occasion** مناسبة (اجتماعية أو احتفالية)

*an important social event or celebration*

She only wore the dress for special **occasions**.  
It was his 70<sup>th</sup> birthday, and friends and family gathered to mark the **occasion**.



### investigate

يتحرى / يفحص (لاكتشاف الحقائق عن شيء  
مثل جريمة أو حادث أو مسألة علمية)

to try to find out the truth about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem

- Police officers are **investigating** an explosion in the city centre.
- The aim of the study is to **investigate** how climate change is affecting animal behaviour.

4

### inspect

يفتش (يفحص شيئاً بعناية للتأكد من  
الصحة والأمان أو العمل بشكل صحيح)

to examine something carefully to make sure that it is correct, safe, or working properly, especially when it is your job to do this

- The building is regularly **inspected** by a fire safety officer.
- Some officials have already been here to **inspect** the damage caused by the storm.

### site

موقع (مستخدم لغرض محدد أو حدوث  
شيء مهم)

a place, especially one that will be used for a particular purpose or where something important happened

- There are plans to develop the **site** for housing.
- The area has become a dumping **site** for nuclear waste.

5

### scene

مشهد (مكان حدوث شيء سيئ)

the place where something bad such as an accident or crime happened

- Ambulance crews were at the accident **scene** within minutes.

### venue

موقع حدث (مكان حدث كاجتماع أو حفل  
أو لعبة)

a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game takes place

- The **venue** for the next Olympic Games is Italy.
- The hotel is a popular wedding **venue**.

### announce

يعلن عن (خبر/بيان)

The jury **announced** the winner of the competition to an excited audience.

6

### advertise

يعلن عن / يروج (منتج أو افتتاح)

Most companies **advertise** their products on the Internet.

### occur/ happen

يحدث (غالباً بدون ترتيب)

An accident involving over ten vehicles has **occurred/happened** on the highway.

7

### take place

يحدث (غالباً بخطة أو ترتيب)

The next meeting will **take place** on Thursday.



### Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I don't believe these exam results are a ..... reflection of my son's abilities.
  - a) factual
  - b) true
  - c) fictional
  - d) common
- 2 The police have shot dead four armed criminals in two separate ..... .
  - a) facts
  - b) events
  - c) occasions
  - d) incidents
- 3 The opening ceremony was fully reported in the ..... . All important TV channels and famous newspapers sent reporters.
  - a) press
  - b) tabloid
  - c) media
  - d) paper
- 4 The Ministry of Health hasn't yet chosen the ..... for the new hospital.
  - a) site
  - b) scene
  - c) venue
  - d) destination
- 5 An official from the Ministry of Tourism will ..... the new restaurant this afternoon.
  - a) inspect
  - b) investigate
  - c) search
  - d) research
- 6 The famous actress has signed a deal to ..... the company's hair care products.
  - a) announce
  - b) advertise
  - c) claim
  - d) respond
- 7 The five-star hotel in downtown Cairo is a popular wedding ..... because of its fantastic halls.
  - a) site
  - b) scene
  - c) venue
  - d) view
- 8 My elder brother doesn't like wearing suits. He only wears them on ..... formal ..... .
  - a) incident\*
  - b) occasion\*
  - c) occasic

قناة العباقره ك  
Telegram تطبيق





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Unfortunately, the researchers failed to provide the information ..... of them.  
a) inquired      b) acquired      c) demanded      d) released
- 2 There is a huge plan to plant thousands of trees in the area to ..... for the pollution gases generated by man.  
a) compensate      b) hire      c) demand      d) afford
- 3 Two people were robbed yesterday in two separate ..... in the street.  
a) rounds      b) feasts      c) results      d) incidents
- 4 ..... is the act of making illegal copies of DVDs, computer programs, books, etc, in order to sell them.  
a) Accuracy      b) Piracy      c) Inquiry      d) Copyright
- 5 The manager of the customer service is the one who can ..... that kind of complaints.  
a) investigate      b) duplicate      c) ignore      d) block
- 6 A pay rise has been ..... by the bank's head office for all the branches workers.  
a) assisted      b) published      c) announced      d) rehearsed
- 7 The young man was arrested for ..... traffic laws which resulted in a terrible accident.  
a) obeying      b) following      c) denying      d) violating
- 8 Thousands of tents have been set up in the area for the ..... of the last earthquake.  
a) passengers      b) casualties      c) survivors      d) rescuers
- 9 Cheap imported goods have actually ..... many industries in the country.  
a) ruined      b) refreshed      c) violated      d) contracted
- 10 The police reported that the fire had caused severe damage to the ..... of the building.  
a) costs      b) contents      c) sites      d) directions
- 11 The new student in our class is a ..... person who would interfere in anyone's personal affairs.  
a) nosy      b) friendly      c) criminal      d) former
- 12 The story about the war victims dominated newspaper ..... around the world.  
a) headlines      b) lines      c) addresses      d) fans
- 13 The guide asked the bus driver to take the shortest ..... back to the hotel because the tourists were really tired.  
a) method      b) avenue      c) route      d) view
- 14 A ..... is a newspaper that has large pages and that usually deals with serious subjects.  
a) press      b) tabloid      c) media      d) broadsheet



- 15 A ..... is a person who has been found guilty of a crime and sent to prison.  
a) lawyer      b) detective      c) convict      d) jailer
- 16 Huge ..... of money have been invested in projects in Sinai in the last few years.  
a) sums      b) quantities      c) qualities      d) assets
- 17 The electronic company has just launched a new ..... on the market.  
a) produce      b) tool      c) court      d) product
- 18 The plant is sensitive to extreme weather. The word "extreme" is the synonym of ".....".  
a) severe      b) mild      c) low      d) stern
- 19 The shop is about to close and is selling the products ..... low cost.  
a) in      b) at      c) of      d) out
- 20 I think you should take the highway as all other roads will force you to go ..... the city.  
a) next      b) straight      c) around      d) right
- 21 Experts believe that the economic conditions will take years to ..... to normal after the war in Ukraine.  
a) fly      b) drive      c) become      d) return
- 22 The study compares the ..... of heart disease among men in various countries.  
a) occur      b) occurrence      c) occurred      d) occurs
- 23 In the circus, the audience watched the man with bated ..... as he made his way across the wire, hoping that he would not fall.  
a) smell      b) sight      c) breath      d) breeze
- 24 All ships know that passing ..... the Suez Canal saves time and money.  
a) of      b) for      c) at      d) through
- 25 Historical books have their main ideas, and factual details arranged in a particular manner. The word "factual" is the antonym of ".....".  
a) fictional      b) real      c) true      d) effective
- 26 Publishing companies suffer a lot from .....; it's really a crime. (Longman)  
a) piracy      b) privacy      c) safety      d) security
- 27 A ..... newspaper has small pages and large photos. (Longman)  
a) broadcast      b) poster      c) tabloid      d) blog
- 28 It is ..... that some people were typing up copies of the book from the photos to share on social media, which is illegal. (Longman)  
a) comfortable      b) appeared      c) climbed      d) claimed
- 29 A successful journalist must be nosy and interested in people. This means that he/she has to be ..... (Longman)  
a) not curious and ambitious      b) curious and inquisitive  
c) cheerful and forgiving      d) unenthusiastically waiting for good news
- 30 It is not easy for young writers to ..... their new books. (Longman)  
a) write      b) appear      c) come out      d) publish



## 1

## Past simple

الماضي البسيط

To talk about actions completed in certain time in the past.

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث اكتملت في وقت محدد في الماضي.

## FORM

## Positive

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

• I/He/They **passed** the exam.

## Negative

Subj. + **didn't** + inf.• I/He/They **didn't watch** the match.

## Interrogative

Did + subj. + inf. ? / Wh-word + **did** + subj + inf. ?• **Did** the police **arrest** the criminal?• Where **did** he **spend** the holiday?

## Passive

Obj. + **was/ were** + P.P.• The criminal **was arrested**.

## USAGE الاستخدام

1

For an action which began and finished in the past: حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

• My mother **took** me to the dentist yesterday.• Mozart **wrote** more than 600 pieces of music.

2

For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past: للأحداث التي حدثت تباعاً واحداً تلو الآخر في الماضي.

• Yasser **worked** very fast and **finished** before everyone else in the class.

3

For past habits which are now finished: (We can also use: used to) للعادات التي كانت في الماضي ولم يعد لها وجود الآن.

• People **travelled/used to travel** on camels in the past.

4

For retelling stories: لسرد أحداث القصص

• When the thief **tried** to escape, the police **attacked** him bravely. In the end, he **was arrested** and **sent** to prison for life.



5

### Using (for) with past simple:

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع **for** للتعبير عن سيرة شخص ذاتية أو أحداث استمرت لعدد من السنين أو الشهور.

- My father **went to** the Faculty of Commerce **for** four years.
- My grandfather **lived** in Italy **for** 5 years.

6

### With (always – never – often, etc.) to express habits in the past:

يستخدم مع نفس ظروف التكرار التي تأتي مع المضارع البسيط ليبدل على العادة في الماضي.

- When he was a child, he **always walked** to school.
- I **never thought** that it would be possible to buy things on the internet.

The past simple is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع هذه التعبيرات

yesterday, last night/ week/ month/ year/ Friday, etc, two days/ weeks/ months ago, then, when, How long ago ...?, in 1900/ 2000/2012, the other day, etc.

- He **graduated** from Assuit University in 1991.
- How long ago did she **leave** her work?

The past simple with verbs: be, have and do:

Subject الفاعل	V. to (be)		V. to (have)		V. to (do)	
	Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي
I/ He/She/It	was	wasn't	had	didn't have	did	didn't do
We/You/ They	were	weren't				

لاحظ

١ لا يأتي بعد **v. to be** فعل في الماضي البسيط ولكن اسم أو صفة.

- Ali **was** a taxi driver ten years ago. (was + noun)
- Ali **was** ill last week. (was + adjective)

٢ بعض الأفعال المركبة عند استخدامها في الماضي، ولذلك يجب حفظ تصريفها جيدًا منها هذه الأفعال:

Some confusing verbs when used in the past:

1. fall	يسقط/ يقع	fell	fallen
fell	يوقع/ يقطع شجرة	felled	felled
2. find	يجد	found	found
found	يؤسس	founded	founded



3. lie	يستلقي/يضطجع	lay	lain
lay	تضع البيض/تعد منضدة	laid	laid
4. wind	يلف عقارب الساعة	wound	wound
wound	يجرح	wounded	wounded
5. ring	يتصل/يرن	rang	rung
ring	يضع دائرة حول	ringed	ringed

٢ نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر عند الحديث عن العادة في الماضي.

▶ When I was on holiday, I **went** to the beach every day.

#### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He ..... his leg in a skiing accident last winter.  
a) has broken      b) breaks      c) was broken      d) broke
- First, she knocked on the door. Then, she ..... inside.  
a) had gone      b) went      c) was going      d) goes
- I ..... like the film on TV last night.  
a) don't      b) am not      c) haven't      d) didn't
- ..... you at home yesterday morning?  
a) Did      b) Had      c) Were      d) Are
- Yesterday, he ..... lunch at a splendid restaurant.  
a) had      b) was having      c) is having      d) has
- They didn't believe him and ..... to laugh.  
a) begin      b) have begun      c) had begun      d) began
- How long ago .....?  
a) will she stay in Paris      b) did they leave  
c) does she study in the library      d) have you known her
- Thirty years ago, people ..... little about the internet and its benefits.  
a) had known      b) should know      c) knew      d) were knowing
- When my father was young, he always ..... to work.  
a) walked      b) was walking      c) had walked      d) walks
- Fifty years ago, people ..... used mobile phones.  
a) always      b) never      c) didn't      d) weren't



## Past habits: (used to - would)

للتعبير عن عادات الماضي يمكن استخدام:

### (1) used to + inf.

Affirmative	Yes/ No questions	Negative
نستخدم <b>used to</b> للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضي والروتين والأشياء التي كانت دائماً حقيقية ولم تعد الآن.	Did + subj. + use to	Subj. + didn't use to
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I <b>used to have</b> a bike, but now I don't.</li> <li>My father <b>used to be</b> a teacher, but now he is a manager in a big company.</li> <li>I <b>used to play</b> for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.</li> <li>Jeans <b>used to come</b> only in blue. Now you can buy them in any colour.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Did she/ they <b>use to have</b> a car when she was/ they were young?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>She/ They <b>didn't use to have</b> a car when she was/ they were young.</li> </ul>

### be (get) used to + v.ing

- (be used to) means 'be accustomed to', 'be in the habit of'.
- تعبّر **be (get) + used to + V + ing/noun/pronoun** عن عادة في الماضي وما زالت تحدث حتى الآن.
- My father is very active. He **is used to getting** up early.
- I **didn't like** my job at first, but I'm (get) **used to it** now.
- She **isn't used to living** in hot climates.

لاحظ

### Object + (be + used to) + inf. = passive

- ١ إذا جاء قبل **be used to** مفعول يأتي بعدها المصدر، وفي هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.
- This knife **is used to cut** onions.
- Object + (be + used for) + ing.

٢ تستخدم **be used for + v-ing** للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

- Knives **are used for cutting** things.
- Pens **are used for writing**.

### no longer/any longer

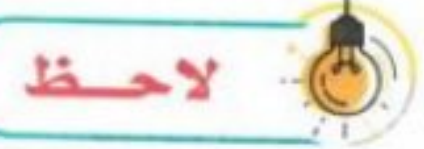
- ٣ نستخدم **no longer** وبعدها فعل مضارع أو **any longer** ومعها فعل مضارع منفى بدلاً من **used to**.
- Osama **no longer walks** regularly. = Osama **used to walk** regularly.
- Osama **doesn't walk** regularly **any longer**.



- ٤ في النفي دائماً نجد **didn't use to** ولكن يمكن نفي الجملة باستخدام التعبير الآتي **used not to**.
- Long time ago, clothes **used not to be** expensive.
- ٥ تستخدم **used** صفة بمعنى مُستخدم وهي من الفعل **use** بمعنى يستخدم.
- It's very dangerous to buy **used** clothes nowadays because of diseases.
- Used** cars are always much cheaper than the new ones.

## (2) would + inf.

- تستخدم **would + inf.** للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطي المتكرر في الماضي وليس للتعبير عن الشيء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.
- At weekends, my father **would go** and buy fruit and also he **would buy** me sweets.
- هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشيء أو وظيفة لديه.
- I **used to have** a bike when I was ten years old. (NOT: ~~I would have a bike ...~~)



**state verbs** لا تستخدم مع **would**

- I **used to know** much about football. (NOT: ~~I would know much about football.~~)
- ولمزيد من التوضيح نقول إن **would** تستخدم للأشياء التي كان من الممكن فعلها أو عدم فعلها مثل لعب الكرة فكنا نلعب أو لا نلعب ولكن شخص كانت وظيفته رساماً مثلاً فهل الوظيفة تتجزأ فتكون في وقت دون آخر بالطبع لا فهنا لا نستخدم **would** بل نستخدم **used to**.
- When I was younger, I **would play** with my friends.
- My brother ~~would be~~ a good painter. My brother **used to be** a good painter.

## Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I ..... football every Saturday morning, but now I don't have the time.  
a) didn't use to play      b) am playing  
c) play      d) used to play
- He ..... studying, but he does now.  
a) never use to      b) didn't used to like      c) didn't use to like      d) liked
- When we were on holiday, we ..... up early every day and spend all day on the beach.  
a) get      b) would get      c) will get      d) got
- Did you use to go to bed late when you ..... a child?  
a) were      b) was      c) used to be      d) would be
- When we were young, our father ..... us to the zoo and give us presents.  
a) used to took      b) was taking      c) took      d) would take
- We used to live in Alexandria, but now we ..... in Matrouh.  
a) lived      b) live      c) are lived      d) used to live



- 7 She ..... work in the city, but she does now.  
 a) didn't used to    b) wasn't used to    c) never used to    d) used to
- 8 Where did you ..... to play when you were young?  
 a) use    b) used    c) using    d) uses
- 9 When we were children, our mother ..... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.  
 a) was used to    b) would    c) wasn't used to    d) didn't used to
- 10 I ..... my mother in the house when I had more time.  
 a) used to help    b) would help    c) helped    d) all are possible

## 2 Past continuous

الماضي المستمر

For an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past.

للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي.

### FORM

#### Positive

Subj. + was/ were + v+ing ...  
 • I **was studying** English all night yesterday.

#### Negative

Subj. + wasn't/ weren't + v+ing ...  
 • I **wasn't reading** when the light went out.

#### Interrogative

Wh-word was/ were + subj. + v+ing? Was/ Were + subj. + v+ing?  
 • What **were** you **doing** when I phoned you?  
 • **Were** you **studying** yesterday at seven?

#### Passive

Obj. + was/ were + being + P.P.  
 • The lunch **was being cooked** when Ali came.

### USAGE الاستخدام

1 For an action which was in progress at a stated time in the past.

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي.

At 7 pm yesterday, they **were waiting** for Ola's arrival at the airport.

2 For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it.

يستخدم لحدث كان مستمراً (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير).  
 الحدث الطويل يوضع ماضياً مستمراً، والحدث القصير يوضع ماضياً بسيطاً.

He **was driving fast** when he **ran into** a big tree.



3

For two actions happening at the same time in the past.

حدثان في وقت واحد في الماضي.

Osama **was playing** games on his computer while Ramy **was watching** TV.

The past continuous is used with the following time expressions.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع هذه التعبيرات:

when, while, as, all day/ night/morning, etc.

While  
When  
As/ Just as

Past continuous

ماضٍ مستمر

Past simple

ماضٍ بسيط

Past simple

while

when

as/ just as

Past continuous

ماضٍ مستمر

لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع الماضي المستمر أو البسيط بعد **when** على حسب معنى الجملة.

She **was cleaning** the room **when** she **found** her ring.

**When** she **was cleaning** the room, she **found** her ring.

ولكى تصل إلى إتقان هذا الزمن لا بد أن تعلم أن الحدث المستمر (الأقدم) يوضع ماضيًا مستمرًا، والحدث القاطع يوضع ماضيًا بسيطًا.

### Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- While Yusuf ..... for the bus, it started to rain.  
a) waits      b) had waited      c) waited      d) was waiting
- Ahmed's car was hit by a driver who ..... at a mad speed.  
a) drive      b) was driving      c) was driven      d) drives
- What ..... when I called you? You sounded very busy.  
a) did you do      b) are you doing      c) were you doing      d) had you done
- As we were driving down the hill, a strange object ..... in the sky.  
a) appeared      b) was appearing      c) had appeared      d) was appeared
- They ..... that bridge when I visited last year. They haven't finished it yet.  
a) built      b) were building      c) had built      d) were building
- When I ..... my mother.  
a) did      b) was doing      c) had done      d) am doing



- 7 The musicians ..... for the concert all week.  
a) practising                      b) practised  
c) were practising                d) had practised
- 8 While the children ..... the kitchen, mother was washing the dishes.  
a) were tidying      b) tidied                      c) tidying                      d) tidy
- 9 What ..... in the library when the bell rang?  
a) did you read                      b) you were reading  
c) have you read                      d) were you reading
- 10 I was working on the computer ..... my son knocked on the door of my room.  
a) while                      b) when                      c) as                      d) during

### Extra Points

- 1** While + past simple (was/ were), past simple.

لا يمكن استخدام **being** بعد **was/ were** لأنها فعل لا يستخدم في الاستمرار.

- While I **was** ill, many people **visited** me.

- ## 2 While + v+ing

إذا لم يوجد فاعل

بعد **while** من الممكن أن يأتي فعل مضاف إليه **ing** وهنا لا بد أن يكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف من الجملة الأولى.

- **While** walking in the street, she **met** her old classmate.

وخطأ أن نقول:

- ▶ ~~While playing~~ football, it rained. ✕

فى الجملة السابقة يفهم من الجملة أن التى أمطرت هى التى كانت تلعب الكرة ولكن نقول:

- While **playing** football, Ahmed fell down.

فهنا الذي وقع هو الذي كان يلعب الكرة وهو أحمد.

- 3** During + noun = while + past cont.

مع بعد **during** ولا نستخدم **v+ing**، وإذا لزم الأمر نستخدم صفات الملكية قبل **v-ing**.

- During his stay in London, he met many famous people.

- During **my reading**, a bird flew into my room.

= While I was reading, a bird flew into my room.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 A lot of students ..... absent in class yesterday.  
a) didn't                      b) were                      c) aren't                      d) hadn't
- 2 When we reached the forest, the sky was dark and the wind .....  
a) blew                      b) blows                      c) was blowing                      d) is blowing
- 3 He ..... two houses, but he sold them last year.  
a) never had                      b) never used to have  
c) was used to having                      d) used to have
- 4 While he ..... along the road, a dog ..... in front of his car.  
a) was driving/ran                      b) was driving/was running  
c) drove/ran                      d) drove/was running
- 5 My mother made me a cake. It ..... of lemons.  
a) had tasted                      b) is tasting                      c) tasted                      d) was tasting
- 6 I was dreaming when the alarm clock ..... me up.  
a) was awaking                      b) had woken                      c) woke                      d) wakes
- 7 I ..... in the garden when the rain started.  
a) was being sat                      b) had been sat                      c) sat                      d) was sitting
- 8 My dad ..... on business trips to Japan four times last year.  
a) went                      b) used to go                      c) was going                      d) had gone
- 9 What ..... when the storm began?  
a) did you do                      b) were you doing                      c) are you doing                      d) have you done
- 10 He usually ..... late for the training sessions when he was a member in the team.  
a) arrived                      b) arrive                      c) is used to arrive                      d) arrives
- 11 The boys ..... when Belal fell down.  
a) had played                      b) played                      c) were playing                      d) play
- 12 I once ..... the newspaper every day. Now I read it online.  
a) have read                      b) had read                      c) was reading                      d) used to read
- 13 She ..... the prize because she had written the best composition.  
a) used to win                      b) won                      c) is winning                      d) wins
- 14 He was washing the car and ..... to the radio.  
a) listened                      b) listens                      c) listen                      d) listening
- 15 It was a terrible night yesterday. The dog ..... and I ..... to sleep.  
a) barked/was trying                      b) was barking/was trying  
c) barked/tried                      d) was barking/tried
- 16 When I was a student, I ..... up early and study my lessons.  
a) got                      b) was getting  
c) was used to get                      d) would get



- 17 A: Why didn't you go to the factory? B: I ..... no time.  
 a) had b) have c) hadn't d) didn't have
- 18 She ..... late for meetings. No wonder she was never promoted.  
 a) was always coming b) was coming  
 c) had come d) never came
- 19 While I ..... at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.  
 a) was being b) was c) have been d) had been
- 20 As my mother was exhausted, she fell asleep while ..... TV.  
 a) was watching b) being watched c) watching d) had watched
- 21 During ..... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.  
 a) walks b) walking c) was walking d) my walk
- 22 How many people ..... to the meeting yesterday?  
 a) did come b) came c) are coming d) come
- 23 While ..... at a high temperature, the food got burnt.  
 a) being cooked b) was cooking  
 c) cooking d) was being cooked
- 24 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?  
 a) When I was young, I was doing my homework every day.  
 b) When I was young, I do my homework every day.  
 c) When I was young, I did my homework every day.  
 d) When I was young, I was never done my homework every day.
- 25 Which one of the following sentences doesn't use the past continuous tense?  
 a) My father was always criticising me when I was young.  
 b) While driving fast, Ali had an accident.  
 c) The film was interesting, so we waited till the end.  
 d) During their stay in England, they learnt much English.
- 26 How long ago ..... your father come back from London? (Longman)  
 a) did b) has c) will d) had
- 27 While ..... for the school bus, I met one of my old friends. (Longman)  
 a) being waited b) am waiting c) was waiting d) waiting
- 28 My uncle ..... as a taxi driver for ten years. Now, he is a worker in a big clothes factory. (Longman)  
 a) worked b) was working c) has worked d) works
- 29 She ..... dinner when we returned home. (Longman)  
 a) doesn't make b) wasn't made c) isn't making d) wasn't making
- 30 I ..... dinner when Adel arrived, so I warmly asked him to share the meal with me. (Longman)  
 a) had b) am having c) was having d) had





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 The criminal tricked the old lady into giving him thousands of pounds, ..... that he would invest them for her.  
a) cheating      b) claiming      c) ignoring      d) neglecting
- 2 There are a number of ways in which the public can help the police to fight .....  
a) accuracy      b) affection      c) justice      d) crime
- 3 In my opinion, selling cigarettes to children and teenagers should be made .....  
a) logical      b) legal      c) illegal      d) accurate
- 4 The UN employees were visibly ..... by the terrible conditions they witnessed in the refugee camps.  
a) shocked      b) pleased      c) strict      d) annoying
- 5 Wreckage of the plane was seen 300 metres away from the crash .....  
a) view      b) scenery      c) site      d) position
- 6 Since his childhood, Dr Moustafa has shown great leadership .....  
a) sums      b) articles      c) quantities      d) qualities
- 7 A ..... is a newspaper which has small pages, large photos and short stories which are easy to explain.  
a) tabloid      b) broadsheet      c) comic      d) media
- 8 The police officers will ..... the cause of the train accident, focusing especially on safety issues.  
a) inspect      b) investigate      c) detect      d) refuse
- 9 Unfortunately, the movie was broadcast online by a ..... who had stolen a copy.  
a) reverse      b) route      c) former      d) cheat
- 10 Violence of some type seems to ..... in every society, whether poor or rich ones.  
a) punish      b) refer      c) place      d) occur
- 11 The young man couldn't ..... the money to go on the trip for his honeymoon.  
a) pass      b) stop      c) stand      d) afford
- 12 My sister had to go on a/an ..... diet and lost a lot of weight.  
a) obvious      b) strict      c) digital      d) easy
- 13 The customer service clerk told me that my complaint was ..... to the manager.  
a) released      b) applied      c) referred      d) replied
- 14 All cases of murder are tried in a ..... court because they deserve a strong penalty.  
a) criminal      b) lawful      c) ruling      d) political



- 15 My uncle had been working as an advisor to a ..... minister who has retired recently.  
a) formal                      b) present                      c) former                      d) clear

### Language

- 16 The dentist ..... my tooth out the other day.  
a) was taken                      b) is taking                      c) took                      d) will take
- 17 She ..... while she was working in the garden last weekend.  
a) was hurt                      b) was hurting                      c) had hurt                      d) hurt
- 18 He ..... nobody about his secret that day.  
a) was telling                      b) hadn't told                      c) didn't tell                      d) told
- 19 He gave me back the book and ..... me for lending it to him.  
a) was thanking                      b) thanked                      c) had thanked                      d) used to thank
- 20 While I was playing football, I ..... and broke my leg.  
a) was falling                      b) felled                      c) fell                      d) would fall
- 21 Sameh had an accident as he ..... the street.  
a) had crossed                      b) crossed                      c) is crossing                      d) was crossing
- 22 There ..... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.  
a) didn't use to be                      b) used to be                      c) would be                      d) didn't use to have
- 23 His father was a doctor and ..... to make his son a doctor, too.  
a) wants                      b) wanted                      c) had wanted                      d) was wanting
- 24 During his school years, my father ..... great interest in literature.  
a) would take                      b) had taken                      c) took                      d) used to taking
- 25 I was reading a book when you ..... me last night.  
a) were phoning                      b) had phoned                      c) phone                      d) phoned
- 26 When I was younger, I ..... swimming with my friends and spend a nice time on the beach.  
a) am used to go                      b) go                      c) went                      d) would go
- 27 While Huda was doing her homework, my sister ..... to music.  
a) listens                      b) is listening                      c) was listening                      d) had listened
- 28 When the old lady returned to her flat, she found that someone had broken in ..... her absence.  
a) during                      b) before                      c) until                      d) while
- 29 My father used to walk long distances. This means .....  
a) he doesn't walk long distances any longer  
b) he no longer walks long distances  
c) he walks but not long distances  
d) all are possible
- 30 During ..... to school, Ali met most of his friends.  
a) walking                      b) walk                      c) his walking                      d) was walking





## A Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

balanced (adj)	متوازن	omission (n)	حذف/إغفال
bias (n)	تحيز/انحياز	point of view	وجهة نظر
inaccurate (adj) *	غير دقيق	spin (n) (v)	تلفيق/يلفق (قصة)
mislead (v)	يضل		

The information seemed **inaccurate**, so we had to check the sources.



للقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

affair (n)	شأن/أمر	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
anxious (adj)	قلق	impact (n)	تأثير/تصادم
available (adj)	متوافر/متاح	impression (n)	انطباع
certain (adj)	محدد/مؤكد	leave out (v)	يغفل/يترك
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع	lecture (n)	محاضرة
citizen (n)	مواطن	managing (adj)	إداري/مسيطر
constant (adj)	دائم	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
course (n)	برنامج تعليمي	misleading (adj)	مضل
current (adj) (n)	حالي/جار/تيار	negative (adj) (n)	سلبي/شيء سلبي
cycle (n) (v) (d)	دورة/يركب دراجة	objective (adj) (n)	موضوعي/هدف
data (n)	بيانات	omit (v) (ted)	يحذف
editor (n)	محرر/رئيس التحرير	online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت



percent (adv)	بالمائة	social (adj)	اجتماعى
persuade (v) (d)	يقنع	spade (n)	جاروف
placement (n)	وضع/ترتيب/تحديد مستوى	spread (v)	ينشر/ينتشر
position (n) (v) (ed)	وضع/موقع/يضع فى مكان	staff (n)	طاقم العمل
positive (adj) (n)	إيجابى/شئ إيجابى	stressed (adj)	مضغوط/مجهد
post (v) (ed)	ينشر (على الإنترنت)	support (v) (ed)	يدعم/يؤيد
reaction (n)	رد فعل	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
recent (adj)	حديث/مؤخر	the public (n)	العامه/الجمهور
record (n)	رقم قياسى/ذو رقم قياسى	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
regular (adj)	منتظم	trapped (adj)	محتجز/محاصر
responsibility (n)	مسئولية	trust (v) (ed)	يثق فى
share (v) (d)	يشارك/يشارك فى	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
slide (n)	شريحة	update (n) (v) (d)	تحديث/يحدث
snowstorm (n)	عاصفة ثلجية	whilst (conj)	بينما/فى حين

### Workbook Vocabulary

attract (v) (ed)	يجذب	long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد
contrasting (adj)	متناقض	matter (n) (v) (ed)	أمر/يهم
guidebook (n)	دليل/كتاب إرشاد سياحى	organiser (n)	منظم
hire (n) (v) (d)	تأجير/يؤجر	owner (n)	مالك
intend (v) (ed)	يقصد/ينوى	recommend (v) (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ
lane (n)	حارة (فى طرقة)	regularly (adv)	بانتظام



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 A ..... diet contains lots of fruit and green vegetables as well as sources of protein.  
a) balanced      b) biased      c) perplexed      d) puzzling
- 2 We were surprised that Sami was ..... from the school team. He is our best player.  
a) developed      b) enclosed      c) included      d) omitted
- 3 Every employee shares ..... for the company's success and profits.  
a) distinction      b) event  
c) responsibility      d) stability
- 4 The war in Ukraine has had a disastrous ..... on the problem of food shortage in some poor countries.  
a) prospect      b) impact      c) defect      d) reason
- 5 Doctors are sure that the infection of malaria is ..... by polluted water.  
a) hidden      b) checked  
c) hailed      d) spread
- 6 The hospital conducted a/an ..... asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.  
a) search      b) experience      c) survey      d) edition
- 7 Unfortunately, when the companies begin producing electronic books, ..... editions appear online.  
a) imagined      b) pirated      c) retold      d) printed
- 8 I can easily ..... how frightening the accident must have been.  
a) imagine      b) advance      c) depart      d) decorate
- 9 The inspector had to ..... some of the staff problems in his report.  
a) deny      b) shout  
c) mention      d) tell
- 10 Some people's skin has an allergic ..... to certain types of fabric such as wool.  
a) reaction      b) reflection      c) agreement      d) balance



## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

get anxious	يصبح قلقاً	in my view	في رأيي
have a social responsibility	لديه مسؤولية اجتماعية	in turn	بدوره
have internet access	لديه وسيلة للإنترنت	make sure	يتأكد
in general	بشكل عام	take a photo	يلتقط صورة فوتوغرافية
agree with	يتفق مع	dig out	يحفر
careful about	حريص/حذر بشأن	impact on	تأثير على

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
balance	يوازن بين	balance	توازن	balanced	متوازن
bias	ينحاز/يتحيز	bias	انحياز/تحيز	biased	متحيز
edit	يحرر	edition editor	تحرير/طبعة محرر	editorial	تحريرى
omit*	يحذف	omission	حذف	omitted	محذوف
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
stress	يضغط/يجهد	stress	ضغط	stressed	مضغوط/مجهد
support	يدعم/يساند	support	دعم/مساندة	supportive/supporting	داعم/مساند

the repeated expressions.

long articles has its benefits.

ded and made available online. ★



## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
available	متوافر/متاح	accessible	unavailable غير متاح
balanced	متوازن	fair	biased/unfair متحيز/غير عادل
bias	تحيز/انحياز	preference/prejudice	fairness/justice عدالة
constant	دائم	continual/permanent	temporary/occasional مؤقت/عارض
current	حالي/جارٍ	present/ongoing	old/past قديم/ماضي
mislead	يضل	cheat	advise/guide ينصح/يرشد
negative	سلبى	adverse	positive إيجابى
objective	موضوعى	fair/unbiased	biased/unfair متحيز/غير عادل
omission	حذف	exclusion	addition/inclusion إضافة/إدراج
persuade	يقنع	convince	dissuade يثنى
regular	منتظم	common/usual	irregular غير منتظم
spread	ينشر	distribute	gather يجمع
support	يدعم	back up/assist	hinder/disapprove يعوق
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/old-fashioned	modern/up-to-date حديث/عصرى

### Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Employers must consider all candidates impartially **بحيادية** and without bias. The noun "bias" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
a) fairness      b) omission      c) prejudice      d) justice
- The present crisis in food supplies shows that rich countries should ..... a responsibility to help poor ones.  
a) make      b) have      c) turn      d) miss
- As she is going on a diet, Sara was careful ..... what she ate.  
a) about      b) for      c) of      d) in
- In my ....., most inventions have their own pros and cons.  
a) review      b) point      c) site      d) view
- My mother persuaded me to dye my hair red. The noun of the verb "persuade" is ".....".  
a) persuades      b) persuaded      c) persuasion      d) persuasive



- 6 The fridge keeps food at a constant low temperature. The word "constant" is the opposite of the word ".....".  
a) permanent      b) negative      c) positive      d) temporary
- 7 The famous writer writes a regular column for a national newspaper. The synonym of the adjective "regular" is ".....".  
a) usual      b) strange      c) consistent      d) gradual
- 8 Working outside means too much sun exposure, which ..... turn can lead to skin cancer.  
a) at      b) of      c) in      d) for
- 9 The forest fire spread very rapidly because of the strong wind. The antonym of the verb "spread" is .....  
a) distribute      b) gather      c) change      d) repeat
- 10 I agree ..... Mr Ahmed about his plan to improve the educational system.  
a) to      b) with      c) about      d) for

### Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

#### staff

طاقم العمل في مؤسسة

the people who work for an organisation

▶ The company's sales department has a **staff** of ten.

#### crew

١ - طاقم العمل في سفينة / طائرة  
٢ - مجموعة عاملة بمهارة خاصة

1- all the people who work on a ship or plane

2- a group of people working together with special skills

▶ My brother joined the **crew** of a large fishing boat.

▶ The director chose the best camera **crew** for the film.

#### cast

طاقم الممثلين في فيلم أو مسرحية

all the people who perform in a play, film, etc.

▶ Part of the movie's success lies in the strength of the supporting **cast**.

#### lane

حارة (أحد أجزاء طريق سيارات)

one of the two or three parallel areas on a road to keep traffic apart

▶ That careless driver changed **lanes** without signalling.

2

#### alley/alleyway

طريق جانبي ضيق بين البنايات عادة يؤدي إلى الطريق الرئيسي

a narrow street between or behind buildings, not usually used by cars

▶ A narrow **alley/alleyway** led up between the houses to the main street.

## قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





<b>recent</b> حديث (مصنوع/تام منذ فترة قصيرة)	All applicants should send a <b>recent</b> photo with their CVs.
<b>modern</b> حديث/متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة)	<b>Modern</b> technology has had a huge impact on all of us.
<b>spread</b> ينشر/ينتشر (أمراض/شائعات)	- Rats and flies <b>spread</b> diseases. - The fire <b>spread</b> rapidly because of the strong wind.
<b>publish</b> ينشر (كتاباً/مجلة/صحيفة)	All of these magazines are <b>published</b> by one organisation.
<b>prevail</b> يسود/يعم	In the end, justice <b>prevailed</b> and the men were set free.
<b>position</b> موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلاً) مكانة/وظيفة/مركز في الملعب	- First, get yourself into a comfortable <b>position</b> . - I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your <b>position</b> .
<b>location</b> موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلاً)	- We have not found a suitable <b>location</b> for the new offices. - Most of the movie was shot on <b>location</b> in Africa.

### Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The ..... of the plane instructed everyone to remain in their seats and tie their seat belts.  
a) crew                      b) staff                      c) cast                      d) gang
- The ..... of the factory inside city limits resulted in problems with the Ministry of Environment.  
a) scene                      b) location                      c) position                      d) sight
- The novel 'Harry Potter' was widely ..... after the success of the film.  
a) spread                      b) come                      c) prevailed                      d) published
- I didn't know you played hockey. In what ..... do you play?  
a) site                      b) location                      c) position                      d) sight
- Space travel is one of the wonders of ..... science.  
a) old                      b) recent                      c) vague                      d) modern
- Soldiers returning from the war soon ..... the disease through most of the region.  
a) spread                      b) published                      c) prevailed                      d) sowed
- We enjoyed the new play as it was very amusing and the ..... were very clever.  
a) staff                      b) crew                      c) cast                      d) audience





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 All social networking sites advise members to have a strong password to prevent anyone from ..... your page or account.  
a) checking      b) stealing      c) accessing      d) repairing
- 2 In order to make a fair report, reporters must not show political ..... of any kind.  
a) omission      b) research      c) justice      d) bias
- 3 The tourists complained that the old maps in the guidebook were ..... or incomplete.  
a) accurate      b) inaccurate      c) reliable      d) valuable
- 4 The new road to Upper Egypt is a highway with three .....  
a) streets      b) lines      c) lanes      d) alleys
- 5 The news channel was praised for its ..... view of the two sides of the war.  
a) biased      b) balanced      c) unjust      d) perplexing
- 6 The government insists that food is made ..... to poor people all over the country.  
a) avoidable      b) applicable      c) unavailable      d) available
- 7 We need the ..... of all people to overcome the effects of the economic crisis.  
a) efforts      b) objectives      c) impacts      d) exports
- 8 The chemistry professor is planning an illustrated ..... to be given to journalists on his findings.  
a) article      b) lecture      c) essay      d) view
- 9 The architecture and the ..... of shops in the New Capital is not random عشوائي; everything is accurately planned.  
a) bias      b) invention      c) placement      d) directory
- 10 The foreign immigrant married an American woman and became a US .....  
a) spy      b) citizen      c) editor      d) criminal
- 11 The company is in a bad financial ..... because of overproduction and distribution problems.  
a) position      b) location      c) site      d) scene
- 12 The famous writer was the ..... of a science magazine as well as an article and novel writer.  
a) musician      b) editor      c) seller      d) photographer
- 13 Road maps should be fully ..... after the establishments of many roads and bridges in the last few years.  
a) dated      b) removed      c) made up      d) updated

قناة العباقرة ٣ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





- 14 The idea that women shouldn't work is really a/an ..... and hateful view of women's place in society.  
a) modern      b) traditional      c) logical      d) imitative
- 15 The smell of freshly baked cookies ..... the children to the kitchen.  
a) attacked      b) contacted      c) attracted      d) conceived
- 16 Many language ..... are run by the British Council in Egypt.  
a) causes      b) aspects      c) carols      d) courses
- 17 The Ministry of Education ..... mainly textbooks and educational materials.  
a) publishes      b) prevails      c) spreads      d) stretches
- 18 Don't be ..... by your rival's friendly appearance—he's really a strong competitor.  
a) defected      b) misled      c) inspected      d) oppressed
- 19 Rainfall is a main link in the water ..... and a measure for changing climate.  
a) picture      b) programme      c) ring      d) cycle
- 20 It had taken a great deal of ..... to get my father to come with us.  
a) persuade      b) persuasion      c) persuaded      d) persuasive
- 21 The establishment of school libraries contributes to improving the learning process in .....  
a) special      b) vain      c) public      d) general
- 22 Scientists need to be objective when doing research to get good results. The adjective "objective" is similar in meaning to .....  
a) fair      b) biased      c) unjust      d) intelligent
- 23 The local people still use traditional farming methods which have been used for many years. The synonym of the word "traditional" is .....  
a) modern      b) old-fashioned      c) recent      d) updated
- 24 My mother ..... anxious when my brother was about to travel abroad.  
a) got      b) fell      c) had      d) failed
- 25 Winning an Olympic medal has a big impact ..... any champion's life.  
a) at      b) for      c) on      d) with
- 26 ..... is a type of media bias in which a journalist uses words and phrases to support or oppose a service, or even an idea. (Longman)  
a) Placement      b) Spin      c) Omission      d) Commission
- 27 ..... is one of the behaviours that you must stop practising. (Longman)  
a) Charity      b) Check      c) Cheat      d) Chat
- 28 The captain said that a strong wind ..... the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. (Longman)  
a) stopped      b) robbed      c) begun      d) spun
- 29 The journalist was biased by .....; he had put the story at the top of the page to show it was interesting. (Longman)  
a) repetition      b) omission      c) placement      d) spin
- 30 The police were able to rescue the people who were ..... inside the house during the fire. (Longman)  
a) typed      b) tripped      c) wrapped      d) trapped



## Present perfect

المضارع التام

## FORM

## Positive

Subj. + have/ has + P.P.

• They are happy. They **have won** the cup.

## Negative

Subj. + haven't/ hasn't + P.P.

• They **haven't left** the stadium yet.

## Interrogative

Wh-word + have/ has + subj. + P.P.?

• What **have** you **done** since the morning?

Have/ Has + subj. + P.P.?

• **Has** Karam **lost** his money?

## Passive

Obj. + have/ has + been + P.P.

• Chinese food **has** never **been sold** in my town.

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe

CREATORS  
TEAMالعباقرة ٣ ثانوي  
@taneasnawe  
علي التليجرام

## USAGE الاستخدام

1

يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمراً حتى الآن غالباً مع **for** وبعدها المدة المحسوبة أو **since** وبعدها نقطة بداية الحدث في الماضي.▶ Mona **has studied** English **for** ten years. (She is still studying.)▶ We **have been** at this school **since** 2019. (We are still at the school.)

2

يستخدم لحدث انتهى قريباً ونتيجته واضحة في الحاضر.

▶ Hala cannot play tennis because she **has hurt** her hand.

3

نستخدم أيضاً المضارع التام للتحدث عن تجارب أو أحداث سابقة (دون ذكر زمن وقوع الحدث)، غالباً مع **ever** أو **never**.▶ I **have never eaten** Chinese food.▶ **Have** you **ever ridden** a camel?

4

كما نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأحداث الحديثة التي لا نعتبرها ماضياً (غالباً مع **just**):▶ Leila isn't here. She's **just gone** out.



5

كما نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن الأحداث التي لم تحدث حتى الآن (غالبًا مع **yet**).  
 I **haven't received** a reply to my email **yet**.

6

كما يستخدم لحدث انتهى في وقت غير معروف في الماضي (التركيز يكون على الحدث، ووقت الحدث ليس مهمًا).  
 Omar **has been to** Paris four times.

يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات والتعبيرات الآتية:

Key words	Examples
already بالفعل	I have <b>already</b> bought a lot of bread.
just حاليًا	He has <b>just</b> come back from his holiday.
ever من قبل	Have you <b>ever</b> played hockey? This is the most impressive film I've <b>ever</b> watched.
never مطلقًا/أبدًا	I have <b>never</b> flown a plane before. I have <b>never</b> met a kinder person than my mother.
yet حتى الآن (النفى/السؤال)	She hasn't finished cleaning the flat <b>yet</b> . Has your course started <b>yet</b> ?
so far/up till now حتى الآن	Salah has scored 2 goals in this match <b>up till now</b> .
lately, recently حديثًا	Have you bought any shirts <b>recently/lately</b> ?
over على مر (السنين)	Egypt has changed <b>over the last 8 years</b> .
How long ...?	<b>How long</b> has he had that camera?
for (duration) منذ مدة	I haven't seen Mariam <b>for</b> 3 months.
since منذ نقطة بداية	She hasn't visited us <b>since</b> last May.

لاحظ

١- الفرق بين الأفعال الآتية:

have gone (to)	have been to	have been in
ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو في الطريق إلى هناك	ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه	يمكنك في مكان/يعيش
Where <b>has</b> Omar <b>gone</b> ? I can't find him.	Ahmed, where <b>have</b> you <b>been</b> ?	<b>I've been in</b> Cairo since 2000.

٢- الفرق بين **for** و **since**



<b>For</b>	a day/a month/a year	<b>Since</b>	+ ماضٍ بسيط he left school.
	weeks/months/years		Friday/Monday أيام
	several days/weeks/years		last June/April شهور
	2 hours		2 o'clock ساعات
	ages		2000 سنين
	a long time		+ his childhood عبارة اسمية
	the last week/year		last week/last year
			Then منذ ذلك الحين (بدل ماضٍ بسيط)

### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Look what you ..... . How can we clean the floor now?  
a) did b) will do c) had done d) have done
- The weather has been great ..... last week.  
a) for b) since c) when d) before
- I can't phone my parents because I ..... my mobile phone.  
a) would lose b) had lost c) have lost d) lose
- You can't see Tamer before Wednesday. He ..... London for a few days on business.  
a) has gone to b) has been to c) was in d) had been in
- My grandmother ..... ill since last week.  
a) is b) was c) had been d) has been
- The police ..... the thief yet.  
a) aren't catching b) haven't caught c) don't catch d) didn't catch
- I ..... him for five years. I don't know where he is.  
a) didn't see b) hadn't seen c) haven't seen d) don't see
- She has been in Spain ..... over three years.  
a) for b) yet c) since d) already
- A: When are you going to do your homework? B: I've ..... done it.  
a) yet b) ever c) still d) already
- My younger brother ..... three centimetres this month.  
a) grew b) has grown c) had grown d) is growing

قناة العباقرة ٣ ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe

Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

41





## Extra Points

### 1 Subject + last + past simple + when + past simple.

- ▶ I **last ate** fish when I **visited** my uncle in Alex. (since)

لتحويل الجمل التي بها **last** إلى **since** ننفي المضارع التام.

- ▶ I **haven't eaten** fish **since** I **visited** my uncle in Alex.

### 2 Present perfect + since + the last time + subj. + past simple

- ▶ I **haven't played** tennis **since the last time** I **met** Hossam in the club.

### 3 The last time + subj. + past simple + was + مدة + ago. (was in + سنة)

- ▶ The last time Ali **played** football was **10 years ago**. (was in 2013)
- ▶ Ali **hasn't played** football **since 2013**. (for 10 years)

### 4 It's + مدة + since + subj. + last + past simple

- ▶ It's **6 years** since I **last saw** Rania. (since/for)
- ▶ I **haven't seen** Rania **since 2016**. (for 7 years)

### 5 "never" is used with comparative adjectives and "ever" with superlative ones.

نستخدم **never** مع صفات المقارنة و **ever** مع التفضيل.

- ▶ I've **never bought** a faster car than Peugeot.
- ▶ Peugeot is the fastest car I've **ever bought**.

### 6 Present perfect is used with expressions such as: This is the first time/It's the second time.

- ▶ This **is the first time** Alaa **has visited** a European country.

### 7 Present perfect is used with words and expressions such as: today/this morning/ evening/week/month.

يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات والتعبيرات السابقة إذا كانت هذه الفترات الزمنية مستمرة إلى لحظة الكلام.

- ▶ He **has written** 3 reports this morning. (هذا الصباح لم ينته، فلربما يكتب تقارير أخرى)

### 8 We often use the present perfect with **already, yet and still** to express surprise.

نستخدم المضارع التام مع كلمات **already** و **still** للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- ▶ Our bus **still hasn't arrived**. It's too late.
- ▶ **Has he finished already?** How quick he is!



9 We use the present perfect with (after, when, as soon as) to refer to the future.

نستخدم المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية للإشارة للمستقبل.

- ▶ When/After/As soon as I have finished my work, I will help you.
- ▶ I'll leave the place when/after I've taken the money.

10 The present perfect and the present perfect continuous.

قد يستخدم المضارع التام والمستمر لبيان حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال مستمرًا، ولكن الأفعال الآتية لا تستخدم في الاستمرار فنستخدم معها المضارع التام فقط.

like, dislike, hate, enjoy, love, prefer, believe, think, notice, remember, understand, realise, seem, know, see, hear, feel, taste, look, smell, sound, be, contain, fit, include, belong, own, want, mean, appear, have, cost, owe, need, surprise

- ▶ He has owned this car for 5 years. He doesn't intend to sell it.
- ▶ I have had this camera since I got married. It's still in a good condition.

11 since + noun, present perfect

يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد since والجملة الأخرى مضارع تام.

- ▶ He hasn't visited us since his graduation.

12 since = as (for giving reasons)

بما أن (لأن)

تستخدم لبيان سبب اتخاذ شخص قرارًا بالقيام بشيء ما وفي أي زمن.

- ▶ We decided to go to the beach since it was a nice day.

### Present perfect and past simple

يستخدم كلا الزمنين (المضارع التام والماضي البسيط) للحديث عن الأحداث والمواقف التي انتهت. والفرق بينهما كالتالي:

المضارع التام Present perfect	الماضي البسيط Past simple
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- يستخدم المضارع التام لحدث تم ولكن له علاقة بالمضارع.</li> <li>- I've made a cake. Would you like a slice?</li> <li>- عند استخدام المضارع التام لا يتم ذكر وقت وقوع الحدث.</li> <li>- He has gone to Aswan. (He's still there).</li> <li>- I've spoken to the Minister this morning.</li> <li>- لقد تحدث مع الوزير في الصباح وما زال الوزير حيًا.</li> <li>- He has lived in Cairo for two years. (He's in Cairo now.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- يستخدم الماضي البسيط لحدث تم وليس له علاقة بالمضارع.</li> <li>- Hany wrote five reports yesterday morning.</li> <li>- نحدد متى حدث الفعل مع الماضي البسيط.</li> <li>- He went to Aswan last year.</li> <li>- I once spoke to Professor Zewail.</li> <li>- ليس للحدث علاقة بالمضارع لأن الدكتور زويل توفي.</li> <li>- He lived in Cairo for two years. (He doesn't live in Cairo now.)</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- يستخدم المضارع التام للأخبار عن الحدث أما الماضي البسيط فليسر التفاصيل.</li> <li>- A: Have you ever read any of Charles Dickens' stories?</li> <li>- B: Yes, we studied Oliver Twist last year.</li> <li>- I've found your glasses. They were in the car.</li> <li>- The President has arrived in London. He was met by the Prime Minister.</li> </ul>	





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Adel hasn't contacted me since he ..... Cairo.  
a) has left      b) had left      c) leaves      d) left
- 2 Belal is not here. He ..... to the dentist.  
a) has gone      b) went      c) had gone      d) was going
- 3 Ali's car is clean. He ..... it.  
a) washes      b) had washed      c) has just washed      d) washed
- 4 Most of us can't recognise Ali as he ..... a haircut.  
a) had      b) had had      c) is having      d) has had
- 5 We ..... the bus, so we're walking home.  
a) missed      b) have missed      c) are missing      d) had missed
- 6 The farmer is furious as he ..... some of his sheep.  
a) has lost      b) lost      c) is losing      d) will lose
- 7 My father ..... where he put his keys, so all of us are looking for them.  
a) had forgotten      b) is forgetting  
c) has forgotten      d) has been forgetting
- 8 They have owned that car ..... 2002.  
a) in      b) since      c) for      d) when
- 9 I ..... English since I was eight years old.  
a) have studied      b) have been studying      c) studied      d) both a & b
- 10 I ..... all my work. I am free now.  
a) do      b) have done      c) have been doing      d) am doing
- 11 ..... that cat since it was a kitten?  
a) Have you had      b) Did you have      c) Were you having      d) Do you have
- 12 My grammar ..... since Mr Mohamed came to our school.  
a) is improving      b) improved      c) has improved      d) will improve
- 13 What have you done ..... the last time I saw you?  
a) for      b) since      c) when      d) before
- 14 I can't do gymnastics because I ..... my leg.  
a) broke      b) had broken      c) am breaking      d) have broken
- 15 Our maths teacher ..... us a lot of homework last week, but he ..... us very much so far this week.  
a) gave/hasn't given      b) has given/didn't give  
c) gave/didn't give      d) had given/didn't give
- 16 A: ..... somewhere before?  
B: Yes, I saw you at Ali's wedding.  
a) Aren't we meeting      b) Hadn't we met  
c) Haven't we met      d) Didn't we meet





- 17 You'll feel a lot better after you ..... a rest.  
 a) had                      b) will have                      c) had had                      d) have had
- 18 Why has nothing .....?  
 a) done yet                      b) been done yet                      c) been done still                      d) never done
- 19 Food prices ..... rapidly in the past few months.  
 a) rise                      b) have been risen                      c) have risen                      d) had risen
- 20 My cousins have ..... Assuit since their childhood.  
 a) been in                      b) been to                      c) gone to                      d) gone in
- 21 Have you finished your task .....? You are very clever.  
 a) ever                      b) yet                      c) just                      d) already
- 22 I met Ahmed twice last month. I haven't seen him since .....  
 a) when                      b) then                      c) that                      d) than
- 23 Please ..... anything until the police .....  
 a) not touch/ arrive                      b) don't touch/ arrived  
 c) don't touch/ have arrived                      d) didn't touch/ had arrived
- 24 Which sentence is in the correct form of the present perfect tense?  
 a) I have done it yet.                      b) I haven't done it lately.  
 c) I haven't ever done it recently.                      d) I have done it yesterday.
- 25 Which sentence is structurally and meaningfully correct?  
 a) He has been to hospital since last Tuesday.  
 b) He has gone to hospital since last Tuesday.  
 c) He has gone in hospital since last Tuesday.  
 d) He has been in hospital since last Tuesday.
- 26 Sorry for being late, Sir. Please, let me in; I ..... in very bad traffic. (Longman)  
 a) have been                      b) have gone                      c) was                      d) had
- 27 I haven't seen Wael ..... the last time we met in the village. (Longman)  
 a) while                      b) when                      c) for                      d) since
- 28 A terrible accident ..... place on the Cairo-Alexandria desert road. (Longman)  
 a) was taken                      b) has taken                      c) has been taken                      d) had taken
- 29 Ali last caught fish when he was in Alexandria. This means that ..... (Longman)  
 a) Ali didn't catch fish since he was in Alexandria.  
 b) Ali didn't catch fish when he was in Alexandria.  
 c) Ali hasn't caught fish since he was in Alexandria.  
 d) Ali has been catching fish since he returned from Alexandria.
- 30 Which of the following is structurally correct? (Longman)  
 a) Have you already travelled to Aswan by ship?  
 b) Have you ever travelled to Aswan by ship?  
 c) I haven't already travelled to Aswan by ship.  
 d) I haven't travelled to Aswan by ship already.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 A group of terrorists have claimed ..... for yesterday's bomb attack.  
a) diversity      b) adversity      c) personality      d) responsibility
- 2 My father is a/an ..... customer of that shop because he likes the service there.  
a) regular      b) gradual      c) irregular      d) sudden
- 3 Journalists and TV ..... were waiting outside the hotel where the wedding of the famous actor was taking place.  
a) staffs      b) casts      c) crews      d) citizens
- 4 The famous runner broke the world ..... for the 1500 metres race.  
a) neck      b) promise      c) record      d) law
- 5 It's nice to have someone you can ..... your problems with.  
a) share      b) divide      c) split      d) devise
- 6 Some websites ..... young people by making them buy cheap products at a high price.  
a) promote      b) plead      c) assist      d) mislead
- 7 The ..... of the actress's name from the guest list was not a mistake.  
a) promotion      b) admission      c) omission      d) responsibility
- 8 A great number of people in Egypt have ..... to the internet, whether on a computer or a mobile phone.  
a) passage      b) access      c) entry      d) exit
- 9 The critic is well-known for judging all movies without ..... against/towards any actor or actress.  
a) bias      b) base      c) basis      d) basics
- 10 Most young men and women keep in touch with their friends through ..... media.  
a) economic      b) sociable      c) social      d) hateful
- 11 Businessmen sometimes hire a special consultant who can offer advice on managing their financial .....  
a) centres      b) affairs      c) impression      d) consumption
- 12 Thousands of people were ..... in their houses because of the snowstorm.  
a) trapped      b) freed      c) rewarded      d) puzzled
- 13 The newspaper published a/an ..... and objective report about the reasons for losing the medals in the Olympics.  
a) biased      b) unfair      c) balanced      d) misleading



14 I receive ..... for the applications on my mobile phone every now and then, which makes my mobile phone better.

a) dates                      b) viruses                      c) updates                      d) outdates

15 It is difficult to compare statistical إحصائي ..... from different countries.

a) truth                      b) timetables                      c) columns                      d) data

### Language

16 A: Where ..... at three? B: I was at the library.

a) have you gone                      b) was he                      c) you saw him                      d) were you

17 We don't live in Assuit now, but we ..... there for thirty years.

a) have lived                      b) lived                      c) are living                      d) live

18 When he realised I was looking at him, he ..... away.

a) was turning                      b) had turned                      c) turned                      d) is turning

19 Hamid's hair is wet because he ..... a shower.

a) has just had                      b) has never had                      c) has ever had                      d) isn't having

20 Tamer ..... a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.

a) is having                      b) has had                      c) had                      d) has

21 The doctor approached the patient with a smile and told him that he ..... better.

a) is looking                      b) has been looking                      c) was looking                      d) looks

22 Doaa ..... at the nearby school for three years when she was young.

a) works                      b) is working                      c) has worked                      d) worked

23 Mr Yang ..... hospital for three weeks now because of corona diseases.

a) has been in                      b) was                      c) has been to                      d) has gone to

24 We ..... the car, got our suitcases and went into the house.

a) had parked                      b) were parking                      c) parked                      d) have parked

25 My father ..... home at nine o'clock last night.

a) had arrived                      b) used to arrive                      c) was arriving                      d) arrived

26 What time ..... to school this morning?

a) did he come                      b) he came                      c) did he came                      d) he did come

27 What were you doing ..... I saw you in the park yesterday?

a) since                      b) when                      c) while                      d) after

28 Since they ..... acting, they ..... in three plays, a television commercial and two TV dramas.

a) began / are performing                      b) begin / have performed

c) began / have been performing                      d) began / have performed

29 How ..... clothes thousands of years ago?

a) did they used to make                      b) did they make

c) did they used to made                      d) did they use to made

30 What was the weather ..... when you woke up this morning?

a) liked                      b) like                      c) liking                      d) likes

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe







## Writing Skill

## Writing tips

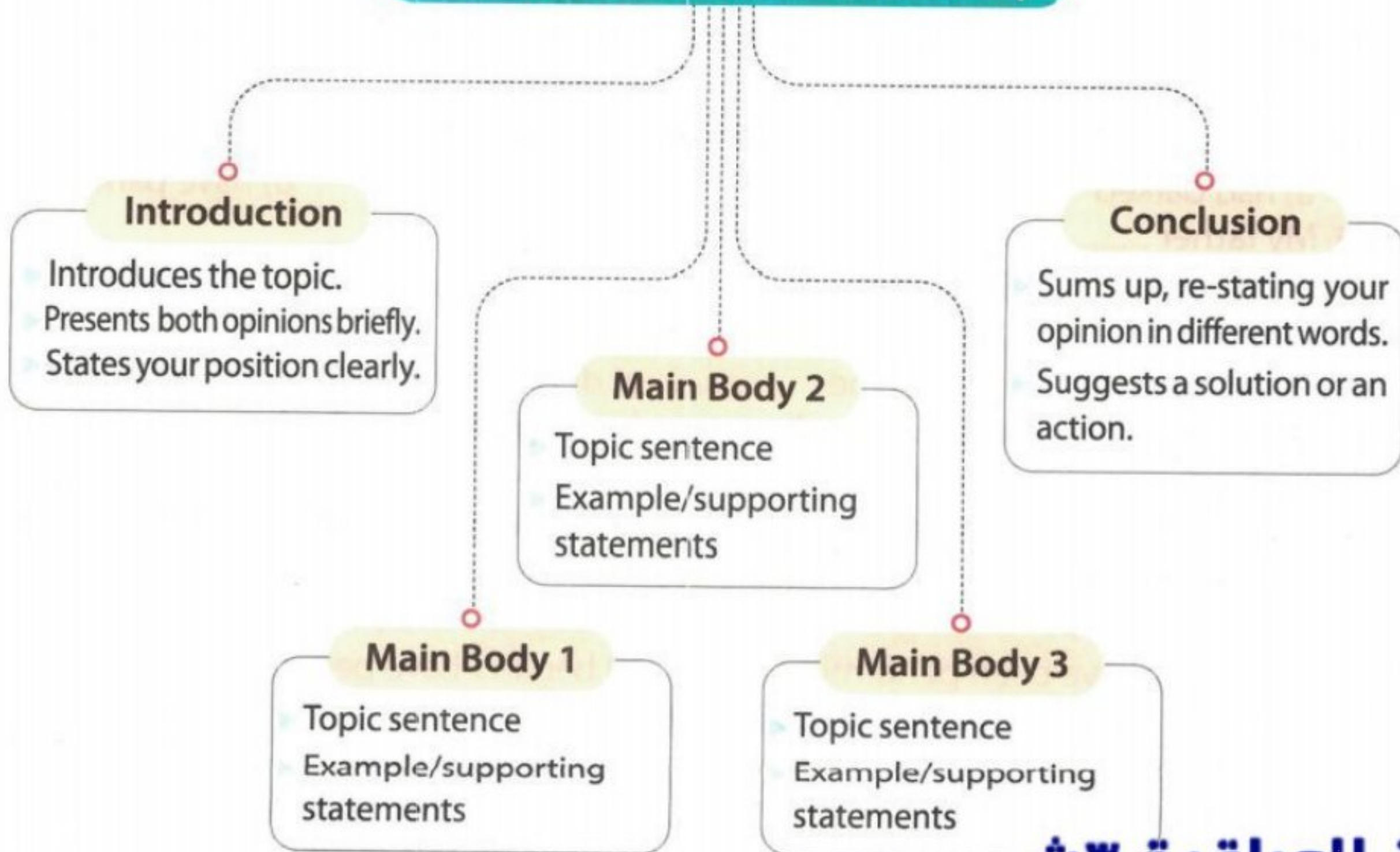
للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Persuasive Essay المقال الإقناعي

A persuasive essay is a type of writing where you use logic and arguments to convince readers of your point of view, using solid evidence such as research, stating facts, examples, and quotes from experts.

المقال الإقناعي هو نوع من الكتابة حيث يتم استخدام المنطق والحجج لإقناع القراء بوجهة نظرك، باستخدام أدلة قوية مثل البحث، وتوضيح الحقائق، والأمثلة، والاقتباسات من الخبراء.

## Outlines of a Persuasive Essay



قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe



## Model Persuasive Essay

### Social media

#### Introduction

Social media sites are a great platform for people to connect with their loved ones. They help in increasing communication and making connections with people all over the world. Although some people believe that social media sites are harmful, they are also very beneficial.

#### Main body

Social media sites are everywhere now. In other words, they have taken over almost every sphere of life. They come with both, advantages as well as disadvantages. If we talk about the educational field, these sites enhance education by having an influence on the learners. They can explore various topics for their projects.

Furthermore, the business field benefits a lot from social media sites. Companies use social media sites to connect better with their potential clients and business partners. Moreover, regarding finding jobs, people use the sites to connect with employers and firms that give them a broad opportunity to find better jobs.

Social media sites have created a massive presence in today's world. While there are many types of these sites, some are more famous than others. For instance, Facebook is the largest social media site. It has more than 1 billion users who keep increasing every day. Moreover, it also helps you promote your business or brand through advertisements.

#### Conclusion

In short, social media sites are a double-edged weapon. It depends on how we use them. Anything in excess is harmful; likewise, social media sites are too. Use them for your benefit and do not let them control your life.

## قناة العباقرة ٣ث

## علي تطبيق Telegram

## رابط القناة @taneasnawe







1 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

"She's coming. Hide it quickly!" The girls quickly **shoved**<sup>(1)</sup> it under the table and acted as if nothing had happened. When Miss Farida entered the classroom, everyone stood up and greeted her. She gave them a smile. The girls noticed that there was sadness in her eyes. Poor Miss Farida. They wished with all their hearts that they could do something to help her, but there was nothing that they could do. Miss Farida told them that she would miss them. She explained that she would give anything to stay as their form teacher, but she had no choice. Her father was **gravely**<sup>(2)</sup> ill. Her mother was too elderly to be left alone with him. She simply had to return to her hometown in a neighbouring country. Looking at the list of e-mail addresses in her hand, she promised she would keep in touch with them. She encouraged them to study and play hard and to always give their best. Then she got ready to leave. Our class **monitor**<sup>(3)</sup> walked over to her and handed her a small **package**<sup>(4)</sup>.

With **tears**<sup>(5)</sup> in her eyes, Miss Farida opened it. "It's from our trip to Siwa last term. Look at it and remember us always," said our monitor. She **nodded**<sup>(6)</sup>. "Thank you. I'll **frame**<sup>(7)</sup> it and put it up on the wall of my room." Then she left. Miss Farida is one of the best teachers who **devotes**<sup>(8)</sup> all her life to people, and she is never forgotten because of her cooperation and **tolerance**<sup>(9)</sup>.

1 The best title for the passage is ".....".

- a) Miss Farida's departure
- b) The good relation between Miss Farida and her class
- c) The gift to Miss Farida
- d) Miss Farida's good qualities and her strong personality

2 Miss Farida was .....

- a) the school headmistress
- b) a good student at a secondary school
- c) the class teacher
- d) ungrateful to her parents

3 Miss Farida had to leave the school because .....

- a) she was ill and needed to be looked after by her parents
- b) she hated her work at the school
- c) the students were naughty
- d) she had to return to her hometown in a neighbouring country



(9) تسامح

(7) يبروز) يضع في بروج

(8) يكرس الجهد

(5) دموع

(6) هز رأسه

(3) مراقب

(4) صندوق

(1) دفعت

(2) بخطورة



4 Miss Farida planned to keep in touch with the students by .....

- a) sending letters
- b) exchanging e-mails
- c) visiting each other
- d) meeting at the nearby club

5 The pronoun "it" refers to .....

- a) Miss Farida's photo at school
- b) the picture of Miss Farida's house
- c) the picture of Miss Farida's parents
- d) the gift for Miss Farida

6 The synonym of the word "devotes" is .....

- a) dedicates
- b) takes
- c) withdraws
- d) lets

7 The students will remember Miss Farida because of .....

- a) the gift they gave her
- b) her wealth and happiness
- c) her good qualities
- d) her care for her parents

8 Miss Farida encouraged her students to .....

- a) study hard and do their best
- b) play hard and give their best
- c) study hard and not to play
- d) both a & b

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Choose the sentence that demonstrates correct capitalisation.

- a) When people think of Paris, they think of the Eiffel Tower.
- b) The Empire state building is a symbol of New York City.
- c) Visitors to New York usually want to see the statue of liberty.
- d) The Golden gate bridge is in San Francisco.

2 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?

- a) Mr Ayman who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.
- b) Mr Ayman who was sitting behind the desk; gave me a big smile.
- c) Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.
- d) Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk gave me a big smile.

3 What is a hook?

- a) The last sentence of your introduction paragraph that grabs the reader's attention.
- b) The first sentence of your introduction paragraph that loses the reader's attention.
- c) The first sentence of your introduction paragraph that grabs the reader's attention
- d) The first sentence of your conclusion paragraph that grabs the reader's attention.





- 4 If you write a birthday greeting to a colleague, this will be a kind of a/an ..... .  
 a) formal email b) informal email  
 c) biography essay d) narrative essay
- 5 "Everybody agrees that television has changed the way we entertain." This can be a/an ..... of an essay.  
 a) introduction b) body  
 c) conclusion d) greeting
- 6 An expository essay is a kind of essay which ..... .  
 a) gives a clear, focused explanation of a topic  
 b) introduces an extended evidence-based argument  
 c) tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one  
 d) gives a detailed sensory description of something

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 Copyright is a type of intellectual property that protects original works of authorship. Its length of time is the life of the author plus seventy years after his death.

- (a) حقوق الطبع والنشر هي نوع من الممتلكات العقلية التي تحمي الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة وعرضها الزمني هو عمر المؤلف مضافاً إليه سبعون عاماً بعد وفاته .
- (b) حقوق الطبع والنشر هي نوع من الممتلكات العقلية التي تحمي الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة وطولها الزمني هو عمر المؤلف مضافاً إليه سبعون عاماً بعد وفاته .
- (c) حقوق الطبع والنشر هي نوع من الملكية الفكرية التي تحمي الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة ومدتها الزمني هو عمر المؤلف مضافاً إليه سبعون عاماً بعد وفاته .
- (d) حقوق الطبع والنشر هي نوع من الملكية الفكرية التي تحمي الأعمال الأصلية المؤلفة ومدتها الزمني هو عمر المؤلف أو قبل سبعين عاماً بعد وفاته .

- 2 Bias is defined as any tendency which prevents balanced consideration of a subject. It is usually caused by a writer or reporter's wish to impose his personal attitude on others.

- (a) يعرف التحيز بأنه أي اتجاه يمنع النظر المتوازن للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون سببه رغبة الكاتب أو المراسل في فرض موقفه الشخصي على الآخرين .
- (b) يعرف التحيز بأنه أي توجيه يمنع النظر المتوازن للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون سببه رغبة الكاتب أو المراسل في عرض موقفه الشخصي على الآخرين .
- (c) يعرف التحيز بأنه أي اتجاه يمنع النظر الموزون للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون نتيجة رغبة الكاتب أو المراسل في فرض موقفه الشخصي على الآخرين .
- (d) يعرف التحيز بأنه أي اتجاه يمنع النظر الموزون للموضوع، وعادة ما يكون سببه رغبة الكاتب أو المراسل في عرض موقفه الشخصي على الآخرين .



- 3 Some vocational training is being provided for young people from poorer villages as part of Egypt's "Decent Life" initiative. This will help them find a job which secures a stable income.

- (a) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب المهني للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من مبادرة «حياة كريمة» في مصر وسيساعد ذلك في العثور على وظيفة تتطلب دخلاً ثابتاً.
- (b) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب المهني للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من مبادرة «حياة كريمة» في مصر وسيساعد ذلك في العثور على وظيفة تؤمن لهم دخلاً ثابتاً.
- (c) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب التقني للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من بداية «حياة كريمة» في مصر وسيساعد ذلك في العثور على وظيفة تؤمن لهم دخلاً ثابتاً.
- (d) يتم تقديم بعض التدريب التقني للشباب من القرى الفقيرة كجزء من تعاقد «حياة كريمة» في مصر وسيساعد ذلك في العثور على وظيفة تؤمن لهم دخلاً ثابتاً.

**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

- 4 يعزو كثير من الاقتصاديين ارتفاع الأسعار إلى جشع التجار الذين يسعون إلى الكسب السريع دون مراعاة الأحوال الاقتصادية للمستهلكين.

- a) Many economists attribute the rise in prices to the humility of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of consumers.
- b) Many economists attribute the rise in prices to the greed of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of producers.
- c) Many economists contribute the rise in prices to the greed of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of consumers.
- d) Many economists attribute the rise in prices to the greed of merchants who seek to make quick profits without taking into account the economic conditions of consumers.

- 5 من أهم سمات المدرس الجيد القدرة على تحفيز الطلاب على الأداء المبدع والإنجاز الحقيقي وإشاعة البهجة بينهم.

- a) One of the most important characteristics of a good teacher is the ability to innovate students to creative performance and real achievement, and to spread joy among them.
- b) One of the most important characteristics of a good teacher is the ability to motivate students' creative performance and real achievement, and to spread joy among them.
- c) One of the most important characteristics of a good teacher is the ability to motivate students' creative performance and factual achievement, and to publish joy among them.
- d) One of the most important characteristics of a good teacher is the ability to motivate students' creative performance and real achievement, and to prevail joy among them.



6 التعليم ليس فقط وسيلة للحصول على فرص العمل واكتساب المعرفة، وإنما هو أيضًا أهم طرق تشكيل شخصية ووعي الطلاب الذين سيصبحون مواطني المستقبل.

- a) Education isn't only a means to get job opportunities and acquire knowledge but also, it is one of the most important ways of shaping the personality and awareness of students who will become citizens of the future.
- b) Education isn't only a means to offer job opportunities and require knowledge but also, it is the most important way of shaping the personality and consciousness of students who will become citizens of the future.
- c) Education isn't only a mean to get job opportunities and acquire knowledge but also, it is the most important way of shaping the personality and awareness of students who will become heroes of the future.
- d) Education is only a means to get job opportunities and require knowledge but also, it is the most important way of shaping the personality and consciousness of students who become citizens of the future.

4 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

Teachers should use social media to communicate with their students.  
Do you agree? State your opinion.

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe



I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The aim of the scientific study is to ..... how climate change can affect animal behaviour.  
a) investigate      b) duplicate      c) ignore      d) increase
- 2 A big truck had turned over on its side, and it ..... the road.  
a) listed      b) booked      c) blocked      d) constructed
- 3 At the school theatre, the play was made shorter by the ..... of two scenes.  
a) omission      b) addition      c) intrusion      d) inclusion
- 4 The strong ..... pulled the swimmer out to sea and he was rescued by a fishing boat.  
a) present      b) current      c) drought      d) currant
- 5 The company gives all applicants ..... tests to determine their level of proficiency.  
a) psychology      b) clue      c) placement      d) final
- 6 The editor refused to publish the report as it was full of ..... errors about the elections.  
a) factual      b) true      c) fictional      d) common
- 7 Don't be misled into thinking that scientific research is easy. The verb "misled" can be the synonym of the verb ".....".  
a) cheated      b) promoted      c) assisted      d) affected
- 8 The court ruled that the company that runs the security system should be fined to ..... the financial losses of the fire.  
a) punish      b) compensate      c) penalise      d) rule
- 9 A: Where ..... at three? B: I was at the library.  
a) have you gone      b) was he      c) you saw him      d) were you
- 10 My friend ..... a health problem since he lived in that highly polluted area.  
a) had had      b) has been      c) had      d) has had
- 11 Yesterday while I ..... in class, I felt a terrible pain in my head.  
a) had been sitting      b) am sitting      c) was sitting      d) sat



- 12 The company ..... a lot of money since it was founded.  
a) has made      b) made      c) is making      d) will make
- 13 Tamer ..... a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.  
a) is having      b) has had      c) had      d) has
- 14 "In short, smoking is a bad habit which should be fought by all means."  
This sentence can be a/an ..... of a persuasive paragraph or essay.  
a) topic sentence      b) hook sentence      c) introduction      d) conclusion

► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Human beings are **plagued** by all kinds of diseases and millions of people die from them. Many of these diseases such as **diabetes**<sup>(1)</sup>, **polio**<sup>(2)</sup>, **whooping**<sup>(3)</sup> cough and **diphtheria**<sup>(4)</sup> can be **fatal**<sup>(5)</sup> and in the past, people used to die from them. However, with modern technology and a lot of research, scientists and doctors have come up with various ways to cure these diseases, and **consequently**<sup>(6)</sup>, many lives are saved.

In doing medical research, doctors have come face to face with many problems. One such problem is the opposition that comes from animal **activists**<sup>(7)</sup>. They are against the inhuman treatment of animals. They argue that in **conducting**<sup>(8)</sup> their medical research, doctors put animals through a very painful process and this should be stopped.

To get their message across, animal activists are even willing to resort to the use of violence. Many animal protection groups have broken into laboratories illegally to 'rescue' animals.

In many cases, the animals were part of research for the cure for various diseases and visual defects in babies. Researchers have come up with many cures in the process of working with animals and on animals. In spite of what animal activists think, most researchers do not treat animals cruelly. In fact, **mistreated**<sup>(9)</sup> animals which are in **agony**<sup>(10)</sup> will affect the quality of research so that results obtained are not really reliable. Thus, researchers do try to treat animals as well as possible.

In the long run, animal activists can cause serious damage to the future of medicine. With their persistent **campaigning**<sup>(11)</sup>, much of the public supports their cause. People with AIDS or cancer need doctors to do research to save their lives, and often it is a case where animal research is **crucial**<sup>(12)</sup> before any cure can be found.



(11) تنظيم الحملات  
(12) ضروري

(9) أسىء لها  
(10) ألام شديد

(7) ناشطون  
(8) يجري

(5) مميت  
(6) بالتالي

(3) مرض الديكي  
(4) الدفتيريا

(1) مرض السكر  
(2) شلل الأطفال



15 A lot of fatal diseases can be cured today because of .....

- a) their weakness
- b) the hot weather
- c) modern technology and a lot of research
- d) the existence of animals

16 The use of 'plagued' in (paragraph 1) suggests that diseases

- a) are deadly
- b) are annoying
- c) have just been discovered by scientists
- d) have been bothering people for some time

17 The best title for the passage is '.....'

- a) Diseases and experimenting on animals
- b) Diseases in the past and present
- c) How to cure diseases
- d) The spread of diseases

18 The belief of animal activists is that .....

- a) animals should not experience any pain in experiments
- b) animals should not be sacrificed in experiments
- c) animals should only be used in experiments that aim to cure human diseases
- d) animals should be treated well so that it does not affect the quality of research

19 According to paragraph 3, animal activists may resort to ..... to champion their cause.

- a) writing
- b) debating
- c) brute force
- d) gentle persuasion

20 To save animals, ..... takes a back seat.

- a) improving medical equipment
- b) making better medicine for the rich
- c) improving the livelihood of humans
- d) finding the cure for diseases

21 Which of the following statements is false?

- a) Fatal diseases like diabetes and AIDS are a thing of the past.
- b) A majority of researchers are against cruelty to animals used in research.
- c) Many diseases are cured after animal testing had been done.
- d) A result of the campaigning by animal activists is getting the support of the people.

22 The antonym of the word "various" is .....

- a) numerous
- b) several
- c) countless
- d) few

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

It was a school holiday for Hazem and Mazen. They were studying in the same primary school. They wanted to go to the library that was in their neighbourhood. Being the older brother, Hazem was left in charge of Mazen. It took less than ten minutes to walk to the library.

The library was very quiet. Hazem was glad that it was not crowded. Normally when they came, the children's section would be packed with parents and their young children. Sometimes, the children **obstructed**<sup>(1)</sup> the way and made it difficult for people to walk. Yet, the parents never **bothered**<sup>(2)</sup> to correct the children's behaviour. **This irritated**<sup>(3)</sup> Hazem.

Hazem and Mazen had different interests. Hazem usually read books on the **mysteries**<sup>(4)</sup> while Mazen borrowed non-fiction books on cars. As Hazem was **flipping**<sup>(5)</sup> through a book, there was a sudden loud crash. At first, he ignored it. Then, a familiar voice called out, "Help! Help! I'm stuck!" He recognised the voice as Mazen's. He immediately put down his book and went in search of Mazen. Instead, he found a **pile**<sup>(6)</sup> of books on the floor and an arm sticking out from underneath it. Mazen was under the pile of books. Hazem **sighed**<sup>(7)</sup> and removed the books, freeing Mazen.

"What happened?" Hazem asked Mazen.

Mazen explained that he had found an interesting book, but it was on the **uppermost**<sup>(8)</sup> shelf. He tried to reach for it but could not. Thus, he attempted to climb up to the highest shelf by stepping on the lower ones. In the process, he ended up pulling down the books instead.

By this time, many eyes were on them, Hazem was red as a **beetroot**<sup>(9)</sup> from **embarrassment**<sup>(10)</sup>. The two of them quickly returned the fallen books onto the shelves and **scrambled**<sup>(11)</sup> out of the library.

23 The best title for the passage is ".....".

- a) An embarrassing situation in the library
- b) The two brothers had different interests
- c) The quiet library
- d) People at the library

24 Why did Hazem and Mazen go to the library?

- a) It was a school holiday.
- b) They wanted to celebrate.
- c) They wanted to join some friends.
- d) They were studying in the same school.



(11) اندفع

(9) البنجر  
(10) إخراج

(7) تنهد  
(8) الأعلى

(5) يقلب الصفحات  
(6) كومة

(3) أزعج  
(4) أشياء غامضة

(1) عرقل  
(2) متضجر



- 25 Which one of the following pieces of information is **not true**?
- a) Mazen was the younger brother.
  - b) The library was usually very empty.
  - c) The library was not crowded that day.
  - d) The brothers spent less than ten minutes walking to the library.

- 26 What does "**This**" in paragraph two refer to?
- a) The children irritating Hazem.
  - b) The children sitting on the floor.
  - c) The library being crowded with people.
  - d) The parents not bothering to correct their children's behaviour.

- 27 Which one of the following is true?
- a) The two brothers read mysteries.
  - b) The two brothers had different interests.
  - c) The two brothers read non-fiction books.
  - d) The two brothers were the same age.

- 28 What caused the crash?
- a) Mazen being ignored by his brother.
  - b) Mazen being stuck under a pile of books.
  - c) Mazen trying to reach for a book on the shelf.
  - d) Mazen having different interests from his brother.

- 29 Why did the two of them scramble out of the library?
- a) They looked like beetroots.
  - b) The library became very crowded.
  - c) They had to return the books to the shelf.
  - d) They were embarrassed by the commotion they had caused.

- 30 The antonym of the word "ignored" is ".....".
- a) overlooked
  - b) passed over
  - c) noted
  - d) unnoticed

**Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- 31 Egypt started to regain its leading role in the area. It hosts and supports talks to achieve peace and stability in the neighbouring countries.

- (a) بدأت مصرفى استعادة دورها الثانوى فى المنطقة، وأصبحت تستضيف وتدعم المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والتنمية للبلاد المجاورة.
- (b) بدأت مصرفى استعادة دورها القيادى فى المنطقة، وأصبحت تستضيف وتدعم المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار للبلاد المجاورة.
- (c) بدأت مصرفى استعادة دورها القيادى فى العالم، وأصبحت تستضيف وتدعم المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار للبلاد المجاورة.
- (d) بدأت مصرفى استعادة دورها القيادى فى المنطقة، وأصبحت تستبعد وتستنكر المحادثات لتحقيق السلام والاستقرار للبلاد المجاورة.

**قناة العباقرة ٣ث**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**





32 The social media has taken rumours to a whole new level. Celebrities and politicians are easy targets for internet rumours and their careers may be ruined by them.

- (a) نقلت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي الشائعات إلى سطح جديد تمامًا، والمشاهير والسياسيون أهداف عصية للشائعات الإنترنت وقد تدمر حياتهم المهنية.
- (b) نقلت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي الشائعات إلى مستوى جديد تمامًا، والمشاهير والسياسيون أهداف سهلة للشائعات الإنترنت وقد تدمر حياتهم المهنية.
- (c) غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي الشائعات إلى مستوى جديد تمامًا، والاحتفاليون والسياسيون أهداف سهلة للشائعات الإنترنت وقد تدفع حياتهم المهنية.
- (d) غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي الشائعات إلى مستوى جديد تمامًا، والمشاهير والسياسيون أهداف سهلة للشائعات الإنترنت وقد تزيد حياتهم المهنية.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

33 يتطلع الجميع إلى افتتاح العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة فهي مشروع قومي وستكون مقرًا للحكومة ومركزًا اقتصاديًا وثقافيًا رائدًا في الشرق الأوسط وشمال إفريقيا.

- a) Everyone is looking forward to the opening of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a national project and will be the centre of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Middle East and North Africa.
- b) Everyone is looking forward to the opening of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a national project and will be the seat of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Middle East and North Africa.
- c) Everyone is looking forward to open of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a local project and will be the seat of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Middle East and North Africa.
- d) Everyone is looking forward to the opening of the New Administrative Capital, as it is a local project and will be the centre of the government and a leading economic and cultural centre in the Far East and North Africa.

34 يجب على كل وسائل الإعلام مراعاة الدقة وتجنب التحيز في نقل الأخبار حيث إنها تلعب دورًا هامًا في تشكيل اتجاهات الناس في كل مكان.

- a) All media must inspect accuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important role in shaping the attitudes of people everywhere.
- b) All media must investigate accuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important role in painting the attitudes of people everywhere.
- c) All media must care for accuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important role in shaping the attitudes of people everywhere.
- d) All media must reserve inaccuracy and avoid bias in reporting the news as they play an important rule in shaping the attitudes of people everywhere.



**▶ Answer the following questions: (Great Expectations)**

**35** In your opinion, was Pip obliged to help the convict? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**36** Why, do you think, Mrs Joe treated her brother, Pip, badly?

```
=====
```

```
=====
```

```
=====
```

```
=====
```

**37 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:**

Do all students need to learn a foreign language? State your opinion.

*[The page contains faint horizontal ruling lines.]*

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 403



< 50%

**Study again**

50 : 64%

**Practise more**

65 : 84%

**Take more exams**

85 : 100%

**Well done!**





# Her story

## Unit 2

## Objectives

- Reading** : Extract information from three texts
- Writing** : A report on the results of a survey
- Listening** : Listen to a podcast about girls in education
- Speaking** : Make a speech about equality
- Language** : Comparatives and superlatives; past perfect simple and past perfect continuous
- Life Skills** : Critical thinking: Identifying inequality and challenging stereotypes

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى  
الوحدة الرسمى

CREATORS  
TEAM



@TANEASNAWE

متنساش تنضم لعلتنا علي التليجرام ♥





## A Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

award (n) (v) (ed)	وسام/يمنح وساماً	physicist (n)	عالم فيزياء
contribution (n)	مساهمة	prejudice (n)	تعصب/ظلم/تحيز
determination (n)	تصميم/عزم	qualify (v) (yied)	يحصل على مؤهل/يتأهل
karate (n)	رياضة الكاراتيه	rank (n) (v) (ed)	مرتبة/يضع في مرتبة
lecturer (n)	محاضر	role model (n)	قدوة/مثل أعلى
obstacle (n)	عقبة/عائق	round (n)	جولة (في دورة تنس)
overcome (v) *	يتغلب على	stereotype (n)	صورة نمطية
pharmacist (n)	صيدلي		

The ability to **overcome** your obstacles is a sign of wisdom.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

achievement (n)	إنجاز	celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفي/يحتفل بـ
advance (n) (v) (d)	تقدم/يتقدم	challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدي/يتحدى
association (n)	منظمة/رابطة	championship (n)	بطولة
assume (v) (d)	يفترض	Chief Executive Officer (CEO) (n)	رئيس تنفيذي
athlete (n)	رياضي	clinic (n)	عيادة
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
attitude (n)	شعور/اتجاه	confidence (n)	ثقة
beat (v)	يهزم/يتغلب على	consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
bronze medal (n)	ميدالية برونزية	court (n)	ملعب تنس

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





creative (adj)	مبدع	Olympics (n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
defeat (v) (ed)	يهزم	patience (n)	الصبر
defy (v) (y-ied)	يتحدى	physics (n)	الفيزياء
demonstrate (v) (d)	يظهر/يبين/يوضح	planet (n)	كوكب
difficulty (n)	صعوبة/مشقة	private (adj)	خاص
electricity (n)	كهرباء	prize (n)	جائزة
fans (n)	معجبون/مشجعون	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
female (n) (adj)	أنثى/أنثوى	professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
fixed (adj)	ثابت/محدد	recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على/يدرك
formula (n)	تركيبة	remarkable (adj)	مميز/رائع
fuel (n)	وقود	retire (v) (d)	يتقاعد
generate (v) (d)	يولد/ينتج	spark (v) (ed) (n)	يثير/شرارة
Grand Slam (n)	البطولات الأربع الكبرى للتنس	specialise (v) (d)	يتخصص
honour (v) (ed) (n)	يكرم/تكريم	state (v) (d)	يعلن
influence (v) (d) (n)	يؤثر على/تأثير	straw (n)	قش
innovate (v) (d)	يبدع	symbol (n)	رمز
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث	technical (adj)	فنى
invention (n)	اختراع	tournament (n)	دورة مباريات
knowledge (n)	معرفة	training (n)	تدريب
mathematics (n)	الرياضيات	treatment (n)	علاج
medical (adj)	طبي	unfair (adj)	غير عادل
medicine (n)	طب/دواء	unique (adj)	متفرد/متميز
minor (adj)	ثانوى/غير رئيسى	unreasonable (adj)	غير معقول/غير منطقى
natural (adj)	طبيعى	win (v) (n)	يفوز/فوز

**قناة العباقرة ٣**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**





## Workbook Vocabulary

administration (n)	إدارة/قسم	master's degree (n)	درجة الماجستير
aeronautics (n)	علم الطيران	medal (n)	ميدالية
aerospace (n)	الفضاء	opportunity (n)	فرصة
career (n)	حياة مهنية	organiser (n)	منظم
college (n)	كلية	point out (v) (ed)	يلفت النظر/يوضح
community (n)	مجتمع	prejudiced (adj)	متحامل/متعصب
contribute (v) (d)	يساهم	qualification (n)	مؤهّل
degree (n)	درجة (وحدة قياس) / درجة (شهادة جامعية)	review (v) (ed) (n)	يراجع/مراجعة
department (n)	قسم	suburb (n)	ضاحية/حي بعيد عن مركز المدينة
determined (adj)	مصمم/عاقد العزم	successful (adj)	ناجح
device (n)	جهاز	tunnel (n)	نفق
emergency (n)	طوارئ	volunteer (n)	متطوع
grade (n)	درجة/تقدير	volunteering (n)	تطوع/عمل تطوعي
graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج/خريج	youth (n)	شباب
junior (adj)	ناشئ/مبتدئ		

### Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Egypt has recently issued many laws which fight ..... against women in all fields.  
a) reflection      b) balance      c) fairness      d) prejudice
- 2 Every year, prizes are given to good people who made a great ..... to their society in all fields.  
a) defection      b) defeat      c) contribution      d) affection
- 3 After Nadeen ..... as a doctor, she had to spend at least three years working in public hospitals.  
a) qualified      b) volunteered      c) contributed      d) determined



- 4 After winning the World Cup, Messi was ..... as the best player in the world.  
a) rested      b) ranked      c) reached      d) completed
- 5 My son ..... from Cairo University with a degree in medicine.  
a) applied      b) ruled      c) enrolled      d) graduated
- 6 As he is only 17 years old, Sameer is a member of the club's ..... team and hopes to be in the senior one soon.  
a) professional      b) junior      c) allied      d) broad
- 7 The salesman at the gallery ..... out that none of the paintings is original.  
a) aimed      b) placed      c) pointed      d) breathed
- 8 Ferial Ashraf was a very ..... woman, so she won many medals in karate whether national or international.  
a) determined      b) passive      c) private      d) decided
- 9 The exhibition is a fantastic ..... to see the great works of our favourite artist.  
a) party      b) trip      c) opportunity      d) competition
- 10 The world should reduce the use of fossil ..... such as coal, gas and oil that cause pollution.  
a) liquids      b) materials      c) foods      d) fuels

### Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at that time	في ذلك الوقت	make a contribution to	يقوم بمساهمة لـ
do sport	يمارس رياضة	make ... successful	يجعل ... ناجحاً
give ... the confidence	يعطى ... الثقة	take advice from	يأخذ/يتبع نصيحة من
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	win an award	يفوز بجائزة أو وسام
contribute to	يساهم في	qualified as	مؤهل كـ
look up to	يُعجب بـ/يحترم	specialise in	يتخصص في
need for	حاجة لـ		





Derivatives					
Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز/تحقيق	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالي
compete	يتنافس	competition	منافسة	competitive	تنافسي
contribute	يساهم	contribution	مساهمة	contributory	مساهم
demonstrate	يظهر/يوضح	demonstration	إظهار	demonstrative	إيضاحي
generate *	يولد	generation	توليد/جيل	generative/generated	توليدي/مولد
inspire	يلهم/يوحى بـ	inspiration	وحي/إلهام	inspired	مودعي
qualify	يؤهل/يتأهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
recognise	يتعرف على/يدرك	recognition	تمييز/إدراك	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
treat	يعالج	treatment	علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه

- The stations **generate** the power needed for the factories.
- The **generation** of power depends on fuel.
- The **generated** power of the station is sufficient.

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
achievement	إنجاز	accomplishment/success	defeat/failure هزيمة/فشل
award	يمنح وسامًا	grant/present	refuse يرفض
defy	يتحدى	challenge/oppose	assist/encourage يساعد/يشجع
demonstrate	يظهر/يوضح	explain/illustrate	confuse/hide يربك/يخفي
honour	يكرم	appreciate/praise	insult/disregard يهين/يدين
impressive	مؤثر	extraordinary/remarkable	common/unexciting عادي/غير شيق
inspire	يلهم/يحث	influence/motivate	discourage/depress يثبط/يحبط
prejudice	تعصب/تحيز	intolerance/bias	fairness/tolerance عدالة/تسامح
professional	محترف	experienced/skilful	inefficient/untalented غير كفء/غير موهوب

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## Vocabulary Check point 2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1** As a teacher, she has inspired generations of students. The verb "inspire" is a synonym of the verb ".....".  
a) aspire                                      b) depress  
c) discourage                                d) motivate
- 2** The charity director thanked all the people who contributed ..... the project of the new cancer hospital.  
a) with                                      b) to                                      c) for                                      d) out
- 3** Forty members of our family got together to ..... my grandfather's birthday.  
a) celebrate                                      b) celebration  
c) celebrated                                      d) celebratory
- 4** The teacher demonstrated how to use the microscope. The verb "demonstrate" is similar in meaning to .....
- a) confuse                                      b) hide                                      c) explain                                      d) defy
- 5** I ..... my father's advice and applied to study at the Faculty of Arts.  
a) did                                      b) made                                      c) broke                                      d) took
- 6** Doctors always say that people who ..... sport regularly feel healthy.  
a) do                                      b) make                                      c) take                                      d) follow
- 7** He'd completely changed - I didn't recognise him. The noun of the verb "recognise" is .....  
a) recognises                                      b) recognised  
c) recognition                                      d) recognisable
- 8** Hard work and determination are two of the most important qualities which can ..... you successful.  
a) do                                      b) make                                      c) give                                      d) take
- 9** Two firefighters have been honoured for their courage. The word "honour" is the opposite of ".....".  
a) appreciate                                      b) insult                                      c) praise                                      d) respect
- 10** After seven years at the university, my son qualified ..... a doctor.  
a) for                                      b) to                                      c) in                                      d) as



## court

تستخدم **court** بأكثر من معنى منها:  
١ - ملعب لبعض الرياضات مثل التنس

- ١ - The tennis players are due on the **court** in an hour.  
٢ - محكمة  
- Four people, who are charged with robbery, will appear in **court** today.  
٣ - بلاط ملكي  
- All **court** officials denied the rumours about the prince's marriage.

## attend

تستخدم **attend** بأكثر من معنى منها:  
١ - يحضر مناسبة أو اجتماعاً

- ٢ - The meeting is on the fifth and we're hoping everyone will **attend**.  
٣ - يداوم الذهاب أو الحضور إلى مكان مثل جامعة أو مسجد أو كنيسة  
٢ - Which school do your children **attend**?  
٣ - ينتبه/يعطى اهتماماً لـ  
- The customer service staff will **attend** to your complaints.  
٤ - يعتنى بشخص (خاصة عند مرضه)  
- My grandmother is 70 years old and needs to be **attended** by us.

## present

هدية

I'm going to buy a wedding **present** for my sister.

## prize

جائزة

You can win a **prize** if you practise harder for the race.

3

## reward

مكافأة

The young clerk has received a **reward** for being hardworking at the office.

## award

وسام/جائزة رسمية

Mohamed Salah received the Player of the Year **Award** in England in 2018.

## recognise

- ١ - يتعرف على (يعرف شخصاً أو شيئاً لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل)  
٢ - يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء

- I didn't **recognise** you in your uniform.  
- The new doctor tried to get his work **recognised** by the medical profession.

4

## realise

- ١ - يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئاً)  
٢ - يحقق (شيئاً كان يتمناه)

- Do you **realise** you're an hour late?  
- She never **realised** her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.

## قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





**stereotype**

صورة نمطية (رأى غالبًا غير صحيح)

The new film defies the **stereotype** of women as passive victims.**image**

5 صورة (رأى عن شخص أو شيء خاصة عن طريق دعاية ما)

The company needs to create a new **image** for itself.**reputation**

سمعة (رأى عن شخص أو شركة مثلًا بسبب الماضي)

The restaurant has an excellent **reputation** and attracts many customers.**Vocabulary Check point 3****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The Nobel Prize is the most important ..... that a scientist or a writer can get.  
a) present      b) award      c) reward      d) race
- 2 My cousin had malaria, but the young doctor couldn't ..... the symptoms.  
a) realise      b) recognise      c) visualise      d) remind
- 3 The old patient was attended by two nurses. The verb "attend" here means to .....  
a) go to      b) understand      c) care for      d) fetch
- 4 The restaurant doesn't really deserve the bad ..... it has gained over the years.  
a) image      b) stereotype      c) view      d) reputation
- 5 When he watched the TV show, he ..... he'd seen it before.  
a) realised      b) recognised      c) organised      d) forgot
- 6 The police offered a/an ..... for any information about the robbery.  
a) present      b) award      c) reward      d) prize
- 7 Many people still believe that old ..... about women as a housewife only.  
a) scene      b) image      c) reputation      d) stereotype
- 8 The boy is wrapping a/an ..... for his mother on her birthday.  
a) prize      b) award      c) present      d) reward







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The United Nations is working hard to fight any kind of ..... against women and minorities all over the world.  
a) excitement      b) enthusiasm      c) attitude      d) prejudice
- 2 The novel has been criticised for reinforcing يرسخ the ..... of the Egyptian villages as dull and boring places.  
a) practices      b) influences      c) stereotypes      d) records
- 3 Our teacher of English always tries to find stories that will ..... our imaginations.  
a) destroy      b) spark      c) specialise      d) share
- 4 As Ashraf was not a hard worker, it took him seven years to ..... in law.  
a) qualify      b) purify      c) defy      d) petrify
- 5 After I watch this match, I will have watched all the matches in this tennis .....  
a) league      b) trophy      c) tournament      d) race
- 6 It is believed that Einstein, the great scientist, reshaped modern ..... with his theories.  
a) biology      b) geography      c) maths      d) physics
- 7 All pupils are expected to ..... the school assembly الطابور المدرسى otherwise they will be punished.  
a) consider      b) agree      c) attend      d) depend
- 8 My friend and I are going to enter an athletics ..... . We both hope to win something.  
a) debate      b) competition      c) profession      d) quiz
- 9 The main ..... to carry out our project successfully was the lack of money.  
a) merit      b) treatment      c) change      d) obstacle
- 10 We don't have much ..... in our team after their bad matches in recent weeks.  
a) achievement      b) confidence      c) suspicion      d) advance
- 11 Hedaya Malak was such a ..... sportswoman that she won two Olympic medals in different weights of taekwondo.  
a) determined      b) decided      c) depressed      d) blessed
- 12 Have you had any ..... treatment during the last three years?  
a) natural      b) medical      c) technical      d) personal
- 13 In many countries, the wind is used to ..... electricity.  
a) invest      b) do      c) generate      d) invent
- 14 The life story of Hilana Sedarous ..... many women to do better as working women.  
a) respired      b) conspired      c) aspired      d) inspired
- 15 The hospital ..... is working hard to improve the service presented to the patients.  
a) customer      b) contribution      c) administration      d) inspection



- 16 The children's ..... in my favourite clothes store sells a wide range of good quality clothes.  
a) college      b) department      c) administration      d) clinic
- 17 Mohamed Salah has been a positive role ..... for many young men all over the world.  
a) symbol      b) image      c) model      d) ego
- 18 Most young people get all their ..... about politics from watching the television.  
a) formula      b) science      c) attitude      d) knowledge
- 19 The Olympic medal winners have recently ..... awards for their achievement.  
a) rewarded      b) won      c) gained      d) rejected
- 20 My father's architecture office specialises ..... interior design.  
a) in      b) for      c) at      d) on
- 21 She has defied all hardships and achieved a lot of success. The verb "defy" is the synonym of the verb ".....".  
a) imply      b) follow      c) obey      d) challenge
- 22 The businessman wanted to make a financial ..... to the charity in the countryside.  
a) contribute      b) contribution      c) contributory      d) contributed
- 23 I've always looked ..... to my father for his courage and determination.  
a) after      b) for      c) up      d) through
- 24 There have been great advances in the ..... of cancer in Egypt, especially in the field of children's cancer.  
a) treat      b) treatment      c) treated      d) treatable
- 25 This business plan looks very professional. The adjective "professional" is the antonym of the adjective ".....".  
a) gifted      b) brilliant      c) inefficient      d) educated
- 26 Hilana Sedarous was ..... one of the first medical students to study in England. (Longman)  
a) regarded      b) considered      c) thought      d) believed
- 27 China has made a distinguished ..... in developing a vaccine to combat the coronavirus. (Longman)  
a) contribution      b) ammunition      c) contamination      d) radiation
- 28 Yasmeen's winning invention was ..... by the endless encouragement of her parents. (Longman)  
a) appeared      b) sparkled      c) sparked      d) replaced
- 29 A role ..... is a person looked to by others as an example to be imitated. (Longman)  
a) module      b) middle      c) model      d) medal
- 30 I paid close attention to the ..... and jotted down ..... key points to get ready for the final exam. (Longman)  
a) maker      b) lecturer      c) listener      d) worker





## The Past Perfect and Past Perfect Continuous

الماضي التام والماضي التام المستمر

1

## Past Perfect

الماضي التام

For an action which happened before another past action.

يستخدم الماضي التام لبيان أن حدثاً تم قبل حدث آخر أو بحلول وقت معين في الماضي.

Before last Friday

ماضي تام

Last Friday

ماضي بسيط

Now

الآن

- ▶ He **had graduated** in physics from Cairo University **by** 1990.
- ▶ My father **had saved** money **before** he **bought** the car.

## FORM

## Positive

Subj. + had + P.P.

- By yesterday, I **had read** 5 stories.

## Negative

Subj. + hadn't + P.P.

- I **hadn't seen** him before he talked to me.

## Interrogative

Had + subj. + P.P.?/ Wh-word + had + subj. + P.P.?

- What **had** she **done** before going out?
- **Had** Osama **bought** the tickets by yesterday?

## Passive

Obj. + had been + P.P.

- By yesterday, all the tickets **had been sold**.

قناة العباقرة ٣  
علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe



## الاستخدام USAGE

1

For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد في الماضي: الحدث الأول تام والثاني بسيط.

- ▶ I **showed** my mother what I **had bought** from the market.
- ▶ He **admitted** that he **had lied** to his father more than once.

2

For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past.

يعبر عن حدث انتهى في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.

- ▶ There **was** glass on the floor as Osama **had broken** the window.



3

### For duration before something in the past with state verbs.

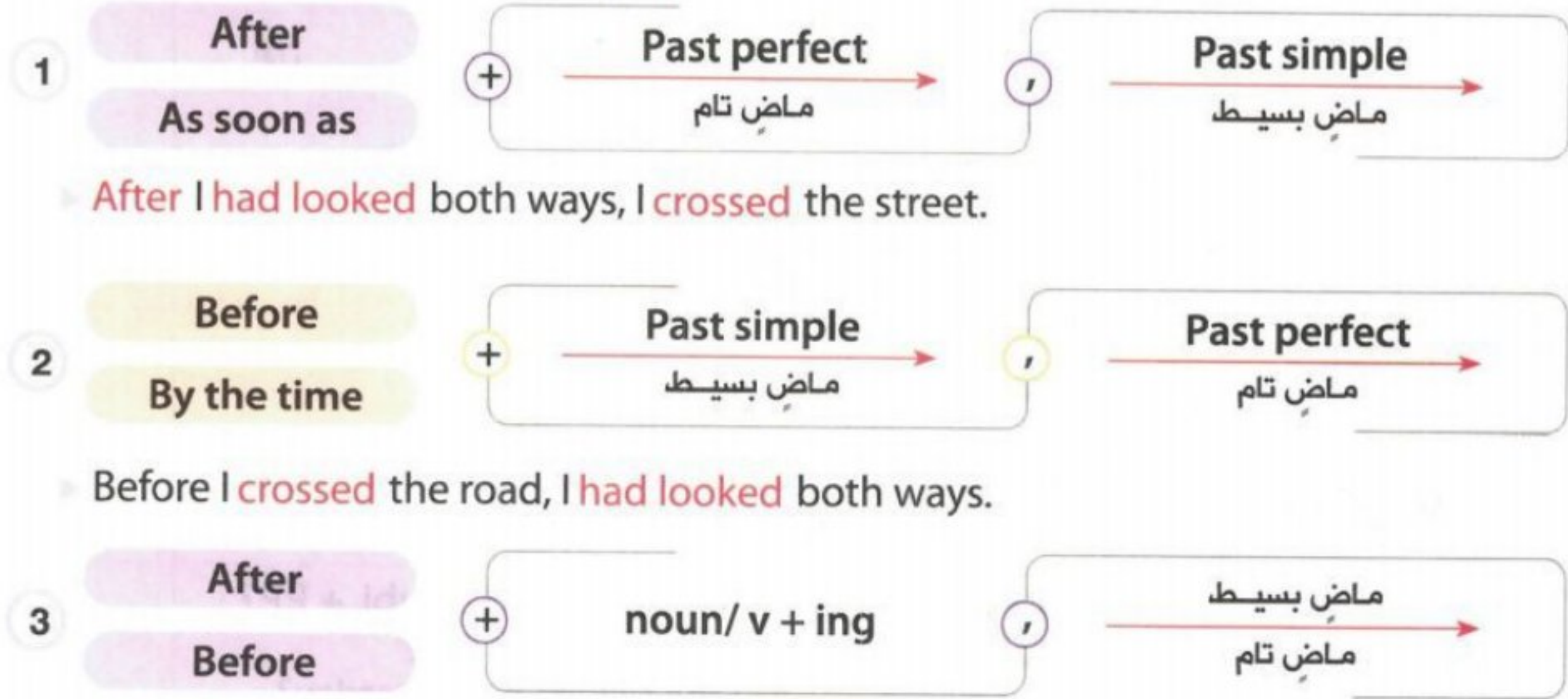
يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا لفترة في الماضي قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الاستمرار.

- ▶ I **had had** the bike for ten years before I **bought** a car.
- ▶ By the time I **got** used to life in Cairo, I **had been** there for five years.

### The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

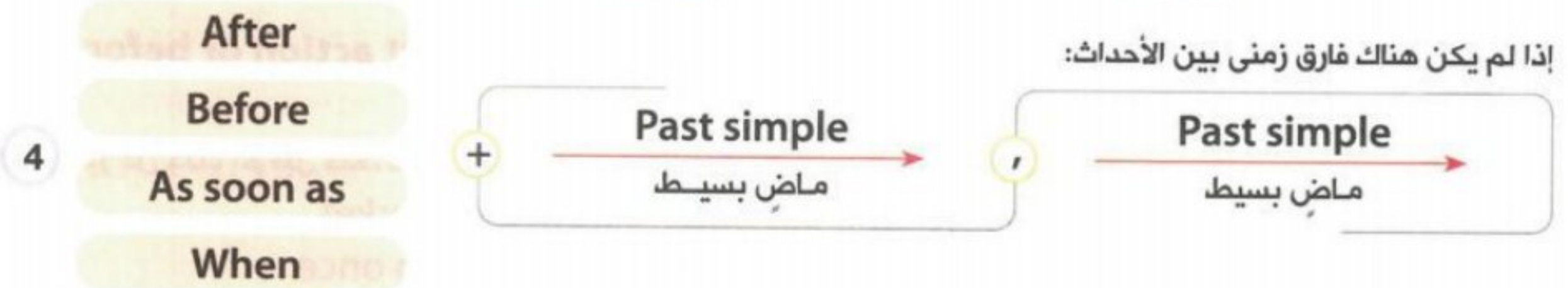
يستخدم الماضي التام مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

#### before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as:



إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد **After** أو **Before** نستخدم **v + ing / noun** بشرط أن يكون فاعل الجملة الثانية هو الفاعل المحذوف من الجملة الأولى.

- ▶ After **finishing** his work, he **helped** me. = After he **had finished**, .....
- ▶ Before **helping** me, he **had finished** his work. = Before he **helped**, .....



- ▶ **When** he **entered** the flat, he **took off** his shoes.
- ▶ **After** he **paid** the driver, he **got out** of the taxi.
- ▶ **Before**he **left**, he **asked** me to close the door behind him.
- ▶ **As soon as** he **read** the story, he **gave** it to me.

### قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





5

ماضٍ بسيط، منفي

didn't + inf.

till/until

ماضٍ تام

had + P.P.

- My son **did not buy** the phone **until** he **had taken** the money.

لاحظ

١ لا يجب حفظ قاعدة واحدة لـ **until**، فهناك استخدامات كثيرة لها، فتأمل هذه الأمثلة:

- She **refused** to marry him **until** he **had bought** a new flat.  
 ► He **waited** at the station **until** the train **arrived**.  
 ► I **wasn't happy** until I **had passed** my exams.  
 ► I **wasn't allowed** to enter the country **until** I **had shown** my passport.  
 ► He **couldn't pass** the driving test **until** he **had practised** enough.

٢ الفرق بين جمل **when** الآتية:

When + Past simple, Past perfect	When + Past simple, Past simple	When + Past perfect, Past simple
When he <b>reached</b> the station, the train <b>had left</b> . غادر القطار قبل وصوله (لم يلحق به)	When he <b>reached</b> the station, the train <b>left</b> . غادر القطار عند وصوله (ربما لحقه أو رآه)	When he <b>had reached</b> the station, the train <b>left</b> . وصل المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقه)

٣ تستخدم **ever/never/already/yet** مع الماضي التام لبيان الحدث الأول.

- I **saw** Galal last night. I **had never seen** him before.

٤ إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة يجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضيًا تامًا والأحداث الباقية إما ماضٍ بسيط وإما ماضٍ مستمر حسب المعنى.

- **As soon as** I **saw** Ahmed, I **realised** that I **had met** him before.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **as soon as** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، فالحدث الأول هو (المقابلة).

- **After** he **got** to the station, he **realised** that he **had left** the train ticket at home.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد **after** مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول، فالحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل).

- I **was shopping** with my friend when I **realised** that I **had lost** my wallet.

- الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

٥ يستخدم الماضي التام مع أفعال مثل **think/say/know/realise** عند استخدامها في الماضي للحديث عن اعتقادات وملاحظات ومعرفة وإدراك لشيء سابق.

- I **thought** I **had finished** my homework, but I **realised** I **had forgotten** the last page.  
 ► I **knew** where I **had put** the keys.







## FORM

## Positive

Subj. + had been + v + ing

- When I met Ali, he **had been walking** for 2 hours.

## Negative

Subj. + hadn't been + v + ing

- I wasn't tired as I **hadn't been driving** for long.

## Interrogative

Had + subj. + been + v + ing?

- **Had** he **been studying** before you phoned him?

Wh-word + had + subj. + been + v + ing?

- What **had** they **been doing** before I met them?

## الاستخدام USAGE

1

- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي (بدأ وانتهى في الماضي) قبل وقوع حدث آخر.
- ▶ They **had been looking** for a house for six months before they **found** the one they liked.

2

- يعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي ونتيجته كانت واضحة في الماضي.
- ▶ She **had been working** hard that day, so she **was** tired.
  - ▶ At last, the bus **came**. I **had been waiting** for 30 minutes.

3

- يأتي الماضي التام المستمر عادة مع أفعال يمكن أن تستغرق فترة طويلة مثل:
- wait/do/study/live/work/stay/play/watch/sleep/paint/read/write/talk/run/walk/travel
- ▶ She **had been training** for three years when she entered the race.
  - ▶ He was out of breath. It was clear that he **had been running** for a long time.

4

for/since/how long/before/until

- يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية:
- ▶ Ali **had been trying** to call me for 10 minutes **before** I finally **answered** the phone.

## لاحظ



١ يرتبط الماضي التام المستمر والماضي التام بفعل ماضٍ آخر معه.  
يرتبط المضارع التام المستمر والمضارع التام بفعل مضارع آخر معه.

- ▶ The garden **is** dirty because people **have left** litter everywhere.
- ▶ The garden **was** dirty because people **had left** litter everywhere.









Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 She ..... all her homework by 10 o'clock so she left some for later.
  - a) had done
  - b) hadn't done
  - c) had been doing
  - d) hasn't done
- 2 I ..... for my watch for ages when Mazen found it.
  - a) has been looking
  - b) looked
  - c) had been looked
  - d) had been looking
- 3 It was dark and cold. At one moment he thought that he ..... his way.
  - a) has lost
  - b) had been losing
  - c) had lost
  - d) was lost
- 4 The day she agreed to marry him was the happiest day he ..... in his life.
  - a) has ever had
  - b) had ever had
  - c) was ever having
  - d) had ever been having
- 5 I ..... my course when I applied for the job.
  - a) already finish
  - b) already finished
  - c) had already finished
  - d) have already finished
- 6 She ..... tennis for two hours, so she had a shower.
  - a) had played
  - b) had been playing
  - c) was playing
  - d) has played
- 7 He felt that he ..... the question wrong.
  - a) has answered
  - b) had been answering
  - c) was answered
  - d) had answered
- 8 Mum had been cooking the food for 2 hours when the guests ..... .
  - a) arrived
  - b) had been arriving
  - c) were arriving
  - d) had arrived
- 9 Everyone ..... a nice time for an hour before the light went out.
  - a) have had
  - b) were having
  - c) had
  - d) had been having
- 10 I had been shopping for two hours when I met my friend whom I ..... for ages.
  - a) hadn't seen
  - b) hadn't been seeing
  - c) wasn't seeing
  - d) haven't seen
- 11 When she arrived, I was pretty fed up, because I ..... since eight o'clock.
  - a) had been waiting
  - b) have waited
  - c) have been waiting
  - d) had waited



- 12 She ..... very well for weeks before she went to hospital.  
 a) wasn't b) hadn't been being  
 c) hadn't been d) hasn't been
- 13 The children had been playing happily ..... one of them started crying.  
 a) since b) when  
 c) as soon as d) after
- 14 He ..... for the company for ten years before they made him the manager.  
 a) was working b) has been working  
 c) worked d) had been working
- 15 As soon as she ..... out of bed, she got dressed.  
 a) gets b) has got  
 c) had got d) would get
- 16 I ..... the bike for long when it broke.  
 a) hadn't been using b) used  
 c) was using d) have been using
- 17 Mother ..... Ali that he ..... to do the shopping after school.  
 a) reminded/will promise b) has reminded/promises  
 c) had reminded/promised d) reminded/had promised
- 18 When I checked my change, I realised the seller ..... me 100 pounds too much.  
 a) gave b) had been giving  
 c) had given d) had been given
- 19 Samy ..... somewhere to live when his friend offered him a room.  
 a) found b) had already found  
 c) has already found d) had been finding
- 20 Why did no one tell me that my glasses .....?  
 a) had smashed b) have smashed  
 c) were smashing d) had been smashing
- 21 Did you know that their plans .....?  
 a) change b) have changed  
 c) had been changing d) had been changed
- 22 I left home before I realised I ..... my mobile phone.  
 a) have forgot b) forgot  
 c) had forgotten d) had been forgetting



23 Why ..... the bathroom before you took a bath?

a) didn't you clean

b) hadn't you cleaned

c) haven't you been cleaning

d) hadn't you been cleaning

24 Maher was very rude to Karim considering he ..... him for a few days.

a) had only known

b) knew only

c) had only been knowing

d) only knows

25 Ahmed looks very tired. He ..... on the garden for a long time.

a) worked

b) was working

c) has been working

d) had been working

26 Ola ..... hard before her exams , so she did well.

a) had been studying

b) has been studying

c) had been studied

d) has studied

27 I didn't send the report until I ..... it.

a) was revising

b) revise

c) have revised

d) had revised

28 As soon as I heard of my friend's success, I ..... him.

a) had congratulated

b) will congratulate

c) have congratulated

d) congratulated

29 My brother ..... short stories for three years before he published them.

a) will write

b) had written

c) had been writing

d) has written

30 The match ..... when I reached the stadium; I missed the exciting start.

a) will begin

b) had begun

c) was beginning

d) have begun

31 Which of the following is structurally correct?

a) Once I have heard the good news, I contacted Adel.

b) Once I heard the good news, I had contacted Adel.

c) Once I had been hearing the good news, I contacted Adel.

d) Once I had heard the good news, I contacted Adel.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 In my opinion, Mike Tyson ..... among the greatest boxers of all time.  
a) marks                      b) rewards                      c) ranks                      d) graduates
- 2 The pilot was forced to make a/an ..... landing when one of the engines failed.  
a) emergency                      b) usual                      c) planned                      d) prior
- 3 Part of the Giza metro line goes through a ..... under the Nile.  
a) spring                      b) road                      c) funnel                      d) tunnel
- 4 The Ministry of Health emphasised that all the people taking part in the medical experiment should be .....  
a) captains                      b) leaders                      c) volunteers                      d) fighters
- 5 I was very proud when my daughter received a prize for her .....  
a) width                      b) achievement                      c) length                      d) scare
- 6 Through hard work, the Egyptian woman could change the traditional ..... of women in society.  
a) stereotype                      b) reputation                      c) expression                      d) location
- 7 Mayar Sherif was knocked out of the championship in the second .....  
a) fight                      b) ring                      c) race                      d) round
- 8 The English Department at the college has a British ..... in literature this week.  
a) student                      b) lecturer                      c) official                      d) client
- 9 I think it is a/an ..... for all athletes to represent their country in the Olympics.  
a) honour                      b) patience                      c) trouble                      d) emergency
- 10 The famous tennis player hopes to repeat his success on the grass ..... of Wimbledon.  
a) pitches                      b) gardens                      c) courts                      d) buildings
- 11 Teaching young children is ..... a challenging and rewarding job.  
a) defied                      b) considered                      c) derived                      d) denied
- 12 Women still have to ..... many challenges and difficulties to gain equality.  
a) resign                      b) repair                      c) overcome                      d) respond
- 13 In our company, there is a system for ..... for employees who do their jobs well.  
a) presents                      b) gifts                      c) awards                      d) rewards
- 14 I had really good teachers who ..... me a lot of confidence in myself.  
a) gained                      b) made                      c) gave                      d) followed
- 15 Mars is sometimes known as the Red ..... because of its red rocks.  
a) Region                      b) Planet                      c) Plant                      d) Space





## Language

- 16 He ..... his work before you came.  
 a) had been finishing      b) finishes  
 c) has finished      d) had finished
- 17 He ..... for 30 years when he finally gave it up.  
 a) had been smoking      b) had smoked  
 c) has been smoked      d) was smoking
- 18 Tamer ..... all his exams by 5 o'clock yesterday.  
 a) finished      b) had finished  
 c) has finished      d) had been finishing
- 19 They ..... for an hour before the train arrived.  
 a) had waited      b) were waiting  
 c) had been waiting      d) had been waiting
- 20 Before starting to eat, he ..... down the table.  
 a) has laid      b) was lying      c) lay      d) had laid
- 21 What had he ..... when the accident happened?  
 a) done      b) been doing      c) been done      d) had
- 22 He ..... my name, so I reminded him.  
 a) had forgotten      b) forgets      c) has forgotten      d) was forgetting
- 23 We ..... for 12 hours when he woke us up.  
 a) have slept      b) were sleeping  
 c) had been sleeping      d) has been sleeping
- 24 It was 1 o'clock and the dog from next door ..... for two hours.  
 a) has been barking      b) was barking  
 c) had barked      d) had been barking
- 25 I knew that my uncle ..... a new car.  
 a) had bought      b) had been buying      c) was buying      d) has bought
- 26 We ..... for her ring for two hours and then we found it in the bathroom.  
 a) had been looking      b) has been looking  
 c) had looked      d) were looking
- 27 The weather was worse last year than I ..... it to be.  
 a) had expected      b) have expected      c) expect      d) was expected
- 28 He evidently ..... his shoes for a very long time. They were worn out.  
 a) has been wearing      b) had been worn  
 c) was wearing      d) had been wearing
- 29 He ..... a camel before he came to Siwa.  
 a) has never seen      b) did never see      c) will never see      d) had never seen
- 30 Last Sunday, we ..... out of the house where we ..... for five years.  
 a) had moved/lived      b) have moved/had lived  
 c) moved/had been living      d) will move/have lived





## A

## Vocabulary



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

abilities (n)	قدرات	disabled (adj)	معاق
activist (n)	ناشط	economic (adj)	اقتصادي
adventure (n)	مغامرة	equal (adj)	متساو
alternative (n)	بديل	equality (n)	مساواة
Alzheimer's disease (n)	مرض ألزهايمر	eye contact (n)	اتصال بصرى
ambition (n)	طموح	fair (n)	معرض
argue (v) (d) *	يجادل/يخالف الرأي	figure (n)	رقم
author (n)	مؤلف	generation (n)	جيل
bar graph (n)	رسم بياني	good-natured (adj)	لطيف
bright (adj)	لامع/مشرق/ذكي	grumpy (adj)	غاضب/سريع الاستثارة
care (n) (v) (d)	اهتمام/رعاية/يهتم	heart (n)	قلب
carry on (v) (y ied)	يستمر	impatient (adj)	غير صبور
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	inequality (n)	عدم المساواة
classmate (n)	زميل الفصل	inspiration (n)	إلهام/وحي
colonial (adj)	استعماري	key (adj) (n)	رئيسي/مفتاح
confident (adj)	واثق	majority (n)	أغلبية
conform to (v) (ed)	يتفق/ينسجم مع	march (n) (v) (ed)	مسيرة/يقوم بمسيرة
cross (adj)	شديد الغضب	minority (n)	أقلية
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	motivate (v) (d)	يحفز
cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/يعالج	naughty (adj)	مشاغب/شقي
development (n)	تطور/تنمية	note (v) (d)	يلاحظ

I never **argue** with my father about his decisions.



noticeable (adj)	ملحوظ	rule (n) (v) (d)	حكم/يحكم
obvious (adj)	واضح	scientific (adj)	علمي
parliament (n)	البرلمان	sign (n)	لافتة
pattern (n)	نمط	significant (adj)	هام/ذو مغزى
percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية	speculate (v) (d)	يتأمل/يتكهن
podcast (n)	تدوين صوتي	statement (n)	بيان
protest (n) (v) (ed)	احتجاج/يحتج	statistics (n)	إحصاء
purify (v) (y ied)	ينقى	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
quarter (n)	ربع	swing (n)	أرجوحة
raise (v) (d)	يرفع/يثير	typical (adj)	نموذجي
reflect (v) (ed)	يعكس	vision (n)	رؤية
region (n)	إقليم	vote (v) (d)	يصوت في انتخابات
related (adj)	متصل/مرتبط	well-behaved (adj)	حسن السلوك
result (n)	نتيجة	worldwide (adj)	عالمي

### Workbook Vocabulary

aim (v) (ed) (n)	يهدف/هدف	formal (adj)	رسمي
character (n)	شخصية	hide (v)	يخفي
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل/يواصل (رأى/معنى)	organiser (n)	منظم
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	unable (adj)	غير قادر
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض		

### Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I don't think we should expand our business in the current ..... situation.  
a) trivial      b) funny      c) literary      d) economic
- The architects who planned the New Capital had a ..... of clean modern housing for everyone.  
a) sight      b) vision      c) picture      d) review
- Our neighbour was injured in a car accident, leaving him partially .....  
a) natural      b) healthy      c) disabled      d) strange



- 4 All universities should have ..... academic standards for male and female students.  
a) equal                      b) local                      c) helpless                      d) unfair
- 5 The centre gives you ways in which you can accelerate **يسرع** the ..... of your business.  
a) styling                      b) development  
c) establishment                      d) custom
- 6 There is a ..... difference in prices between small shops and hypermarkets which make huge sales.  
a) minor                      b) displayed  
c) significant                      d) distressed
- 7 One of the functions of the kidneys is to ..... the blood and get rid of the waste.  
a) remake                      b) dispose                      c) damage                      d) purify
- 8 All workers have to ..... to safety rules in the building site and this is inspected regularly.  
a) puzzle                      b) contradict                      c) conform                      d) produce
- 9 The new manager succeeded in ..... all the staff to work together after the union of the two companies.  
a) motivating                      b) silencing                      c) punishing                      d) threatening
- 10 The young scientist was a/an ..... student at school.  
a) uncertain                      b) dim                      c) bright                      d) devastated

### Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

around the world	حول العالم	have equal opportunities	لديه فرص متساوية
for a while	لفترة قصيرة	in other words	بكلمات أخرى/بمعنى آخر
get into trouble	يدخل/يتورط في المتاعب	take third place	يحتل المركز الثالث (في مسابقة)
argue with	يتجادل مع	inspiration to	إلهام لـ
care about	يهتم بـ	look after	يعتني بـ
confident about	واثق بشأن	pattern to	نمط/نموذج لـ
cross with	غاضب من	related to	مرتبط بـ





## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدال	argumentative	جدلي
develop	يطور	development	تطور/تنمية	developed developing	متطور نام
economise *	يقتصد	economy	اقتصاد	economic economical (توفيري)	اقتصادي اقتصادي (توفيري)
notice	يلحظ	notice	ملاحظة	noticeable	ملحوظ
reflect	يعكس	reflection	انعكاس	reflective	انعكاسي
speculate	يتأمل/يتكهن	speculation	تأمل	speculative	تأملي/تخميني
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	ملخص

- In wartime, people should **economise** on their consumption.
- The **economy** of our country will improve soon.
- There should be **economic** solutions to the current crisis. ★

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
alternative	بديل	option/substitute	obligation ضرورة
argue	يجادل/يخالف	disagree	agree يتفق
development	تطور	progress/evolution	backwardness تخلف
equality	مساواة	fairness	prejudice/bias تحيز/تعصب
pattern	نمط	motif/design	disorder اضطراب/خلل
reflect	يعكس	indicate/show/mirror	cover/ignore يغطي/يتجاهل
related	مرتبط	connected/relevant	alien/different غريب/مختلف
speculate	يتأمل	contemplate/figure out	disregard/neglect يهمل/يتجاهل
well-behaved	لطيف	polite	impolite/naughty مشاغب/غير مؤدب



## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The young orphan's courage must be a great inspiration ..... those people facing a similar situation.  
a) to                      b) in                      c) of                      d) with
- 2 Many of the crimes in the slums are related to drug abuse. The adjective "related" can be replaced by .....  
a) reflexive              b) different              c) connected              d) defective
- 3 His music reflects his interest in African culture. The noun of the verb "reflect" is ".....".  
a) reflects              b) reflected              c) reflective              d) reflection
- 4 I'm sure that girls will get fantastic results if they ..... equal opportunities with boys.  
a) give                      b) follow                      c) have                      d) design
- 5 Jones refused to speculate about what might happen. The antonym of the verb "speculate" is ".....".  
a) contemplate              b) believe                      c) figure out                      d) neglect
- 6 I'm tired of constantly arguing ..... my elder sister about what programmes to watch.  
a) at                      b) with                      c) to                      d) about
- 7 The children usually argue about which programmes to watch. The adjective of the verb "argue" is ".....".  
a) argues                      b) argued                      c) argumentative                      d) argument
- 8 Walking to work is a cheap alternative to going to the gym. The synonym of the noun "alternative" is ".....".  
a) option                      b) obligation                      c) factor                      d) foundation

### Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخدماتها.

#### figure

تستخدم كلمة **figure** بمعانٍ مختلفة، منها:  
١ - رقم يمثل كمية محددة (مثل تقديرات رسمية أو حكومية).

Official **figures** show that the crime rate is falling.

٢ - مقدار محدد من المال.

1 The cost of the new project may be an estimated **figure** of 200 million.

٣ - شخص مهم أو مشهور في شأن ما.

Usain Bolt is one of the most popular **figures** in athletics.

٤ - قوام (شكل الجسم وخاصة الخاص بالنساء).

Most women are keen on watching their **figure**.

٥ - شكل أو رسم توضيحي في كتاب أو مطبوعات.

The results of the experiment are illustrated in **figure** 3 in page 20.





## disabled = handicapped

معاق جسدياً أو ذهنيًا  
(بسبب مشكلة دائمة)

**disabled** = handicapped: not able to use a part of your body properly or not able to learn normally, because of a permanent problem

- ▶ **Disabled** people should have the same rights and choices as everyone else.
- ▶ The charity provides opportunities and facilities for **disabled** people to take part in sports.

2

## special needs

احتياجات خاصة

*if someone has special needs, they have physical or mental disabilities*

- ▶ Children with **special needs** are allowed to join the same schools as other normal ones.

## learning difficulties/ disabilities

صعوبات تعلم

*if someone has learning difficulties, they have difficulty learning basic skills or information*

- ▶ Our school has special courses for students with **learning difficulties/disabilities** such as dyslexia.  
عسر القراءة.

## programme

برنامج (تشاهده في التلفزيون أو تستمع له في الإذاعة)

*something that you watch on television, or listen to on the radio*

- ▶ What's your favourite television **programme**?
- ▶ I watched an interesting **programme** about the elections last night.

## documentary

فيلم وثائقي

*a programme that gives you facts and information about a serious subject, such as history, science, or social problems*

- ▶ I watched a moving **documentary** about homeless people.

## podcast

تدوين صوتي (ملف صوتي أو صور يمكن تحميله من الإنترنت)

*a file of recorded sound and sometimes pictures that you can download from the Internet*

- ▶ The interview is available as a **podcast**.

## classmate

زميل دراسة

Osama has been my **classmate** for years. We are in the same class.

## colleague

زميل عمل

Friends and **colleagues** will remember him with affection.



**grade**

تقدير شهادة / امتحان / صف دراسي

- He got a **grade** A in his university degree.- My brother is in **grade** six.

5

**rank**

رُتبة (عسكرية/اجتماعية)

- My brother was promoted to the **rank** of captain.- This hotel was used only by people of high **rank**.**Vocabulary Check point 3****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1 The head teacher said that the fifth ..... would perform their annual play that week.

a) rank

b) degree

c) grade

d) course

2 Sameh has a good working relationship with his new ..... who are very friendly.

a) colleagues

b) classmates

c) companions

d) advisers

3 Our channel made a TV ..... about the Grand Egyptian Museum to be shown on the occasion of its inauguration.

a) podcast

b) show

c) documentary

d) programme

4 She invited all of her school ..... to her seventeenth birthday party.

a) rivals

b) classmates

c) colleagues

d) competitors

5 These figures mean that almost 7% of the working population is unemployed. We can replace "figures" here with ".....".

a) numbers

b) shapes

c) characters

d) bodies

6 To download the ..... of the lecture, click on the link below.

a) programme

b) podcast

c) show

d) documentary





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 In the last few years, there have been many laws to ensure ..... between men and women in many fields.  
a) bias                      b) quality                      c) equality                      d) ability
- 2 The official ..... of the last few months show an increase in food prices by about 50%.  
a) diaries                      b) visions                      c) sums                      d) figures
- 3 Because of the danger of burning fossil fuels, we must use ..... sources of energy more and more.  
a) traditional                      b) alternative                      c) economic                      d) consumed
- 4 The ..... of the students like the new school; only two students said it was bad.  
a) maturity                      b) minority                      c) majority                      d) possibility
- 5 When we were young, we usually ..... with our father about staying up late.  
a) voted                      b) charged                      c) hid                      d) argued
- 6 Many people have changed their spending ..... in response to changing conditions.  
a) times                      b) patterns                      c) losses                      d) profits
- 7 Whether you can go to a good faculty or not depends on what exam ..... you get.  
a) grades                      b) ranks                      c) degrees                      d) angles
- 8 Most young people's social problems are usually ..... to the bad habits they started in their teenage.  
a) puzzled                      b) inspected                      c) related                      d) reflected
- 9 According to the health ....., thousands of people are saved in emergency rooms at hospitals every year.  
a) facility                      b) care                      c) searches                      d) statistics
- 10 STEM students have a higher level of mathematical ..... than other students of their age.  
a) ability                      b) statement                      c) fiction                      d) reflection
- 11 Drama is the best way to ..... ideas and beliefs; so it must be used wisely.  
a) link                      b) contact                      c) tie                      d) communicate
- 12 The bar ..... shows sales on the left and cost of sales on the right.  
a) data                      b) signal                      c) graph                      d) study
- 13 The newspaper which the political party publishes ..... their ideas and beliefs.  
a) reacts                      b) reflects                      c) perfects                      d) conforms
- 14 In a formal interview, try to maintain a good eye ..... with the interviewer.  
a) communication                      b) figure                      c) contact                      d) cure

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





- 15 The reform of education is done with a ..... which is suitable for the modern age.  
a) sight                      b) vision                      c) right                      d) view
- 16 The lecturer ..... his points in the last five minutes of his lecture.  
a) phrased                      b) devised                      c) raised                      d) summarised
- 17 The government is working hard to facilitate ..... and economic activity that provides jobs.  
a) develop                      b) undeveloped                      c) development                      d) developed
- 18 Women achieve great results if they ..... equal opportunities with men.  
a) give                      b) have                      c) lose                      d) miss
- 19 My younger brother is a naughty boy and always gets ..... trouble at school.  
a) into                      b) at                      c) to                      d) for
- 20 I trust that my son is well-behaved and wouldn't do anything wrong at the party. The synonym of the adjective "well-behaved" is .....  
a) bad-tempered                      b) cruel                      c) active                      d) polite
- 21 The young actor took direct ..... from the films of Adel Emam.  
a) inspire                      b) inspiration                      c) inspired                      d) inspirational
- 22 You must feel confident ..... your ability to succeed in life.  
a) into                      b) out                      c) with                      d) about
- 23 The young athlete was disappointed to ..... third place in the race as he had trained very hard for it.  
a) take                      b) make                      c) work                      d) do
- 24 After two days, there was a ..... improvement in my mother's health.  
a) notice                      b) noticing                      c) noticeable                      d) noting
- 25 These women are demanding fairness and equality in their pay. The antonym of the noun "equality" is ".....".  
a) patience                      b) justice                      c) determination                      d) prejudice
- 26 A ..... is a radio or television programme that can be downloaded from the Internet and played on a computer or MP3 player. (Longman)  
a) podcast                      b) show                      c) post                      d) series
- 27 The ..... situation in most countries has been badly affected because of the coronavirus pandemic. (Longman)  
a) economical                      b) economic                      c) economics                      d) economically
- 28 The young scientists have found a way to ..... drinking water using 24% less energy than what is typically used. (Longman)  
a) purify                      b) modify                      c) simplify                      d) clarify
- 29 The global distribution of wealth reflects high levels of .....; there are rich and extremely impoverished countries. (Longman)  
a) minority                      b) majority                      c) inequality                      d) equality
- 30 My neighbour's children cause a lot of noise, which makes me unhappy and ..... (Longman)  
a) pleased                      b) cross                      c) disobedient                      d) dishonest



## Adjectives (comparatives – superlatives)

صفات المقارنة والتفضيل:

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
		er + than	the + est
One syllable صفة ذات مقطع واحد	tall طويل	taller than	the tallest
	young صغير السن	younger than	the youngest
	soft ناعم	softer than	the softest
		r + than	the + st
One syllable ending in (e) صفة ذات مقطع واحد وتنتهي بـ e	large واسع	larger than	the largest
	wide عريض	wider than	the widest
One syllable	عندما تتكون الصفة من حرف ساكن + حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضعف الحرف الساكن		
		er + than	the + est
consonant + vowel + consonant صفة ذات مقطع واحد ويضعف الحرف الأخير	big كبير الحجم	bigger than	the biggest
	hot ساخن	hotter than	the hottest
	نحذف حرف y ونضيف:		
		ier + than	the + iest
Two syllables ending in (y) صفة ذات مقطعين وتنتهي بـ y	heavy ثقيل	heavier than	the heaviest
	happy سعيد	happier than	the happiest
		more + adjective	the most + adj.
Two or more syllables صفة ذات مقطعين أو أكثر	modern عصري	more modern than	the most modern
	expensive غالي	more expensive than	the most expensive
	حالات خاصة تحفظ:		
Irregular adjectives	good جيد	better than	the best
	bad سيئ	worse than	the worst
	little قليل	less than	the least
	much/ many كثير	more than	the most
	far بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest



as + adj. + as/not as (so) + adj. + as	تساوى وعدم تساوى الصفات
Omar is <b>as</b> clever <b>as</b> Ahmed.	فى التساوى الصفة بين <b>as ... as</b>
Eman <b>isn't so/as</b> young <b>as</b> her sister Rana.	فى نفى التساوى <b>isn't as/so ... as</b>
Special cases	حالات خاصة
Rana is <b>the</b> younger of <b>two</b> sisters.	فى التفضيل بين اثنين يمكن أن نستخدم <b>the + er/ more</b>
Gold is <b>much/ a lot more</b> expensive <b>than</b> wood.	عند وجود فرق كبير فى المقارنة نستخدم <b>much/ a lot</b>
Silver is <b>a bit/ a little cheaper</b> <b>than</b> gold.	عند وجود فرق قليل فى المقارنة نستخدم <b>a bit/ a little</b>
<b>No</b> boy in class is cleverer <b>than</b> Ahmed.	نستخدم <b>no</b> فى المقارنة.
I've <b>never</b> met a stronger person <b>than</b> Ali.	نستخدم <b>never</b> فى المقارنة.
Ali is <b>the</b> strongest person I've <b>ever</b> met.	نستخدم <b>ever</b> فى التفضيل.
Summer is <b>less cold</b> <b>than</b> winter.	تستخدم <b>less</b> قبل أى صفة فى المقارنة.
<b>The fewer</b> mistakes you make, <b>the higher</b> marks you get.	صفة مقارنة + <b>the</b> , صفة مقارنة + <b>The</b> كلما ..... كلما .....

#### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The ..... animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.  
a) most big      b) biggest      c) more big      d) bigger
- I'm not keen on football. For me, it is ..... important thing.  
a) the least      b) the most      c) the best      d) the little
- Mr Naser is the ..... director that can solve your problems.  
a) more intelligent      b) intelligent      c) most intelligent      d) much intelligent
- Video cassettes are not ..... DVDs.  
a) moderner than      b) so modern so      c) as modern like      d) as modern as
- Some people think that the more money you have, the ..... you become.  
a) happy      b) happier      c) happiest      d) more happy
- I'm definitely ..... than my mum.  
a) lazier      b) laziest      c) lazy      d) more lazy
- I bought ..... souvenir I could afford.  
a) an expensive      b) a more expensive      c) the most expensive      d) the less expensive
- The weather was ..... the mountaineers had expected.  
a) the worst      b) as bad as      c) worse      d) worse than
- My house is ..... away from school than yours.  
a) far      b) farther      c) farthest      d) furthest
- Ahmed and Osama are the same .....  
a) height      b) tall      c) length      d) long



## Extra points (Past perfect)

لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات التالية مع أزمنة الماضي:

1. **No sooner** + **Hardly** + **Scarcely** + **had + subject + P.P.** + **did + subject + Inf.** + **than** + **when** + **when** + **Past simple** (ماضٍ بسيط)
- لم يكـد ..... حتى .....  
الماضي التام أو البسيط في شكل سؤال

- ▶ **No sooner had** Marwa **found** the money **than** she **reported** it to the police.
- ▶ **No sooner did** Marwa **find** the money **than** she **reported** it to the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات في أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأت في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:

- Subject + had** + **no sooner** + **hardly** + **scarcely** + **P.P.** + **than** + **when** + **when** + **Past simple** (ماضٍ بسيط)

- ▶ Marwa **had hardly found** the money **when** she **reported** the police.

2. **On** + **v+ing** = **When** + **clause**

- ▶ **On looking** at the question, I knew the answer. = **When I looked** ....., I knew .....

3. **Having** + **P.P.** = **After** + **Past perfect**

- ▶ **Having booked** the tickets, I **took** the train to Assuit. = **After I had booked** .....

4. **It was only when** + **that** + **Past simple** (ماضٍ بسيط)  
**It wasn't until** + **that** + **Past perfect** (ماضٍ تام)
- إنه فقط عندما ..... لم يكن حتى .....

- ▶ **It was only when** he **had finished** his work **that** he **helped** me.
- ▶ **It wasn't until** he **had finished** his work **that** he **helped** me.

لاحظ

١ الفرق بين استخدام المبنى للمجهول مع الماضي البسيط **was/ were + P.P.** ومع الماضي التام **had + been + P.P.**:

- ▶ After the food **had been cooked**, it **was eaten**.
- ▶ Before the email **was sent**, it **had been written**.

٢ يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد **after/before/until** وليس جملة كاملة.

- ▶ My friends **visited** me after **lunch** yesterday.
- ▶ Before **the war**, the two countries **had threatened** each other.



٣ يمكن أن يستخدم الماضي التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم في وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام، وفي هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بدلاً منه.

► He **had been** to Aswan once in 2000 before he **moved** there in 2015.

► He **went** to Aswan once in 2000 before he **moved** there in 2015.

ولكن إذا أشار الماضي التام إلى خبرة وليس إلى حدث محدد لا يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط.

► He **had never seen** snow until he moved to Europe. NOT He ~~never saw~~ snow...

### Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 After the house ....., it was furnished.
  - a) had been painted
  - b) has painted
  - c) had painted
  - d) is painted
- 2 After ..... in the company for ten years, he left it.
  - a) works
  - b) worked
  - c) had worked
  - d) working
- 3 No sooner ..... a new flat than he moved in.
  - a) he had found
  - b) he found
  - c) had he found
  - d) was he finding
- 4 On ..... the sign "No Parking", he looked for another place to park.
  - a) seeing
  - b) had seen
  - c) saw
  - d) he had seen
- 5 Having ..... the land for cultivation, he sowed the seeds.
  - a) been prepared
  - b) had prepared
  - c) prepare
  - d) prepared
- 6 We had managed to put out the fire before the firefighters' ..... .
  - a) arrive
  - b) arriving
  - c) arrived
  - d) arrival
- 7 She ..... down when the phone rang.
  - a) has just sat
  - b) had just sat
  - c) is just sitting
  - d) had just been sitting
- 8 Having ....., the car was ready for the journey.
  - a) repaired
  - b) been repairing
  - c) been repaired
  - d) repair
- 9 I was exhausted because I ..... all day.
  - a) had been painting
  - b) have been painting
  - c) was painting
  - d) have painted
- 10 By the time we got to school, the teacher ..... there for twenty minutes.
  - a) has been
  - b) will have been
  - c) had been
  - d) was being



## Past Tenses (Summary)

ملخص أزمنة الماضي:

Tense	Form	Usage
<b>Past simple</b> الماضي البسيط	كل الضمائر + التصريف الثاني	For actions which happened immediately one after the other in the past. للأحداث التي حدثت تباعاً واحداً تلو الآخر في الماضي.
	- Ola <b>helped</b> the children with their homework when her husband <b>came</b> home. رجع زوجها ثم ساعدوا الأطفال معاً في الواجب. (ليس هناك فارق زمني بين الرجوع والمساعدة)	
<b>Past continuous</b> الماضي المستمر	was/were + v + ing	For an action which was in progress when another action interrupted it. يستخدم لحدث كان مستمراً (حدث طويل) عندما قطعه حدث آخر (حدث قصير).
	- Ola <b>was helping</b> the children with their homework when her husband <b>came</b> home. كانت تساعد الأطفال في واجبهم عندما رجع زوجها. (المساعدة مستمرة والرجوع قاطع)	
<b>Past perfect</b> الماضي التام	had + P.P.	For an action which happened before another past action. يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر في الماضي؛ الحدث الأول تام، والثاني بسيط ويكون التركيز على نتيجة الحدث.
	- Ola <b>had</b> already <b>helped</b> the children with their homework when her husband <b>came</b> home. كانت قد انتهت بالفعل من مساعدة الأطفال في واجبهم عندما رجع زوجها. (المساعدة أولاً والرجوع ثانياً)	
<b>Past perfect continuous</b> الماضي التام المستمر	had been + v + ing	For an action which started and finished in the past before another past action. حدث بدأ واستمر فترة وانتهى قبل حدوث آخر في الماضي. ويكون التركيز على مدة الحدث.
	- Ola <b>had been helping</b> the children for hours when her husband <b>came</b> home. كانت تساعد الأطفال لمدة ساعات عندما رجع زوجها. (كانت المساعدة مستمرة لفترة وانتهت قبل رجوع الزوج)	



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 We ..... 500 miles and we needed some rest.

a) have driven                      b) were driving  
c) had been driving                d) had driven
- 2 Hardly ..... the phone down when it started ringing again.

a) I had put                          b) will I have put  
c) had I put                          d) have I put
- 3 Having ..... all our exams, we had a party.

a) passed                             b) passing  
c) had passed                        d) been passed
- 4 My friends and I ..... a great time last weekend.

a) had had                            b) had  
c) had been having                 d) have had
- 5 This book is ..... the one I read last week.

a) the least interesting              b) so interesting as  
c) less interesting than              d) the most interesting
- 6 On ..... the thief, the police caught him and sent him to prison.

a) saw                                b) seen                                c) being seen                        d) seeing
- 7 Sara went into the kitchen and found lots of fresh bread on the table.  
Her mother .....

a) has been baking                    b) was baking  
c) baked                                d) had been baking
- 8 By the time he was 12, my brother ..... three languages. He spoke Arabic,  
English and French.

a) learnt                                b) was learning  
c) had learnt                            d) had been learning
- 9 My mother is two years ..... than my father.

a) youngest                            b) young                                c) smaller                            d) younger
- 10 Osama has ..... friends than I do.

a) few                                    b) fewer  
c) less                                    d) several
- 11 Who is the ..... of the two boys?

a) taller                                b) more tall                            c) most tall                            d) tall
- 12 The more you practise sports, the ..... you become.

a) fatter                                b) fitter                                c) fit                                    d) fattest



- 13 He found everything rather strange as he ..... never ..... abroad before.  
a) has/been  
b) hasn't/been  
c) had/been  
d) hadn't/been
- 14 It was the first time she ..... ever ..... a prize.  
a) would/win  
b) had/won  
c) had/been winning  
d) has/won
- 15 By the time I got to the stadium, they ..... for ten minutes.  
a) were playing  
b) had already played  
c) have already played  
d) had already been playing
- 16 The manager gave the employees ..... instructions on how to operate the new machines.  
a) far  
b) farther  
c) further  
d) both b & c
- 17 ..... seeing the policeman, the thief ran away.  
a) While  
b) On  
c) As soon as  
d) Hardly
- 18 How many hours ..... when you woke him up?  
a) had he slept  
b) had he been sleeping  
c) has he slept  
d) did he sleep
- 19 I ..... only three pounds, so I couldn't take a taxi. I had to walk.  
a) have had  
b) was having  
c) had been having  
d) had had
- 20 You were so wet. What .....?  
a) have you been doing  
b) had you been doing  
c) would you have been doing  
d) are you doing
- 21 My brother likes the ..... fashion in European countries.  
a) later  
b) late  
c) last  
d) latest
- 22 After I ..... out of the exam, I realised that I had answered one question wrong.  
a) had got  
b) got  
c) getting  
d) had been got
- 23 It wasn't until last March that I ..... about the death of my uncle in Australia.  
a) had informed  
b) informed  
c) was informed  
d) was informing



- 24 At first I was very sad, but after a while, I ..... to be happy.  
a) had begun b) have begun  
c) was beginning d) began
- 25 The student decided not to make that mistake again after ..... by the teacher.  
a) being punished b) punishing  
c) had punished d) had been punished
- 26 As soon as the girl ....., we told the police.  
a) had been disappeared b) disappeared  
c) was disappeared d) has disappeared
- 27 The pharaohs believed in life after .....  
a) they had died b) had died  
c) death d) they die
- 28 She refused to lend me her camera until I ..... to take care of it. (Longman)  
a) had promised b) have promised  
c) had been promising d) have been promising
- 29 Which of the following is structurally correct? (Longman)  
a) I haven't handed in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all the questions again.  
b) I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all the questions again.  
c) I won't hand in my answer sheet until I went over all the questions again.  
d) I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I've gone all the questions again.
- 30 Unfortunately, he missed the train. When he ..... the station, the train ..... (Longman)  
a) reached/has left b) had reached/left  
c) reached/had left d) was reaching/has left
- 31 He was overjoyed because he ..... his final exam. (Longman)  
a) will be passed b) had passed  
c) has passed d) had been passing
- 32 Before the manager arrived, the lazy employee ..... any work for hours! (Longman)  
a) hasn't been doing b) hadn't been doing  
c) hadn't done d) hasn't done
- 33 Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?  
a) I will return home as soon as the meeting had been ended.  
b) Oliver Twist is the most interesting novel I have ever read.  
c) What are you doing when your father returned home?  
d) Don't wait for me this evening; I will have prepared for my sister's wedding.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 COVID-19 resulted in one of the worst ..... crises in many parts of the world.  
a) social                      b) economic                      c) cultural                      d) electric
- 2 Cairo Book ..... is one of the most important cultural events in the Arab world.  
a) Feast                      b) Gallery                      c) Conference                      d) Fair
- 3 Thousands of environmental ..... asked to take part in the UN Climate Summit Conference to try to make the government take action.  
a) ministers                      b) activists                      c) directors                      d) representatives
- 4 My mother gets ..... with my sister if she leaves the kitchen in a mess.  
a) relaxed                      b) cross                      c) delighted                      d) content
- 5 The ..... of scientific experiments were published in the monthly journal.  
a) results                      b) reasons                      c) opinions                      d) sights
- 6 Our grandfather always used to tell us about his ..... at sea when he worked on a fishing boat.  
a) experiments                      b) marches                      c) training                      d) adventures
- 7 Leila is one of a small ..... of women working in the engineering department in the company. There are only three.  
a) majority                      b) minority                      c) maturity                      d) priority
- 8 The differences between these two models aren't ..... They look the same.  
a) unclear                      b) vague                      c) obvious                      d) minor
- 9 Students who are ..... need extra support and special facilities at school.  
a) normal                      b) disabled                      c) ordinary                      d) super
- 10 Technology will play a ..... role in classroom teaching in the next few years in Egypt.  
a) complicated                      b) trivial                      c) minor                      d) significant
- 11 In any developed and civilised society, women and men are ..... partners.  
a) equal                      b) biased                      c) unfair                      d) vain
- 12 Since my father stopped smoking, he has become so ..... that he gets angry at any time.  
a) excited                      b) pleased                      c) relaxed                      d) grumpy
- 13 I have known my friend Samy since we were ..... in high school.  
a) buyers                      b) bosses                      c) classmates                      d) colleagues
- 14 Hilana Sedarous's life can be an inspiration ..... young women to succeed in life.  
a) in                      b) to                      c) from                      d) with
- 15 The behaviour of the newcomer ..... the suspicion الشك of his neighbours.  
a) faded                      b) lost                      c) rose                      d) raised



## Language

- 16 I apologised for coming late because I ..... for my glasses.  
a) had been looking                      b) looked  
c) have been looking                      d) had looked
- 17 After the first course, Dalia became much ..... in learning English than before.  
a) interested                      b) more interested                      c) interesting                      d) more interesting
- 18 We recently learned that Samia ..... as a secret agent for years.  
a) has acted                      b) is acting  
c) acted                      d) had been acting
- 19 He noticed I ..... the car. It was smooth and shiny.  
a) was cleaning                      b) had been cleaning  
c) had cleaned                      d) have cleaned
- 20 When I went to my friend's flat, she ..... for school.  
a) had already left                      b) has already left  
c) had been leaving                      d) already left
- 21 The little children's clothes were dirty because they ..... in the park all day.  
a) have been playing                      b) were playing  
c) had been playing                      d) played
- 22 The less you spend, the ..... you save.  
a) less                      b) more                      c) least                      d) most
- 23 How many times ..... to the North Coast before you bought a chalet there?  
a) were you                      b) have you been  
c) will have you been                      d) had you been
- 24 I ..... to make an appointment with the manager for two days before I finally succeeded.  
a) had tried                      b) had been trying  
c) was trying                      d) have been trying
- 25 Salma ..... at Cairo University for 4 years before she qualified.  
a) had been studying                      b) had studied  
c) has been studying                      d) was studying
- 26 The storm ..... the house that they had built.  
a) was destroying                      b) had been destroyed  
c) destroyed                      d) had destroyed
- 27 We ..... at the same supermarket for fifteen years, so we were sad when it closed.  
a) were shopping                      b) had shopped  
c) have been shopping                      d) had been shopping
- 28 My grandfather is the ..... member of our family.  
a) eldest                      b) oldest                      c) elder                      d) both a & b
- 29 Mr Hamdy is the ..... teacher I've ever had. His students respect him much.  
a) inspiring                      b) most inspiring                      c) much inspiring                      d) more inspiring
- 30 Hoda cooked lunch after she ..... the house.  
a) has been cleaning                      b) had been cleaning  
c) had cleaned                      d) was cleaning





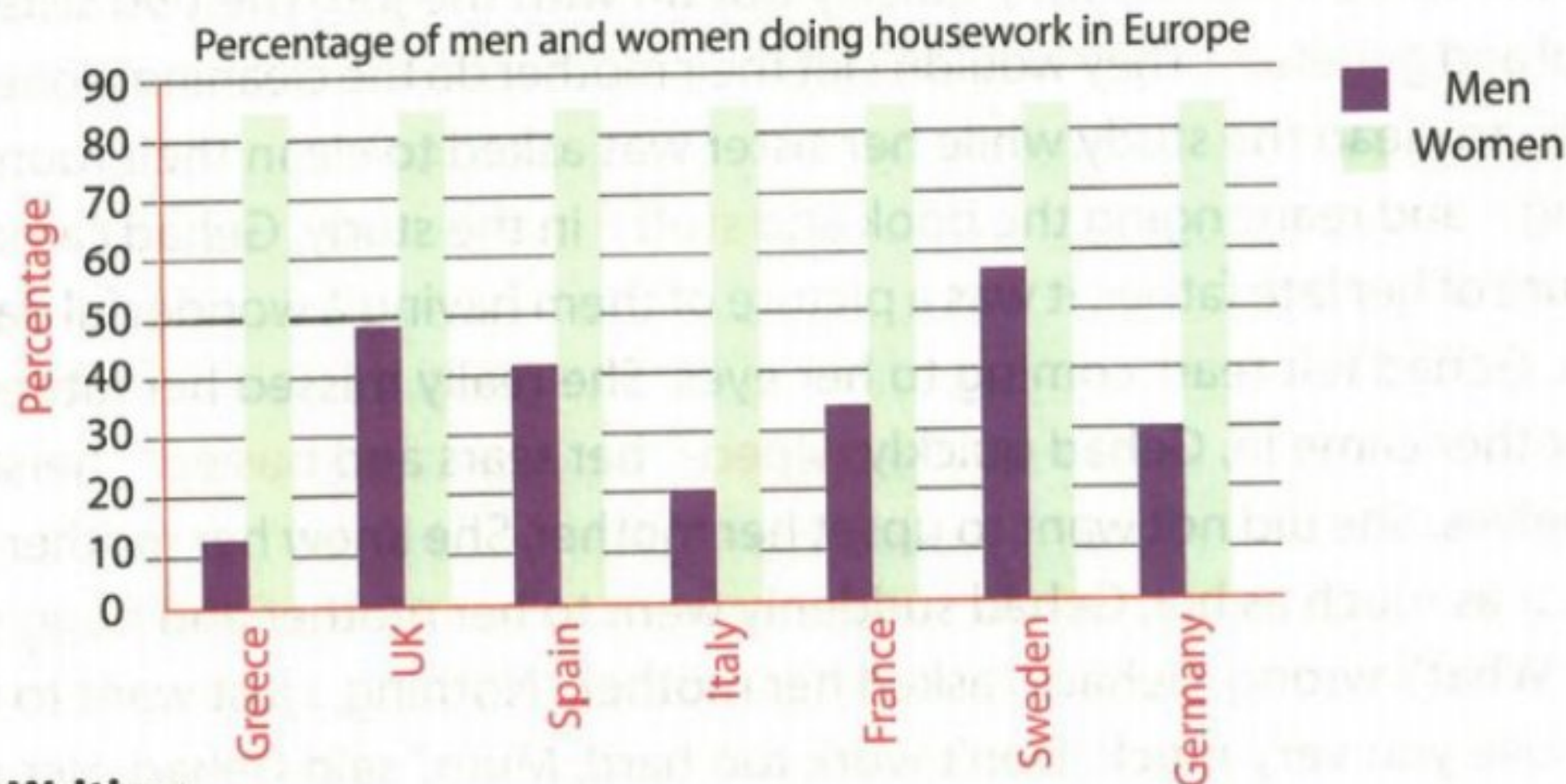


## Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Report writing

Write a report based on the following graph.



## Tips for Writing:

- Start by saying exactly what the graph shows.
  - Describe the change as precisely as you can.
  - Use the data and numbers from the graph.
  - Compare the information.
  - Talk about the differences and similarities.
  - Conclude by saying what the main changes and their meanings are.
- ابداً بذكر ما يظهره الرسم البياني بالضبط.  
صف التغير بشكل دقيق بقدر الإمكان.  
استخدم البيانات والأرقام من الرسم البياني.  
قارن المعلومات.  
تحدث عن الاختلافات والتشابهات.  
اختتم بقول ما هي التغييرات الرئيسية وما تعنيه.

## Model Report

The bar graph shows the percentage of men and women doing housework in Europe. It is clearly seen that there is a very significant difference across countries, from a majority of men, to a small minority in others. Nevertheless, there are no significant differences in the numbers concerning women doing housework in these countries.

The country with the highest number of men doing housework is Sweden where nearly 60% of men do housework, while the country with the smallest number is Greece, where less than 15% of men do housework.

Greece, England, Italy and Spain have very similar numbers; more than 80% of women do housework. However, in France and Sweden, around 80% of women do housework. The country with the smallest number is Germany, where about 70% of women do housework.

In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures is the big similarity across different countries concerning women and a slight difference concerning men. It is especially interesting to note that Sweden has the majority of men and women doing housework. It may show that people in this country share an approach to sharing the responsibilities of life.





1 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

"Today is spring cleaning day!" mother announced **cheerily**<sup>(1)</sup>. Gehad and her sister **groaned**<sup>(2)</sup>. This could only mean one thing – a lot of hard work. However, they put on a brave smile and got ready to work. They knew that their mother needed their help. She was already working two jobs to support them and had very little spare time. So, they quickly got on with the job. The two sisters were helpful and **grateful**<sup>(3)</sup>. They wouldn't let their mother do the cleaning alone. Gehad **opted**<sup>(4)</sup> to clean the study while her sister was asked to clean their room. While **dusting**<sup>(5)</sup> and rearranging the book and **stuff**<sup>(6)</sup> in the study, Gehad came across a picture of her late father. It was a picture of them having a wonderful day at the beach. Gehad felt tears coming to her eyes. She really missed her father. When her mother came in, Gehad quickly **wiped**<sup>(7)</sup> her tears and **busied**<sup>(8)</sup> herself with the shelves. She did not want to upset her mother. She knew her mother missed him just as much as her. Gehad suddenly went to her mother and **hugged**<sup>(9)</sup> her tight. "What's wrong, Gehad?" asked her mother. "Nothing, I just want to tell you that I love you very much. Don't work too hard, Mum," said Gehad. Her mother just smiled at her. The mother thanked her daughters a lot. After the cleaning was over, they had a well-deserved **treat**<sup>(10)</sup> at McDonald's.

- 1 The best title for the passage is ".....".
  - a) The good and cooperative family
  - b) Gehad and her sister
  - c) The meal at the restaurant
  - d) The good mother
- 2 The synonym of the word "groan" is ".....".
  - a) run
  - b) moan
  - c) help
  - d) accept
- 3 "They had a well-deserved treat at McDonald's". Treat here means .....
  - a) discuss
  - b) cure
  - c) meal
  - d) behave
- 4 The two children groaned because .....
  - a) their mother punished them
  - b) they wanted to do their homework
  - c) they wanted to have a meal at McDonald's
  - d) they knew that spring cleaning meant a lot of hard work



(9) احتضنت  
(10) عزومة

(7) مسحت  
(8) أشغلت

(5) تنظيف  
(6) أغراض

(3) ممتن  
(4) فضلت

(1) ببهجة  
(2) يتأوه



5 Gehad's mother worked two jobs because .....

- a) she had to support the whole family
- b) she wanted to save much money
- c) the father was ill and they wanted money
- d) she had much spare time

6 The words 'late father' mean that .....

- a) Gehad's father immigrated
- b) Gehad's father escaped
- c) Gehad's father died
- d) Gehad's father was imprisoned

7 Gehad didn't want her mother to see her crying because .....

- a) she didn't want her to know that her father died
- b) she didn't want to be punished
- c) she didn't want to upset her mother
- d) she didn't want to stop cleaning

8 What kind of girl do you think Gehad is?

- a) She is a hard-working girl.
- b) She is a wasteful girl.
- c) She is a cruel and aggressive girl.
- d) She is a loving and thoughtful girl.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Which of these sentences has the comma in the right place?

- a) Please, get me, some eggs milk and some butter.
- b) Please, get me some eggs milk and, some butter.
- c) Please, get me some eggs, milk, and some butter.
- d) Please get me some eggs milk and, some butter.

2 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?

- a) The womens' dresses are on the second floor.
- b) The woman' dresses are on the second floor.
- c) The women's' dresses are on the second floor.
- d) The women's dresses are on the second floor.

3 Decide which part of speech is the underlined word.

If your car isn't working, you can take mine.

- a) Adjective.
- b) Noun.
- c) Pronoun.
- d) Adverb.



4 Your conclusion should include all of the following EXCEPT .....

- a) a restatement of your thesis statement
- b) a transition sentence
- c) a re-connection with your introduction
- d) supporting details

5 What should the last sentence in the introduction paragraph be?

- a) A thesis statement.
- b) A topic sentence.
- c) A closing sentence.
- d) A transition sentence.

6 "I've never forgotten this bad experience, and I'd like to advise everyone not to drive when they are very tired." The sentence above is .....

- a) an introduction to a narrative essay
- b) the final outcome and the message when concluding an essay
- c) a topic sentence to narrate an incident
- d) a supporting sentence to persuade the reader to do something

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 There have been so many famous women in history. They all make great role models to celebrate on International Women's Day and in trying to promote women's rights.

- (a) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات في التاريخ وهن جميعاً يرفضن نماذج عظيمة نحتفى بهن في يوم المرأة العالمي في محاولة لتعزيز حقوق المرأة.
- (b) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات في التاريخ وهن جميعاً يمثلن أدواراً عظيمة نحتفى بهن في يوم المرأة العالمي في محاولة لتعزيز حقوق المرأة.
- (c) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات في التاريخ وهن جميعاً يمثلن نماذج عظيمة نحتفى بهن في يوم المرأة العالمي في محاولة لتعزيز حقوق المرأة.
- (d) هناك الكثير من النساء المشهورات في التاريخ وهن جميعاً يمثلن نماذج عظيمة نحتفى بهن في يوم المرأة العالمي في محاولة لتقنين حقوق المرأة.

2 The Egyptian government aims to empower poor women in Upper Egypt, in order to enjoy a better quality of life. It offers sustainable interventions that would have a great impact on their livelihoods.

- (a) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تمكين النساء الفقيرات في صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تدخلات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على سبل عيشهم.
- (b) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تقوية النساء الفقيرات في صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تطورات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على سبل عيشهم.
- (c) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تمكين النساء الفقيرات في ريف مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تدخلات حيوية من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على سبل عيشهم.
- (d) تهدف الحكومة المصرية إلى تمكين النساء الفقيرات في صعيد مصر من أجل التمتع بنوعية حياة أفضل كما توفر تدخلات مستدامة من شأنها أن يكون لها تأثير كبير على حيويتهن.



3 Egypt celebrates Women's Day on the 16<sup>th</sup> of March which is a special day in the history of Egyptian women's struggle towards her rights. It dates back to its first participation in political demonstrations during the 1919 Revolution.

- (a) تحتفل مصريوم المرأة في السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص في تاريخ نضال المرأة المصرية من أجل واجباتها ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى في التظاهرات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.
- (b) تحتفل مصريوم المرأة في السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص في تاريخ انتصار المرأة المصرية من أجل حقوقها ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى في التظاهرات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.
- (c) تحتفل مصريوم المرأة في السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص في تاريخ نضال المرأة المصرية من أجل حقوقها. ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى في التظاهرات الاجتماعية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.
- (d) تحتفل مصريوم المرأة في السادس عشر من مارس، وهو يوم خاص في تاريخ نضال المرأة المصرية من أجل حقوقها. ويعود إلى مشاركتها الأولى في التظاهرات السياسية خلال ثورة ١٩١٩.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4 استخدام التكنولوجيا في التعليم جعل منه أكثر متعة بالنسبة للطلاب، مما يزيد من دافعيتهم نحو التعلم، إذ يمكن للدروس المملة أن تصبح أكثر متعة لهم عن طريق الأجهزة الحديثة.

- a) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which increases their push towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.
- b) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which increases their innovation towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.
- c) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which doubles their motivation towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.
- d) The use of technology in education has made it more enjoyable for students, which increases their motivation towards learning, as boring lessons can become more enjoyable for them through modern devices.

5 يسعى المجلس القومي للمرأة إلى ترسيخ الاعتراف بالقيمة الجوهرية لحقوق المرأة المصرية وعلى تفعيل واحترام وحماية هذه الحقوق.

- a) The National Council for Women seeks to consolidate the recognition of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to activate, respect and protect these rights.
- b) The National Council for Women seeks to stabilise the recognition of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to prohibit, respect and protect these rights.
- c) The National Council for Women seeks to settle down the recognition of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to prospect, respect and protect these rights.
- d) The National Council for Women seeks to consolidate the admittance of the intrinsic value of Egyptian women's rights and to rehabilitate, respect and protect these rights.



6 استضافت مصر الدورة السابعة والعشرين لمؤتمر المناخ في نوفمبر الماضي في شرم الشيخ ونجحت أن يكون نقطة تحول على صعيد عمل المناخ الدولي.

- a) Egypt hosted the 27<sup>th</sup> tournament of the Climate Conference last November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It succeeded in making it a turning point for international climate action.
- b) Egypt hosted the 27<sup>th</sup> championship of the Climate Conference last November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It succeeded in making it a turning point for the international climate race.
- c) Egypt hosted the 27<sup>th</sup> session of the Climate Conference last November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It succeeded in making it a turning point for international climate action.
- d) Egypt hosted the 27<sup>th</sup> session of the Climate Conference last November in Sharm El-Sheikh. It succeeded in making it a backward point for international climate action.

4 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

"A great woman that you can consider your role model."



متنساش تتابعنا ♥

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The caller made an important ..... to the debate in the programme.  
a) aspiration      b) inspection      c) production      d) contribution
- 2 We should avoid negative ..... regarding women's role in society.  
a) paintings      b) stereotypes      c) surveys      d) reputations
- 3 The government is taking more steps to eliminate ..... all forms of ..... against women.  
a) history      b) research      c) justice      d) prejudice
- 4 The village's crowded classrooms ..... the need for building another school there.  
a) ignore      b) argue      c) demonstrate      d) condemn
- 5 There is a vegetarian ..... on the menu for those who don't eat meat every day.  
a) alternative      b) constitution      c) prescription      d) intention
- 6 My penfriend claims to be distantly ..... to the British royal family.  
a) related      b) attracted      c) suck      d) communicated
- 7 The story reflects very modern concerns and issues. The verb "reflect" is the antonym of the verb ".....".  
a) care      b) show      c) ignore      d) believe
- 8 The Egyptian turtle, which is very rare, is mainly located in the Mediterranean ..... in Egypt and Libya.  
a) district      b) zone      c) region      d) village
- 9 How long ..... to contact Sarah before you gave up?  
a) will you try      b) had you been trying  
c) have you been trying      d) were you trying
- 10 I ..... my driving test before I bought the car.  
a) had been passing      b) have passed  
c) had passed      d) have been passing
- 11 I ..... in the boat for two hours when I caught a huge fish.  
a) was sitting      b) sat  
c) have been sitting      d) had been sitting
- 12 When she died, they ..... married for 40 years.  
a) had been      b) will have been      c) have been      d) were



13 The apple tree and the pear tree are both the same height. They are ..... each other.

- a) as tall as      b) taller than      c) most taller      d) most tallest

14 In an essay about the advantages and disadvantages of a thing, the introduction sentence should .....

- a) refer to the two different points of view  
b) refer to the writer's point of view  
c) refer to one point of view  
d) refer to other people's opinion

► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

One of England's greatest writers, Charles Dickens, was born in 1812. His father was careless with money. When he was 12, he had to leave school to work in a **shoe dye**<sup>(1)</sup> factory in London because his father had been imprisoned for debt. This experience deeply shamed and frightened the young boy, and those feelings were later expressed in his writing, particularly in his descriptions of the working conditions of the poor Victorian factories.

When his father came into an **inheritance**<sup>(2)</sup>, young Dickens could return to his school, but the family's fortunes were never very secure. At the age of 15, he left school to join a law firm as a clerk. Then, after four years, he went into journalism, reporting law cases and parliamentary debates. **These** work experiences helped to develop still further his social awareness, which again would later be reflected in his novels.

Dickens' success as a writer began when he started writing *The Pickwick Papers* in 1836. These were originally intended as a **humorous**<sup>(3)</sup> narrative to **accompany**<sup>(4)</sup> a series of drawings. Within four months, he had become famous. *The Pickwick Papers* was not only humorous, but also made a serious attempt to look at the legal system and to show how justice was applied. Also, interestingly, it is a clear **illustration**<sup>(5)</sup> of how Dickens' private life was reflected in his work, as Mr. Pickwick spent some time in a debtor's prison, just like Dickens' own father.

Dickens' early life had clearly enabled him to write about the poor and **dispossessed**<sup>(6)</sup> with understanding and **compassion**<sup>(7)</sup>. This compassion also made itself felt in practical ways. He helped to establish a home for **destitute**<sup>(8)</sup> women and encouraged **slum**<sup>(9)</sup> clearance and developments in **sanitary provisions**<sup>(10)</sup>.



(9) حى فقير  
(10) تدابير صحية

(7) عطف  
(8) معدم

(5) توضيح  
(6) محروم

(3) خفيف الظل  
(4) يصطحب

(1) صبيغ الأحذية  
(2) ميراث



- 15 Charles Dickens was born in the ..... century.  
 a) 19<sup>th</sup> b) 20<sup>th</sup>  
 c) 17<sup>th</sup> d) 18<sup>th</sup>
- 16 Why did Charles have to work at an early age?  
 a) Because his father had gone to prison.  
 b) Because his father was careless.  
 c) Because he wanted to leave school.  
 d) Because his father died.
- 17 Dickens' family didn't have enough money although his father ....  
 a) came to an inheritance  
 b) went to prison  
 c) let him leave school  
 d) allowed him to join a law firm
- 18 Dickens was deeply affected by .....  
 a) his father's imprisonment  
 b) his early working in a factory  
 c) working conditions of the poor  
 d) all of these
- 19 This passage speaks about Dickens as a ..... more than a writer.  
 a) humanitarian b) decision-maker  
 c) social reformer d) social worker
- 20 The synonym of the word "humorous" is .....  
 a) funny b) dull  
 c) dangerous d) serious
- 21 The best title for the passage is '.....'.  
 a) Dickens' suffering in the factory  
 b) Dickens as a writer  
 c) Dickens' suffering and interest in society  
 d) Dickens' early life
- 22 The underlined word 'These' refers to .....  
 a) Dickens' novels  
 b) Pickwick Papers  
 c) Dickens' bad conditions  
 d) Dickens' work experiences

**قناة العباقرة ٣ث**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**





► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Life was not always a bed of roses for Hanan. She was born into a life of poverty and suffering. Her parents were lowly-paid farmers who barely made ends meet. They did not have the means to send Hanan to school.

When Hanan was nine, **her parents passed away** due to exhaustion and ill health. She was then sent to the local orphanage. There, she was finally given a chance to learn. She was a very bright student who was hungry for knowledge and learnt very quickly. Two years later, Hanan was finally adopted by a rich businessman and his wife.

Hanan lived happily with her new adoptive parents. They sent her to a proper school and enrolled her in many classes to help her catch up with her peers. She devoted much time to her studies and got good grades in school. Her adoptive parents were very proud of her.

Hanan continued to thrive under the loving care of her new attentive and supportive parents. Hanan continued to excel in her studies. **This** was because she came from a poor background and treasured the chance to be given a proper education. She eventually did well enough to go to university.

**There**, Hanan studied psychology. She was interested in specialising in child psychology. She wanted to be able to make a difference in their lives. She started volunteering her time and services at an orphanage during her free time. She often told the children in the orphanage her own life experiences. She was a motivation to many of them there. It made her appreciate her life more and strengthened her determination to help other children like herself.

23 The best title for the passage is ".....".

- |                                   |                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a) Hanan's determination to excel | b) Hanan's miserable life  |
| c) Hanan's supportive parents     | d) Life with poor children |

24 The expression "**her parents passed away**" means .....

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| a) her parents were very ill | b) her parents immigrated |
| c) her parents dismissed her | d) her parents died       |

25 According to paragraph one, why did Hanan not attend school?

- |  |
|--|
| a) She was suffering from ill health.                  |
| b) She wanted to lie in a bed of roses.                |
| c) Her parents could not afford to send her to school. |
| d) She wanted to play with other children.             |



► 26 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?

- a) Hanan spent two years in the orphanage.
- b) Hanan was deprived of food at the orphanage.
- c) Hanan's parents passed away when she was nine.
- d) Hanan was given an education at the orphanage.

27 How did Hanan feel towards her adoptive parents?

- a) She was devoted to them.
- b) She was supportive of them.
- c) She was very proud of them.
- d) She slowly grew to have an affection for them.

28 What does 'This' refer to?

- a) Hanan's doing well in her studies.
- b) Hanan's love for her adoptive parents.
- c) Hanan's coming from a poor background.
- d) Hanan's treasuring the chance to receive a proper education.

29 Why did Hanan choose to study child psychology?

- a) She wanted to volunteer at the orphanage.
- b) She wanted to be different from her parents.
- c) She wanted to help other children who had a similar background to hers.
- d) She wanted to find out why children like herself turned out that way.

30 The underlined word "There" refers to the .....

- a) orphanage
- b) university
- c) village
- d) school

► Choose the correct Arabic translation:

31 The National Road Project in Egypt will not only improve internal trade but also increase foreign trade and economic movement. Therefore, economic growth will be boosted.

- (a) لن يؤدي مشروع الطرق القومي في مصر إلى تحسين التجارة الداخلية، بل سيؤدي أيضاً إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم تعزيز النمو الاقتصادي.
- (b) لن يؤدي مشروع الطرق القومي في مصر إلى تحسين التجارة الداخلية، بل سيؤدي أيضاً إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم جذب النمو الاقتصادي.
- (c) لن يؤدي مشروع الطرق القومي في مصر إلى تحسين التجارة الداخلية فحسب، بل سيؤدي أيضاً إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم تعزيز النمو الاقتصادي.
- (d) لن يؤدي مشروع الطرق القومي في مصر إلى تحسين التجارة القومية فحسب، بل سيؤدي أيضاً إلى زيادة التجارة الخارجية والحركة الاقتصادية لذلك، سيتم تعزيز النمو الاقتصادي.

قناة العباقرة ٣  
علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe





32 Young people are the future of society. When the young man contributes his/her ideas and energy to resolve social issues, he/she becomes a leader and can also make a difference in the lives of others.

- (a) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وطاقته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يختلف عن حياة الآخرين.
- (b) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وقوته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يختلف عن حياة الآخرين.
- (c) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وأنشطته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يحدث فرقًا في حياة الآخرين.
- (d) الشباب هو مستقبل المجتمع فعندما يساهم الشاب بأفكاره وطاقته لحل القضايا الاجتماعية، يصبح قائدًا ويمكنه أيضًا أن يحدث فرقًا في حياة الآخرين.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

- 33 لم يكد مدير الشركة يتسلم عمله حتى بدأ الإعداد لخطط جديدة لتطوير إدارات الشركة وخاصة خدمة العملاء.
- a) No sooner the company manager had taken over his job than he started preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
- b) No sooner had the company manager taken over his job than he started preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
- c) No sooner had the company manager taken over his job until he started preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
- d) No sooner does the company manager taken over his job when he starts preparing new plans to develop the company's departments, especially customer service.
- 34 لقد أدركت الشعوب أهمية تعليم الفتيات ومشاركتهم الفعالة في المجتمع لذا تهتم الحكومات ببناء المدارس لهم وتعزيز مشاركتهم في الحياة العامة.
- a) Peoples have realised the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments pay attention to building schools for them and enhancing their participation in public life.
- b) Peoples have achieved the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments pay attention to building schools for them and enhancing their participation in public life.
- c) Peoples have boosted the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments are interested in building schools for them and enhancing their participation in general life.
- d) Peoples have recognised the importance of girls' education and their active participation in society, so governments are interested in building schools for them and enhancing their participation in general life.



**▶ Answer the following questions: (Great Expectations)**

**35** If you were Estella, would you treat Pip so badly? Why? Why not?

```
=====
=====
=====
=====
```

**36** In your opinion, why was Mrs Joe keen on Pip's going to Miss Havisham's house?

```

=====
=====
=====
=====

```

**37 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:**

"How different is it to communicate with people online and in person?"

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 403



### Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

**Study again**

50 : 64%

**Practise more**

65 : 84%

**Take more exams**

85 : 100%

**Well done!**





# Beyond imagination

## Unit 3

## Objectives

**Reading** : A scientific text

**Writing** : Online comments about the impact of technology; An argumentative essay about green technology

**Listening** : A discussion about innovations in medicine

**Speaking** : Making predictions about the future of technology

**Language**: Future tenses; present perfect for future use

**Life Skills**: Problem solving; Critical thinking

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى  
الوحدة الرقمية

متنساش تتابعنا ♥

CREATORS  
TEAM



@TANEASNAWE





## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

approach (n)	مفهوم/منهج
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء
astronomer (n)	عالم فلك
experiment (v) (ed) (n)	يجرى تجربة/تجربة
immerse (v) (d)	يحيط/يغمر
implement (v) (ed)	ينفذ/يجري/يحقق
inconvenient (adj)	غير ملائم/غير مناسب
mass-produce (v) (d)	ينتج بالجملة
planet (n)	كوكب

process (n) (v) (ed)*	عملية/يقوم بإجراء
solar system (n)	المجموعة الشمسية
spacecraft (n)	سفينة فضاء/مركبة فضائية
speaker (n)	سماعة/مكبر صوت
spectacularly (adv)	بصورة مذهلة
surface (n)	سطح
surround (v) (ed) (n)	يحيط/إحاطة
universe (n)	الكون

Students should be actively involved  
in the learning **process**.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

advance (n) (v) (d)	تقدم/يتقدم
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
advertise (v) (d)	يعلن عن
adverts (n)	إعلانات
application (n)	تطبيق
audio (adj)	صوتي/سماعي
basic (adj)	أساسي
burning (adj)	مشتعل/عاجل
Celsius (n)	مئوية
competitive (adj)	تنافسي
conquer (v) (ed)	يقهر/يغزو/يتغلب على
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج

curious (adj)	فضولي/غريب
director (n)	مخرج/مدير
Dolby Stereo (n)	نظام صوتي مجسم
essential (adj)	ضروري
evidence (n)	دليل
expand (v) (ed)	يتمد/يوسع/يتمدد
extreme (adj)	شديد/مفرط/متطرف
falcon (n)	الصقر
frozen (adj)	متجمد
illustrated book (n)	كتاب مصور
immersive (adj)	غامر/محيط
inch (n)	بوصة (وحدة قياس)
innovation (n)	إبداع



instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	roll (n)	لفة (ورق/قماش)
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	Saturn (n)	كوكب زحل
lie (v) (d)	يقع	scare (v) (d)	يرعب
likely (adv)	من المحتمل	science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
liquid (n)	سائل	space (n)	الفضاء
method (n)	طريقة	step (n)	خطوة
minus (prep)	سالب/ناقص	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
packaging (n)	التعبئة والتغليف	surround sound (n)	صوت مجسم
paper-thin (adj)	في سُمْك الورقة	survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
permanent (adj)	دائم	system (n)	نظام
potentially (adv)	من المحتمل	teen (n)	مراهق
practical (adj)	عملي	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ	tin (n)	علبة صفيح لحفظ الطعام
printing (n)	الطباعة	totally (adv)	كلياً/تماماً
provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر	trainers (n)	حذاء رياضي
quality (n)	نوعية/جودة	tutor (n)	معلم خاص
queue (n)	صف/طابور	visuals (n)	مرئيات/مؤثرات بصرية
require (v) (d)	يتطلب/يحتاج		

### Workbook Vocabulary

cancel (v) (led)	يلغي	popular (adj)	محبوب/شعبي
college (n)	كلية	powerful (adj)	قوى
cycle lane (n)	ممر/حارة للدراجات	seat (n)	مقعد
educational (adj)	تعليمي	shape (n)	شكل
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف	square (n)	مربع
face (v) (d)	يواجه		



## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Increasing the number of women in the political field is a slow ..... which will take much time.  
a) survey      b) process      c) search      d) pressure
- 2 The chef said that the shells should be ..... in boiling water for two minutes before making the seafood dish.  
a) flooded      b) dived      c) immersed      d) drowned
- 3 The P.E. teacher told the children to form an orderly ..... before going back to their class.  
a) draw      b) roll      c) shape      d) queue
- 4 Scientists must do a series of ..... to test the effectiveness of any new drug.  
a) experiences      b) experiments  
c) exams      d) examples
- 5 Working at the weekend is very ..... for me. I must have enough rest.  
a) inconvenient      b) perfect  
c) modular      d) interesting
- 6 The publishing company is specialised in ..... books for nursery and primary school students.  
a) academic      b) immersive      c) expanded      d) illustrated
- 7 The ..... system is the sun and all the planets that move around it.  
a) lunar      b) solar      c) space      d) security
- 8 The TV channel stopped the programmes to transmit تبث the ..... videos about the earthquake.  
a) burning      b) flipping      c) persuasive      d) affecting
- 9 Many scientists believe that the Earth is the only ..... that has life in the solar system.  
a) plant      b) galaxy      c) planet      d) comet
- 10 The new 3D wallpaper cost me three hundred pounds a .....  
a) gram      b) roll      c) weight      d) speck

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

after all	على أي حال/أخيرًا	on a big scale	على نطاق كبير
at a competitive price	بسعر منافس	on average	في المتوسط
make noises	يصدر صوتًا/ضوضاء	on display	في العرض
(be) able to	قادر على	find out about	يكتشف عن
discuss with	يناقش مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
essential for/to	ضروري لـ	search for	يبحث عن

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	إعلان	advertised	معلن عنه
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	خلق/إبداع منشئ/مبتكر	creative	مبدع/خلاق
expand	يمد/يتوسع/يتمدد	expansion	تمدد/توسع	expandable	يمكن مده
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالي (مبدع) خيالي (غير واقعي)
implement	ينفذ/يجري/يحقق	implementation	إجراء/تنفيذ	implemented	مُطبق/منفذ
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبتكر	innovative	مبدع/إبداعي
introduce	يقدم	introduction	تقديم/مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
process	يجري عملية/يعالج	process processor	عملية معالج	processed	معالج
provide	يزود/يوفر	provision	توفير/إمداد	provisional	تمويلي/إمدادي
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلبات	required	مطلوب
surround	يحيط بـ	surround surroundings	إحاطة الأشياء المحيطة/البيئة المحيطة	surrounding	محيط بـ
survive	ينجو	survival survivor	النجاة ناج	surviving	ناجي

## قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe

- The company **expands** its business in the city.
- The **expansion** in the city will benefit their capital.
- Their type of business is **expandable**.

120

Unit 3





## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
basic	أساسي	main/major	minor/unimportant فرعى/غير هام
conquer	يقهر/يتغلب على	defeat/overcome	surrender/assist يستسلم/يساعد
curious	فضولى	interested/inquisitive	unconcerned/incurious غير مهتم
essential	ضرورى	necessary/obligatory	optional/free اختياري/حر
expand	يمد/يتوسع	extend/enlarge	decrease/shrink يقل/ينكمش
imagine	يتخيل	fancy/suppose	neglect/disregard يهمل/يتجاهل
implement	ينفذ/يجرى	carry out/enforce	cancel/give up يلغى/يستسلم
innovation	إبداع	creativity	tradition/imitating تقليد
method	طريقة	order/pattern	disorganisation/chaos عدم تنظيم/فوضى
practical	عملى	feasible/pragmatic	irrational/impractical غير عقلاني/غير عملى
predict	يتنبأ بـ	anticipate/foresee	ignore يتجاهل
require	يتطلب/يطلب	need/desire	dislike/refuse يكره/يرفض
spectacularly	بشكل رائع	amazingly/extraordinarily	badly/poorly بشكل سيئ/بشكل ضعيف
survive	ينجو	remain/last	die/pass away يموت
totally	كليئاً/تماماً	entirely/absolutely	incompletely/partially بشكل غير كامل/جزئياً

### Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many people feel puzzled by the speed of technological innovation. The synonym of "innovation" is ".....".  
a) tradition      b) imitating      c) cheat      d) creativity
- I am used to discussing all my problems ..... my family.  
a) for      b) in      c) with      d) at
- I learned about the job from an ..... in the newspaper.  
a) advertise      b) advertisement      c) advertised      d) advertising

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





- 4 New mobile phone models are usually produced on a big ..... as soon as they are developed.  
a) line                      b) measure                      c) weight                      d) scale
- 5 Hundreds of ancient Egyptian objects will be on ..... for the first time in the Grand Egyptian Museum.  
a) display                      b) fair                      c) purpose                      d) gallery
- 6 Many farms in the countryside lack the basic equipment. The antonym of the adjective "basic" is ".....".  
a) main                      b) major                      c) minor                      d) complex
- 7 Doctors say that a good diet is essential ..... all people whether you are young or old.  
a) of                      b) for                      c) on                      d) at
- 8 The parliament must pass the law that would implement tax reforms. The verb "implement" is the opposite of ".....".  
a) enforce                      b) carry out                      c) design                      d) cancel
- 9 The hotel wants to expand its business by adding a new building. The noun of the verb "expand" is ".....".  
a) expands                      b) expanded                      c) expansion                      d) expandable
- 10 Only 12 of the 140 passengers on the plane survived the crash. The verb "survive" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
a) inure                      b) remain                      c) die                      d) pass away

### Notes on Vocabulary

Is there a clear difference between "process" and "operation"?

**advertise** يعلن عن  
يخبر الأشخاص بمنتج أو خدمة ومحاولة إقناعهم بشرائها، في صحيفة أو تلفزيون أو عبر الإنترنت

The actress has signed a deal to **advertise** the company's hair care products.

**promote** يروج  
(لمحاولة زيادة مبيعات أو شعبية منتج أو حدث)

The famous singer is in London to **promote** his album which wasn't very successful.

**publicise** يقوم بالدعاية  
(يخبر الجمهور بشيء من خلال الكتابة عنه في الصحف والتحدث عنه في التلفزيون)

The hostages' case has been widely **publicised** over the last week.

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## evidence

دليل (حقائق أو علامات تظهر وجود أو صدق شيء بوضوح)

facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true,

► Scientists are hoping to find **evidence** that there was once life on Mars.

► There was not enough **evidence** to convict him of the murder.

🔔 **لاحظ** يمكن استخدام (sign) أو (indicator) بهذا المعنى

## 2 symptom

عَرَض (علامة على وجود مرض أو مشكلة خطيرة)

a sign that someone has an illness or that a serious problem exists

► Some of the **symptoms** of COVID-19 disease are tiredness and bone pains.

## signal

علامة (تدل على أنك يجب أن تفعل شيئاً أو أن لديك اتجاهًا محددًا)

a sign that shows that you should do something, or that you have a particular attitude

► Severe chest pain is a warning **signal** that cannot be ignored.

## expand

يتوسع/يتوسع (يزيد في الحجم أو يوسع نشاطًا)

to become larger in size, or to include a wider range of activities

► The business has **expanded** at a rate of 15% per year.

## increase

يزيد (يصبح أكبر في العدد أو الكمية أو الدرجة)

to become larger in number, amount, or degree

► Sales **increased** by 25%.

► The level of violence has **increased**.

## double/triple

يتضاعف أو يزيد ثلاث مرات

to become twice as much or three times as much

► Since 1950, the number of people dying from cancer has almost **doubled**.

► The company's profits **tripled** last quarter.

## astronaut

رائد فضاء

► Inside a spacecraft, **astronauts** float weightless, hardly in contact with the floor.

## 4 astronomer

عالم فلك

► **Astronomers** all over the world will be observing the solar eclipse كسوف.

## astrologer

منجم

► Some people believe what **astrologers** tell them about their future.

## قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





### process

- ١ - عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شيء
- ٢ - عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شيء)

5

### operation

- ١ - عملية جراحية
- ٢ - عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة

- ▶ Coal forms by a slow **process** of chemical change.
- ▶ Learning a language is a slow **process**.

### instead

- بدلاً من ذلك، (تستخدم لربط جملتين أو تأتي في نهاية جملة)

6

### instead of

- بدلاً من (يتبعها اسم أو v+ing)

- ▶ I couldn't afford a new car. **Instead**, I bought a used one.
- ▶ We didn't have enough money for a movie, so we went to the park **instead**.
- ▶ You should talk to your teacher **instead of** just **complaining** to me about the problem.

### Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ▶ 1 A COVID-19 patient complains of all the usual flu ..... - a high temperature, headache, and so on.  
a) symptoms      b) signals      c) evidences      d) notes
- 2 The UN rescue ..... started shortly after the earthquake in Syria and Turkey.  
a) process      b) operation      c) option      d) intention
- 3 All multinational companies carry out their plans to ..... in many countries.  
a) increase      b) double      c) triple      d) expand
- 4 NASA has a special centre for training ..... on floating in space before starting their missions in spacecraft.  
a) astronomers      b) astrologers      c) archaeologists      d) astronauts
- 5 Many people make the mistake of ..... rumours on social media before investigating them.  
a) advertising      b) promoting      c) publicising      d) marketing
- 6 The criminal's wife was charged with giving false ..... in court to free her husband.  
a) symptom      b) signal      c) evidence      d) note
- 7 Repetition can help the learning ..... especially for primary school pupils.  
a) process      b) operation      c) option      d) intention
- 8 I believe that it is completely wrong to believe what ..... tell you about success or failure in your life.  
a) astronomers      b) astrologers      c) archaeologists      d) astronauts





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I've just read an interesting book which has a new ..... to the history of Europe.  
a) means                      b) approach                      c) application                      d) placement
- 2 A/An ..... is a scientist who studies the stars and planets and other space objects.  
a) astronomer                      b) astrologer                      c) astronaut                      d) chemist
- 3 The team doctor told the footballer to ..... his foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.  
a) persecute                      b) expect                      c) immerse                      d) implement
- 4 The car factory has ..... a new plan to increase the sales per month.  
a) appeared                      b) reflected                      c) implanted                      d) implemented
- 5 The new machine was simpler and easier to mass- ..... than the old one.  
a) introduce                      b) present                      c) produce                      d) innovate
- 6 Although there are different opinions, no one is sure if there is intelligent life elsewhere in the .....  
a) universe                      b) verse                      c) star                      d) planet
- 7 Children who miss a lot of schoolwork through illness usually need a home ..... to keep up with their study.  
a) principal                      b) trainee                      c) coach                      d) tutor
- 8 There are plans to ..... the airport in Sharm El-Sheikh to hold bigger planes.  
a) expand                      b) increase                      c) double                      d) triple
- 9 Modern ..... in medicine mean that the average life expectancy is increasing at a far more rapid rate.  
a) powers                      b) respects                      c) advances                      d) hindrances
- 10 The present financial crisis has led to price rises in ..... foodstuffs, such as meat, cheese and sugar.  
a) basic                      b) minor                      c) extreme                      d) worthless
- 11 Good teamwork is a/an ..... method for effective management and usually leads to success.  
a) offensive                      b) powerful                      c) useless                      d) permanent
- 12 From 1960 to 1965, the Soviets launched twenty-six known ..... into space.  
a) systems                      b) moons                      c) vehicles                      d) spacecraft
- 13 Youssef Shaheen is considered one of the best film ..... in Egypt throughout history.  
a) astronomers                      b) clients                      c) directors                      d) customers
- 14 Some angry football fans ran onto the field and ..... the referee and the players.  
a) respected                      b) required                      c) detached                      d) surrounded
- 15 Essam inherited his ..... personality from his father, who was another great athlete.  
a) competitive                      b) comparative                      c) relative                      d) speculative

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





- 16 A refining ..... is used to purify drainage water **مياه الصرف** and use it for agriculture.  
a) technique      b) operation      c) work      d) process
- 17 She was determined to conquer her fear of flying. The verb "conquer" is the synonym of the verb ".....".  
a) miss      b) overcome      c) attack      d) submit
- 18 My uncle sent me an illustrated book which ..... noises when I turn the pages.  
a) sends      b) receives      c) makes      d) absorbs
- 19 The River Nile is essential ..... people's lives in Egypt.  
a) about      b) at      c) in      d) for
- 20 Various projects for constructing new bridges and roads are under ..... in Egypt.  
a) implement      b) implementation      c) implemented      d) implements
- 21 Various vaccines are now produced on a big ..... in many countries.  
a) scale      b) space      c) distance      d) road
- 22 The gallery's focus will expand to include the work of modern artists.  
The antonym of the verb "expand" is ".....".  
a) disappear      b) grow      c) increase      d) shrink
- 23 Mary is so ..... that she can make her own clothes.  
a) create      b) creation      c) creative      d) created
- 24 On ....., prices of food products have increased by about eight percent.  
a) average      b) expected      c) placement      d) degree
- 25 At the Summer Sale, most products are sold ..... a competitive price.  
a) with      b) on      c) about      d) at
- 26 The Ministry of Education has been trying to support ..... to digital learning.  
(Longman)  
a) approaches      b) operations      c) obstacles      d) difficulties
- 27 There is now a large selection of portable Bluetooth ..... available on Amazon in Egypt.  
(Longman)  
a) readers      b) speakers      c) listeners      d) writers
- 28 The ..... is no longer mysterious thanks to scientists who have clarified the world round us.  
(Longman)  
a) plant      b) island      c) desert      d) universe
- 29 Photosynthesis is the ..... by which green plants and certain other organisms transform light energy into chemical energy.  
(Longman)  
a) process      b) operation      c) industry      d) mechanism
- 30 Since the landing of Apollo 11 in 1969, twelve ..... have walked on the moon.  
(Longman)  
a) astrologers      b) astronomers      c) astronauts      d) artists





## The Present Perfect for the Future

المضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل

يستخدم كل من المضارع البسيط والمضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد روابط زمنية معينة:

### Future simple

(will, be going to + inf.)

after, before, till/until, when, as soon as,  
once, now that, the moment

### Present simple

Present perfect

- ▶ After Ahmed **finishes/has finished** his exams, I'll **take** him for a picnic.
- ▶ The manager **is going to see** you **as soon as** he **comes** out of the meeting.
- ▶ He **won't say** anything **until** the boss **tells** him.

▶ Call me **as soon as** you **get** back.

لاحظ أن الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل

▶ I **won't touch** (Don't touch) anything **before** the police **arrive**.

في الجمل السابقة استخدمنا المستقبل لحدث سوف يتم بعد حدث آخر في المستقبل أو قبله ولكن إذا كان الأمر عادة أو شيئاً دائماً الحدوث نستخدم المضارع البسيط في الجملتين مع أداة الربط.

▶ After I **finish** my homework, I **usually help** my sister with hers.

▶ I **always have** a cup of tea **before** I **leave** for work.

▶ I **never buy** canned food **until** I **check** the expiry date.

يجب استخدام المضارع التام عندما نبين أن الحدث لابد أن يتم قبل الحدث الآخر.

▶ I'll **help** you when I **have eaten** my lunch.

لن تتم المساعدة هنا إلا بعد تمام الأكل.

إذا جاءت **when** بمعنى متى "At what time" يمكن أن يأتي المستقبل بعدها.

▶ When **will** you **finish** your work?

▶ I don't know when he **will visit** us.

لاحظ

١ نستخدم **while** للتعبير عن حدث سيحدث وقت وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل ويأتي بعدها المضارع البسيط أو المضارع المستمر.

▶ While I **look** for a job, I'll **continue** to study.

▶ While Ali **is playing** the final tomorrow, I'll **be watching** the match.

٢ هناك أفعال تعبر ضمناً على أنها مستقبل ولكن شكلها مضارع بسيط مثل:

**want, need, must, have to, are to, etc.** فنستخدم معها نفس القاعدة.

▶ I **want** you to be in charge **until** I get back from holiday.

٣ نستخدم **noun/ v+ing** بعد **after/before/while** إذا لم يأت فاعل بعدهم على أن يكون الفاعل في الجملتين واحداً.

▶ After **doing** my exercise, I'll **help** you. = After **exercise**, I'll **help** you.

٤ لا يأتي المستقبل أبداً بعد الروابط الزمنية.

▶ After I **will finish** my work, I'll **help** you. (X)

▶ After I **finish/has finished** my work, I'll **help** you. (✓)

٥ يمكن استخدام المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط أو التام والمستقبل.

▶ When this letter **is written**, it **will be sent**.

قناة العباقرة ٣

Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2 127

علي تطبيق Telegram

ابط القناة @taneasnawe





**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1** I'll be at the airport when ..... .  
a) you will get there                      b) the plane will take off  
c) the plane landed                        d) you arrive
- 2** I ..... ready as soon as you phone me.  
a) had been                                  b) was  
c) will be                                     d) could be
- 3** We will start having dinner as soon as my mother ..... the food.  
a) has cooked                                b) cooked  
c) is cooking                                 d) had cooked
- 4** We'll stay here till she ..... .  
a) returned                                  b) returns  
c) had returned                              d) return
- 5** I ..... her the news before she leaves.  
a) had told                                    b) told  
c) will be told                                d) 'm going to tell
- 6** Do you think it will be raining when we ..... up in the morning?  
a) got    b) get  
c) will get                                      d) getting
- 7** How often will you visit your parents when ..... your town?  
a) left    b) had left  
c) leave                                         d) are left
- 8** He'll be exhausted after he ..... all that work.  
a) has done                                    b) will do  
c) had done                                    d) did
- 9** She won't have finished the report by the time the meeting ..... .  
a) started                                      b) will start  
c) is starting                                  d) starts
- 10** I will ring you when I ..... out more information.  
a) will find                                    b) have found  
c) found                                        d) had found
- ة ٣ ث**  
**Telegram**

128 Unit 3

قناة العباقره ٣ث  
علي تطبيق Telegram  
ابط القناة @taneasnawe







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I'll help you with your homework after I ..... the dishes.  
a) will wash      b) washed      c) had washed      d) wash
- 2 I ..... this report before I go home.  
a) finish      b) had finished      c) 'll finish      d) finished
- 3 He won't go home until he ..... this report.  
a) had written      b) has written      c) write      d) wrote
- 4 Once it ..... cold, I'll light the fire.  
a) will get      b) gets      c) had got      d) was getting
- 5 I will pay you when I ..... my cheque.  
a) am getting      b) will get      c) have got      d) had got
- 6 She will stay in bed till the clock ..... seven.  
a) strike      b) strikes      c) had struck      d) struck
- 7 When he ....., I'll give him the key.  
a) returned      b) will return      c) return      d) returns
- 8 By the time he ..... thirty, he will have a job and get married.  
a) was      b) will be      c) is      d) be
- 9 I ..... until the January sales start to buy a new jacket.  
a) will have waited      b) 'm going to wait  
c) wait      d) have waited
- 10 After I ....., I'll go out to book the tickets.  
a) have taken a shower      b) will phone you  
c) went to bed      d) would have a cup of coffee
- 11 We can leave as soon as .....  
a) the plane will take off      b) they are going to phone  
c) you are ready      d) the train arrived
- 12 ..... the price of petrol is so high, I can't afford to drive a car anymore.  
a) Now that      b) Until      c) As soon as      d) Before
- 13 ..... the film is over, I'll go to bed.  
a) Just as      b) Until      c) Once      d) While
- 14 Please, ..... us when you arrive.  
a) will call      b) calls      c) have called      d) call
- 15 They always ..... their curtains once they get home in the evening.  
a) have closed      b) will close      c) close      d) closed

قناة العباقرة ٣ Part (1) Lesson 1

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





- 16 I like to have the radio on while .....  
 a) I study      b) I'm studying      c) studying      d) all are possible
- 17 Always turn your television off .....  
 a) before you leave home      b) when you went to bed  
 c) as soon as you got bored      d) after you have fallen asleep
- 18 What do you think the weather ..... next week?  
 a) will like      b) likes      c) will be like      d) is liking
- 19 He'll drink his coffee while he ..... for the bus.  
 a) is waiting      b) wait      c) was waiting      d) has waited
- 20 You can't get experience ..... you have got a job.  
 a) while      b) as soon as      c) after      d) until
- 21 Now that the rain's stopped, ..... to walk?  
 a) can you want      b) may you want  
 c) do you want      d) have you wanted
- 22 He'll drive you there ..... you need.  
 a) until      b) whenever      c) after      d) before
- 23 The lift ..... until you press that button.  
 a) will not start      b) starts      c) will start      d) has started
- 24 Where will you be while Mum ..... the housework?  
 a) has done      b) will be doing      c) is doing      d) will have done
- 25 She ..... on working until he tells her to stop.  
 a) will go      b) won't go      c) goes      d) has gone
- 26 As soon as you push this button, the door .....  
 a) going to open      b) has opened  
 c) open      d) will open (Longman)
- 27 We will go for a trip as soon as our car .....  
 a) has repaired      b) will be repaired  
 c) has been repaired      d) had repaired (Longman)
- 28 ..... bread before you come home?  
 a) Had you bought      b) Have you bought  
 c) Did you buy      d) Will you buy (Longman)
- 29 I ..... to the theatre until I meet my friends.  
 a) didn't go      b) haven't gone      c) won't go      d) hadn't gone (Longman)
- 30 As soon as you see the criminal, ..... the police at once.  
 a) have telephoned      b) telephone  
 c) will telephone      d) telephoned (Longman)





## Test yourself



Take  
a test

Part 1  
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

- 1 Doctors told the tennis player to be patient through the long ..... of his injured ankle healing.  
a) operation      b) process      c) system      d) treatment
- 2 Applicants for the job should have training and ..... experience in electronics.  
a) practical      b) valueless      c) visual      d) terrible
- 3 I think visiting your friends without telling them is probably ..... as they would like to be ready.  
a) terrifying      b) suitable      c) delightful      d) inconvenient
- 4 The cause of the accident is still unclear and ..... further investigation.  
a) requires      b) inquires      c) finds      d) acquires
- 5 My father bought a new car which has a powerful sound system with four .....  
a) receivers      b) speakers      c) recorders      d) stereos
- 6 The victim was able to ..... the police with some valuable information about his attacker.  
a) offer      b) introduce      c) provide      d) give
- 7 'Surround sound' is a great ..... which helped movie audience to enjoy art more and more.  
a) reflection      b) perception      c) intention      d) innovation
- 8 For the experiment to be valid, it is ..... for the researchers to record the data accurately.  
a) curious      b) essential      c) secondary      d) audio
- 9 Traffic problems are made better by the huge project of improving the road ..... in Egypt.  
a) processions      b) successions      c) presentations      d) systems
- 10 The sun is the centre of the ..... system whose planets orbit it.  
a) solar      b) lunar      c) electric      d) space
- 11 Many people agree with the right of scientists to ..... on animals because this helps us.  
a) experience      b) experiment      c) revise      d) improvise
- 12 We should improve the ..... of our products in order to be able to export them.  
a) quantity      b) ability      c) quality      d) possibility
- 13 Because of pollution, the ..... of many parts of the world was very high last summer.  
a) grade      b) degree      c) snow      d) temperature

قناة العباقرة ٣

Part (1) Lessons 1 & 2

131

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





- 14 There were several ..... of wallpaper on shelves at the back of the shop.  
 a) rolls                      b) cubes                      c) rules                      d) pipes
- 15 Only a few of the earlier paintings of Leonardo, the famous painter, still .....  
 a) fade                      b) diminish                      c) survive                      d) observe

### Language

- 16 He will wash up before he ..... to bed.  
 a) goes                      b) went                      c) have gone                      d) had gone
- 17 I hope he gets here ..... the train leaves. There isn't another train today.  
 a) while                      b) after                      c) until                      d) before
- 18 You must wait ..... the traffic light changes to green.  
 a) before                      b) until                      c) as soon as                      d) after
- 19 Don't worry! I'll watch you while you ..... in the lake.  
 a) swam                      b) were swimming                      c) swim                      d) swimming
- 20 When I ..... the car, I'll join you.  
 a) polished                      b) was polished                      c) will polish                      d) have polished
- 21 It is raining now. We'd better wait until it .....  
 a) will stop                      b) stops                      c) stop                      d) stopped
- 22 He ..... the letter before he puts the stamp on the envelope.  
 a) will write                      b) had written                      c) writes                      d) can write
- 23 I ..... the exam after I study all these books.  
 a) will be taken                      b) take                      c) am going to take                      d) have taken
- 24 Until I finish this report, I ..... home.  
 a) will go                      b) can go                      c) have gone                      d) won't go
- 25 When the President ....., the audience will stand up.  
 a) is arriving                      b) arrives                      c) has been arrived                      d) arrive
- 26 She will give the children their dinner before her husband ..... home.  
 a) comes                      b) is coming                      c) came                      d) will come
- 27 Once we hear any news, we ..... you.  
 a) call                      b) won't call                      c) 'll call                      d) have called
- 28 He'll have to behave better when he ..... to school.  
 a) is going                      b) will go                      c) went                      d) goes
- 29 We can't do anything before .....  
 a) the doctor comes                      b) the doctor didn't come  
 c) the doctor will come                      d) the doctor doesn't come
- 30 ..... I've finished "A Tale of Two Cities, I'll read "Oliver Twist".  
 a) While                      b) Now that                      c) Until                      d) Now





## A Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

drugs (n)	عقاقير/أدوية/مخدرات
operation (n)	عملية جراحية
record (n) (v) (ed)	تسجيل/يسجل
sensor (n)	مستشعر/جهاز استشعار

surgeon (n)*	جراح
surgery (n)	جراحة
treatment (n)	علاج/معاملة

Do you know a famous **surgeon** in Egypt?

لقرءة لصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

accuracy (n)	دقة
addicted (adj)	مدمن
advanced (adj)	متقدم
artificial intelligence (n)	الذكاء الاصطناعي
autonomously (adv)	بشكل مستقل
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد
blog (n)	مدونة
carry out (v) (y ied)	يجري/ينفذ
case (n)	حالة/قضية في محكمة
cause (v) (d)	يسبب
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق
complicated (adj)	معقد
consultant (n)	استشاري/مستشار
cure (n) (v) (d)	علاج/يعالج
cyber (adj)	إلكتروني
diabetes (n)	مرض السكري
distant (adj)	بعيد

dramatically (adv)	بشكل كبير
earthquake (n)	زلزال
empathy (n)	تعاطف
everyday (adj)	يومي
gamer (n)	لاعب (ألعاب فيديو)
global (adj)	عالمي
hacker (n)	مخترق/قرصان (إنترنت)
handle (v) (d)	يتعامل مع/يتولى أمر
harm (n) (v) (ed)	ضرر/يؤذي/يضر
human (adj)	بشري/إنساني
individual (n) (adj)	فرد/فردى
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن
issue (n)	قضية/مسألة
log in (v) (ged)	يدخل على موقع نت
monitor (v) (ed) (n)	يراقب/شاشة
nature (n)	طبيعة
normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي



organisation (n)	منظمة	simple (adj)	بسيط
perform (v) (ed)	يؤدي	solve (v) (d)	يحل
register (v) (ed)	يسجل/يُدْرَج اسمه	surgical (adj)	جراحي
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل	task (n)	مهمة
safety (n)	أمان	transform (v) (ed)	يحول
security (n)	أمن		

### Workbook Vocabulary

decade (n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
shop assistant (n)	بائع في محل	equipment (n)	معدات
self-driving (adj)	ذاتي القيادة	terrible (adj)	فظيع
repair (v) (ed)	يصلح	last (v) (ed)	يدوم
measure (v) (d)	يقيس	throw away (v)	يرمي/يتخلص من
fuel (n)	وقود		

### Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The drama teacher ..... the class rehearsing ..... before the live performance.  
a) transformed    b) neglected    c) recorded    d) replayed
- Up till now, there's no ..... for diabetes but the symptoms can be managed.  
a) result    b) cure    c) theory    d) release
- A ..... is a person who knows a lot about a particular subject and is employed to give advice about it to other people.  
a) consultant    b) researcher    c) defender    d) director
- The "Decent Life" initiative mainly ..... people in poor villages.  
a) won    b) moved    c) wasted    d) benefited
- My uncle made a good recovery after his ..... to remove a brain tumour .....  
a) surgery    b) healing    c) process    d) implementation
- One of the duties of ecologists is continually ..... volcanoes for signs of activity.  
a) damaging    b) monitoring    c) imaging    d) shooting
- Children ..... feel a lot of anxiety about their first day at school.  
a) amazingly    b) repeatedly    c) surprisingly    d) normally





- 8 A/An ..... is a person who uses computers to get access to data in somebody else's computer or phone system without permission.  
a) technician b) electrician c) hacker d) robber
- 9 After discovering the vaccines, the number of new ..... of the illness appears to be declining.  
a) causes b) cases c) issues d) rules
- 10 Computers have ..... the way work is done in hospitals, factories and many other places.  
a) transformed b) transmitted c) transported d) damaged

### Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do research	يقوم ببحث	on the one hand	من ناحية
do tasks	يؤدي مهام	on the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال	on the whole	على العموم
on balance	بعد أخذ كل الاعتبارات/بعد تفكير	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
addicted to	مدمن على	important for/to	مهم لـ
depend on	يعتمد على	prefer ... to	يفضل ... على
disagree with	يختلف مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
log in/on (to something)	يدخل على		

### Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addicted	مدمن
				addictive	مسبب للإدمان
hack★	يخترق	hacking hacker	اختراق مخترق	hacked	مخترق
operate	يجري عملية/يشغل	operation operator	عملية مشغل	operated	مُشغل
organise	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة منظم	organised	منظم
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدي	performance performer	أداء مؤدي		

قناة العباقرة ٣

Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

135

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





record	يسجل	record recording	سجل/رقم قياسي تسجيل	recorded	مسجل
register	يسجل/يُدج اسم	registration	تسجيل اسم	registered	مدرج اسمه
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
secure	يؤمن	security	أمن	secure	آمن/مأمون

- Someone is trying to **hack** my phone.  
- The **hacker** sends viruses through links.  
- My phone is already **hacked**.

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
benefit	فائدة	advantage/profit	disadvantage/harm عيب/ضرر
complicated	معقد	complex/problematic	easy/simple سهل/بسيط
distant	بعيد	faraway/remote	near/nearby قريب
handle	يتعامل مع	manage/deal with	ignore/disregard يتجاهل
intelligence	ذكاء	wisdom/brilliance/wit	stupidity foolishness غباء حماقة
monitor	يراقب	control/observe	neglect يهمل
perform	يؤدي	carry out/accomplish	avoid/forget يتجنب/ينسى
record	يسجل	videotape/register	forget/ignore ينسى/يتجاهل
safety	أمان	protection/security	danger/jeopardy خطر/تعرض للخطر
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated/difficult معقد/صعب
task	مهمة	duty/job/mission	irresponsibility انعدام المسؤولية

متنساش تتابعنا ♠️





## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The company hasn't achieved more profits, but on ..... it has had a successful year.  
a) account      b) advance      c) balance      d) remark
- 2 The last chemistry lecture was complicated and difficult to follow. The synonym of the adjective "complicated" is ".....".  
a) easy      b) simple      c) helpful      d) complex
- 3 My daughter is so addicted ..... chocolate that she eats it daily.  
a) to      b) in      c) for      d) of
- 4 Egypt Airway took steps to ensure safety on its aircraft. The antonym of the noun "safety" is ".....".  
a) protection      b) danger      c) security      d) flexibility
- 5 Most young men and women ..... in touch with their friends through social media.  
a) turn      b) miss      c) keep      d) win
- 6 Our English teacher is tolerant of those who disagree ..... him.  
a) with      b) about      c) in      d) at
- 7 Most of the students performed well in the exam. The verb "perform" can be replaced by .....  
a) avoid      b) forget      c) stay      d) carry out
- 8 Most car factories have replaced most of their workers with robots. The noun of the verb "replace" is ".....".  
a) replaces      b) replaced  
c) replacement      d) replaceable
- 9 We have our bad times but ..... the whole we're a happy family.  
a) at      b) on      c) out      d) off
- 10 I could faintly hear the distant sound of traffic from my balcony. The word "distant" is the opposite of ".....".  
a) faraway      b) remote  
c) nearby      d) bright

### قناة العباقرة ٣

### علي تطبيق Telegram

### رابط القناة @taneasnawe

Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4

137





**organisation**

منظمة (تضم مجموعة من الناس أو الشركات أو البلاد تم إنشاؤها لغرض محدد)

a group of people, companies, or countries, which is set up for a particular purpose

► The World Health **Organisation** is urging the government to provide people with COVID-19 vaccines more quickly.

**institution**

مؤسسة (منظمة/شركة هامة مثل بنك أو جامعة)

a large important organisation such as a bank or university

► Cairo University is an important academic **institution** in the Middle East.

**association**

منظمة/اتحاد (مجموعة من الأشخاص في مهنة أو رياضة أو نشاط لتمثيل الأعضاء بشكل رسمي)

an organisation for people in a particular profession, sport, or activity, which officially represents its members

► The Football **Association** is in a meeting to choose a new president.

**global**

١- عالمي/كوني  
٢- شامل

1. affecting or including the whole world

2. considering all the parts of a problem or situation together

► The rise of temperature is a **global** climate problem.

► We are taking a **global** view of our business.

**international**

دولي/بين أكثر من دولة

concerning more than one nation

► Surely, the **international** trade was affected by COVID-19 precautionary measures.

**comment**

تعليق شفوي أو مكتوب للتعبير عن رأي

something that you say or write in order to give your opinion

► All website members are invited to send in their **comments** and suggestions.

**remark**

ملاحظة (شفوية)

something that you say

► We must ignore Wael if he starts making rude **remarks**.

**point**

نقطة (شيء مذكور عن موضوع في مناقشة أو مناظرة أو مقال)

something that someone mentions about a subject in a discussion, argument or article

► He mentions a number of important **points** in his article.











Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 At regular times, the nurses come around the ward to give the patients their .....  
a) rays                      b) symptoms                      c) drugs                      d) cases
- 2 After consulting two specialists, it was decided the player required extensive .....  
a) chemistry                      b) surgery                      c) radiology                      d) invention
- 3 The Olympic champions were given the full VIP ..... on arriving at the airport.  
a) treatment                      b) elimination                      c) solution                      d) accuracy
- 4 Despite the investigations, the precise دقيق ..... of the plane crash is not known.  
a) reason                      b) research                      c) cause                      d) result
- 5 It is a fact that more than 90% of COVID-19 patients can be ..... of the disease.  
a) operated                      b) healed                      c) processed                      d) cured
- 6 ..... intelligence is the use of computer technology to make computers and other machines think and do things in the way that people can.  
a) Normal                      b) Artificial                      c) Natural                      d) Industrial
- 7 Some TV channels don't do enough to check the ..... of their reports before it is broadcast.  
a) accuracy                      b) treatment                      c) issue                      d) inspection
- 8 El-Orman is a famous non-governmental charitable ..... that is mainly concerned with helping the poor.  
a) company                      b) department                      c) organisation                      d) section
- 9 Pollution is a ..... problem which needs the cooperation of all countries.  
a) local                      b) simple                      c) national                      d) global
- 10 Dr Magdy Yacoub is one of the most famous heart ..... all over the world.  
a) chemists                      b) surgeons                      c) patients                      d) leaders
- 11 Running competitions are open to both teams and ..... in different races.  
a) individuals                      b) hackers                      c) teachers                      d) surgeons
- 12 Omar Khairat, the famous musician, composes and shares in ..... his own music.  
a) working                      b) carrying                      c) performing                      d) producing
- 13 The bank installed security lights with an infrared ..... that come on when a person is near them.  
a) monitor                      b) machine                      c) reactor                      d) sensor
- 14 Passwords are a very important ..... measure that helps you protect your personal information.  
a) transport                      b) surgery                      c) maturity                      d) security
- 15 Rubbish bags are made of plastic ..... from old packaging material.  
a) invented                      b) reprinted                      c) recycled                      d) renewed



- 16 The hospital staff ..... the situation of the bus accident very well.  
a) handled      b) headed      c) dealt      d) posed
- 17 Critics don't agree that the success of a movie is ..... by the enjoyment of the audience.  
a) combined      b) measured      c) treated      d) healed
- 18 The young doctor got a job in a ..... village in Upper Egypt away from his hometown.  
a) relieved      b) sided      c) dramatic      d) distant
- 19 In this way, students will gain maximum benefit from their classes. The synonym of the word "benefit" is ".....".  
a) profit      b) loss      c) difficulty      d) ignorance
- 20 Youssef says that he doesn't want to depend too much ..... his parents.  
a) for      b) on      c) at      d) with
- 21 This research was ..... by a team of scientists at Alexandria University.  
a) detained      b) carried      c) made      d) done
- 22 Computer ..... can be defined as the excessive use of the computer.  
a) addict      b) addiction      c) addicted      d) predicted
- 23 Teamwork is important ..... companies, so employees should be sociable.  
a) for      b) about      c) with      d) at
- 24 How many students were able to ..... for English classes?  
a) register      b) registration      c) registered      d) registering
- 25 If you want to ..... healthy, you should have a healthy diet and a good lifestyle.  
a) leave      b) stay      c) lose      d) spend
- 26 The efficient doctor is very good at handling his/her patients. The antonym of the word "handle" is ".....".  
a) deal      b) care      c) ignore      d) treat
- 27 We considered all factors; ....., the project has achieved high profits.  
(Longman)  
a) on demand      b) on the one hand  
c) on balance      d) on the other hand
- 28 The internet helps us keep in ..... with each other.  
(Longman)  
a) catch      b) trick      c) touch      d) fact
- 29 My father likes classical music – I, on ....., like jazz.  
(Longman)  
a) the other hand      b) the one hand  
c) balance      d) duty
- 30 Which of the following means "in general"?  
(Longman)  
a) On the other hand.      b) On balance.  
c) On the whole.      d) On a bigger scale.



## Future Tenses أزمنة المستقبل

## Future Simple

المستقبل البسيط

## Future Continuous

المستقبل المستمر

## Future Perfect

المستقبل التام

## I Future Simple with (will + inf.)

المستقبل البسيط باستخدام (المصدر + will)

## FORM

## Positive

Subj. + will + inf.

• I **will play** football tomorrow.

## Negative

Subj. + will not (won't) + inf.

• I **won't play** football tomorrow.

## Question

Will + subj. + inf.? / Wh-word + will + subj. + inf.?

• **Will** you **visit** your friends tomorrow?• What **will** you **do** tomorrow?

## Passive

Obj. + will be + P.P.

• The football match **will be played** tomorrow.

## USAGE الاستخدام

1

## On-the-spot decisions (Quick decisions)

القرارات الفورية

• I like these shoes. I'll **buy** them.• Father: I'm thirsty. Son: I'll **get** you some water.

2

## Future facts

حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)

• Mazen **will be** 9 years old next month.• Today is the 10<sup>th</sup> of Sep. Tomorrow **will be** the 11<sup>th</sup>.

3

## Predictions based on what we think (without evidence)

التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)

• Egypt **will win** the next World Cup.• It **will rain** heavily tomorrow.



## Some verbs, expressions and adverbs:

يستخدم مع بعض الأفعال والتعبيرات والظروف الزمنية:

4

<b>Verbs</b> الأفعال	think/believe/ expect/promise/ hope/predict	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I <b>promise</b> I <b>will give</b> you the money needed when I get a pay rise.</li> <li>I <b>hope</b> my brother <b>will pass</b> his driving test.</li> <li>My parents <b>think</b> that I'll <b>become</b> an artist one day.</li> </ul>
<b>Expressions</b> التعبيرات	be sure/be afraid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I'm <b>sure</b> Osama <b>will win</b> the race.</li> <li>He is afraid his father <b>will punish</b> him.</li> </ul>
<b>Adverbs</b> الظروف	perhaps/certainly/ probably/possibly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Perhaps</b>, my boss <b>will punish</b> me for being late.</li> <li>The police <b>will probably find</b> the criminal.</li> </ul>

### Offer

العرض

5

- I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll **help** you.
- Since you're tired, I'll **cook** dinner tonight.

### Request

الطلب

6

- Will** you **help** me with my homework, Hazem?
- Will** you **get** me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?

### Threat

التهديد

7

- If you make these mistakes again, I'll **punish** you.
- Behave well or I'll **tell** your father.

### Warning

التحذير

8

- Factories must stop polluting the air or we **won't be** able to breathe.
- If we don't arrive early, we **won't find** a place to park.

لاحظ الاستخدامات الآتية:

hoped, thought + would	I <b>thought</b> (didn't expect) that she <b>would visit</b> us.
promise + to + inf.	I have <b>promised</b> them <b>to come</b> early tonight.
فعل امر + or + will (won't)	<b>Get up early</b> or you <b>won't catch</b> the train.



## 1 Future Simple with (going to + inf.) (المستقبل البسيط باستخدام (الـ مصدر + going to)

There are black clouds in the sky. It's **going to rain**.

Form: (am/is/are (not) going to + inf.)

### الاستخدام USAGE

For plans and decisions, we have already made.

1

He's **going to employ** more staff.

للمخطط والنوايا والقرارات التي اتخذناها بالفعل.

(نية plan/خطة/intention)

I'm **going to move** to a bigger house next year.

(قرار decision)

To make predictions with present reality or evidence.

2

Look at him! He **is going to win** the race. (He is ahead of the other runners).

التنبؤ بدليل (شيء نراه أو نعرفه)

The wall is moving. It **is going to fall**.

Other Tenses to express future هناك أزمنة أخرى للتعبير عن المستقبل

## 2 Present Simple

المضارع البسيط

Form	Usage
He/She/It + v. + (s, es, ies) I/They/We/You + inf.	When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/buses, etc.). يستخدم المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن البرامج و الجداول، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والأتوبيسات والقطارات ... إلخ.
The train to Assuit <b>leaves</b> at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.	
The film <b>starts</b> at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)	
The plane <b>arrives</b> at Cairo Airport at 7:30. (timetable)	

## 3 Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

Form	Usage
Subject + am/is/are + v-ing	For fixed arrangements in the near future. يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التي تم الترتيب لها في المستقبل القريب.
I <b>am meeting</b> Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.	
I'm <b>flying</b> to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)	
We're <b>giving</b> a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)	





## Important Notes

1

الفعل **think** يأتي معه **will** ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم بعده **be going to**.

- ▶ Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he **will have** an accident one day.
- ▶ Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he **is going to have** an accident.

2

الصفات الثابتة والحقيقية ليست دليلاً على حدوث الفعل، مثل:

- ▶ Salah is a clever player. I think he **will score** a goal the next match. (not going to)
- ▶ Salah is shooting a penalty. I think he **is going to score** a goal. (هذا دليل)

3

تدل جمل التحذير (**Be careful! – Look out! – Take care!**) غالباً على قرب حدوث الفعل.

- ▶ فالشخص يرى شيئاً قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه، لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال **be going to**.
- ▶ Look out! We **are going to crash!** There is a car coming.
- وأما إذا كان التحذير عاماً نستخدم **will**.
- ▶ Be careful or you **will fall** in the newly dug hole on your way to the market.

4

بعد الأفعال **think/expect/predict/be sure** نستخدم **will**.

- ▶ أما بعد الأفعال **thought/expected/predicted/was sure/were sure** فنستخدم **would**.
- ▶ I **thought** they **would phone** me that evening.

4

تستخدم أي من التعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل **be to/be about to/be due to/be sure to + inf.**

Rule	Example
a) be to	يجب أن - The President <b>is to</b> visit America next Friday.
b) be about to	على وشك - Look! The train <b>is about to</b> leave.
c) be due to (timetables)	متوقع - Their flight <b>is due to</b> arrive at 8:20.
d) be sure/certain to	بالتأكيد - This plan <b>is sure to</b> succeed.

5

Shall

من الممكن أن تستخدم **shall** للتعبير عن المستقبل

Usage	Example
a) To make an offer	للعرض - <b>Shall I</b> carry the bag for you?
b) To make a suggestion	للاقتراح - <b>Shall we</b> go out for dinner tonight?
c) To ask for suggestions or instructions	لتعليمات - What <b>shall we</b> do tonight?



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The milk is boiling. I ..... the gas off.  
a) turn  
b) am going to turn  
c) am turning  
d) will turn
- 2 We ..... to Alexandria in July. All things are okay.  
a) will be moved  
b) are moving  
c) move  
d) will move
- 3 My brother has decided to immigrate. He ..... next month.  
a) will travel  
b) travels  
c) is going to travel  
d) is travelling
- 4 My English lesson ..... at ten-tomorrow morning.  
a) starts  
b) is starting  
c) will start  
d) will be starting
- 5 Look! That boy ..... . It seems he can't swim.  
a) is going to drown  
b) will drown  
c) is drowning  
d) drowns
- 6 We hope he ..... the championship next year.  
a) will have won  
b) will be winning  
c) is going to win  
d) will win
- 7 I can't go out because I ..... for exams all next week.  
a) have studied  
b) am studying  
c) will study  
d) study
- 8 Next month, my parents ..... their silver wedding anniversary.  
a) are celebrating  
b) will going to celebrate  
c) celebrate  
d) have celebrated
- 9 What are you ..... when you go to town on Saturday?  
a) have bought  
b) buy  
c) going to buy  
d) going buying
- 10 I promise I ..... harder at school next term.  
a) will be trying  
b) am trying  
c) am going to try  
d) will try



For actions that will be in progress at a stated time in the future.

للتعبير عن حدث سيكون مستمراً عند وقت محدد في المستقبل.

## FORM

## Positive

Subj. + will be + v+ing

• I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.

## Negative

Subj. + won't be + v+ing

• I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.

## Interrogative

Will + subj. + be + v+ing? Wh-word + will + subj. + be + v+ing?

• Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

• What will you be doing tomorrow at 5?

## USAGE الاستخدام

1

For actions that will be in progress at a stated time in the future.

يستخدم للأحداث التي ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد في المستقبل.

▶ Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2

For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or an arrangement (instead of the present continuous).

يستخدم للأحداث التي سوف تحدث بالتحديد في المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب. (بدلاً من المضارع المستمر).

▶ I'll be playing golf on Friday.

(I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine)

▶ I'll be seeing Fathy tomorrow. (Seeing here means meeting.)

(We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

3

When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.

يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شيء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئاً لهم.

▶ Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4

We use **may be + v+ing** to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain.

نستخدم **may be + v+ing** للتعبير عن الأحداث التي من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

▶ Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.



## 5

**The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:**

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

- ▶ All night/day tomorrow/next week, etc.
- ▶ This time tomorrow/next week - At + مدة tomorrow/next week - From ..... to ..... tomorrow.
- ▶ In an hour's time .....



### Extra Points

## 1

أفعال الحالة **stative verbs** لا تستخدم في الاستمرار لذلك لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم في الاستمرار مثل:

- ▶ This time next year, I **will have had** my graduation certificate.  
 - لا يمكن استخدام **will be having** لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمراً.  
 ▶ This time tomorrow, I **will be having** my dinner with my family.  
 - الفعل **have** هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول لذلك استخدم في الاستمرار.

## 2

لو وجد رابط زمني نستخدم بعده المضارع البسيط أو المستمر ولا نستخدم المستقبل.

- I'll be studying my lessons **while** my father **is watching** the match tomorrow.

## Language Check point 5

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1** I think that I ..... on the project for the next 15 to 20 years.  
a) will work                      b) may work  
c) 'll be working                d) will have worked
- 2** In 20 years, Khaled ..... his own business.  
a) will be running    b) will be run                  c) runs                      d) ran
- 3** Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone ..... the film.  
a) will watch                      b) will be watching  
c) watch                          d) will have watched
- 4** I can't visit you because I ..... for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.  
a) might have prepared              b) won't prepare  
c) will prepare                      d) will be preparing
- 5** Hopefully, I ..... medicine at university this time next year.  
a) may study              b) 'll study                  c) 'll be studying              d) shall study
- 6** I hope you ..... computer games all night; you have a lot of lessons to study.  
a) will be playing    b) won't be playing              c) will play                  d) will have played







3

**The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:**

- Before, by + فترة في المستقبل (21:00), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time.
- My wife **won't have finished** preparing the lunch till 4 o'clock.
- In a week's time**, we'll have finished our exams.

لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل التام.

**Future perfect**  
(will have + P.P.)

Before, till/until, by the time, by

**Present simple**  
**Present perfect**

- Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.
- By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.

لاحظ

١ نستخدم **by/by the time/before** لنقصد قبل وقت محدد في المستقبل.

- We will have taken the test **by/before** June.
- I won't have done all of my homework **by the time/before** you get home.

٢ ونستخدم **in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time** لنقصد في نهاية هذا الوقت في المستقبل.

- In five years, I will have started work.
- How much will you have done on your project **in two months' time**?



### Extra Points

هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائيًا عند استخدامها في صيغة المضارع مثل:

**want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.**

وعند استخدام **to** بعدها نستغنى عن **will** وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعدهم **to have + p.p.** وفي المجهول **to have been + P.P.**

- By 2030, we **expect to have built** flats for all people in Egypt.
- The food **is expected to have been prepared** by 6 p.m. today.

متنساش تتابعنا ♥

CREATORS  
TEAM



@TANEASNAWE



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Wake me up by nine o'clock. I ..... long enough by then.  
a) will sleep      b) will have slept      c) will be sleeping      d) will be slept
- 2 It's a big course. We ..... it by the time the vacation begins.  
a) won't finish      b) won't be finishing  
c) won't have finished      d) aren't finishing
- 3 In a week's time, I ..... my test results.  
a) will have received      b) will be receiving  
c) will receive      d) am going to receive
- 4 By this time next year, we ..... into our new house.  
a) will move      b) will be moving  
c) will be moved      d) will have moved
- 5 What will Nour ..... by the fourth of September?  
a) have done      b) has done      c) achieve      d) be doing
- 6 By 2025, scientists surely ..... a cure for COVID-19.  
a) are discovering      b) have been discovered  
c) had discovered      d) will have discovered
- 7 In a fortnight's time, they ..... their exams.  
a) will have been taken      b) will have taken  
c) had taken      d) have taken
- 8 By the end of the first term, we ..... many English books.  
a) shall be read      b) are going to read      c) will have read      d) will be reading
- 9 By 5:30 this afternoon, Osama ..... at work for eight hours.  
a) won't be      b) has been      c) will have been      d) had been
- 10 Mahmoud ..... a good job in Cairo by the time he's twenty-five years old.  
a) will be getting      b) will have got      c) is getting      d) will be got

ملخص أزمنة المستقبل:

Future Tenses Summary

Future Simple

- I promise I **will visit** you next weekend.
- Be careful! You **are going to** hurt yourself.
- We **have** an English lesson tomorrow at 7.
- We **are travelling** abroad next Monday.

Future Continuous

- Don't call me at 9. I **will be watching** the new film.

Future Perfect

- I **will have finished** my exams by next Thursday.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The teacher is sure Jana ..... a successful career as a surgeon once she completes all her training.  
a) will be having    b) is going have    c) will have    d) is having
- 2 On Saturday, we ..... a new play in front of an audience of five hundred.  
a) will have performed    b) performs  
c) will be performed    d) are performing
- 3 ..... all the housework before lunchtime?  
a) Will you have been doing    b) Will you be done  
c) Will you have done    d) Will you be doing
- 4 Will she ..... the house for the party tomorrow morning?  
a) be prepared    b) be preparing  
c) have been prepared    d) have prepared
- 5 ..... in the match at the weekend?  
a) Will you have played    b) Will you be played  
c) Are you played    d) Will you be playing
- 6 She has informed me that the play ..... at eight o'clock this evening.  
a) will have started    b) starts  
c) start    d) is going to starting
- 7 Do you believe you ..... in Sharm El-Sheikh by this time tomorrow?  
a) are    b) will have been    c) will be being    d) are being
- 8 I hear they ..... the old school we used to go to.  
a) will be demolished    b) demolish  
c) are demolished    d) are going to demolish
- 9 It's Friday today, so she ..... her parents this evening.  
a) visits    b) may be visited    c) will be visiting    d) will have visited
- 10 Mum ..... the supper by the time I get home.  
a) is making    b) will have made    c) may make    d) will be making
- 11 I ..... this day all my life.  
a) remembered    b) have remember    c) am remembering    d) will remember
- 12 The weather forecast says it ..... tomorrow. The weather is terrible.  
a) will have snowed    b) is going to snow  
c) will be snowing    d) snows
- 13 A: ..... tennis this afternoon? B: Yes, I am.  
a) Will you play    b) will you have played  
c) Are you playing    d) Shall we play
- 14 Everyone ..... the party by two o'clock in the morning.  
a) will have left    b) will be leaving    c) is leaving    d) will leave



- 15 I ..... on the beach this time next week.  
 a) will have lain                      b) will be lying  
 c) will lie                                d) is going to lie
- 16 I hope I ..... my car which I have lost for a month.  
 a) am finding              b) will find              c) am finding              d) will be finding
- 17 It is very cloudy. I am sure it .....  
 a) raining                      b) will rain                      c) is going to rain              d) rains
- 18 We ..... to a new flat next week.  
 a) are moving              b) moved                      c) will have moved              d) move
- 19 They ..... TV at nine o'clock this evening.  
 a) shall watch                      b) will have watched  
 c) will watch                      d) will be watching
- 20 The technician ..... my computer before I get home.  
 a) will be repairing                      b) will be repaired  
 c) will have repaired                      d) is repairing
- 21 I think I ..... an MP3 player and use it in class.  
 a) shall buy                      b) buy                      c) am buying                      d) bought
- 22 My brother ..... at university for two years in October.  
 a) is being                      b) will be being                      c) has been                      d) will have been
- 23 Maher is eating too much; .....  
 a) he spends a lot of money                      b) he is going to get fat  
 c) give him some more                      d) he was very thin
- 24 "Shall I carry the bag for you?" We use this structure in a/an ".....".  
 a) request                      b) promise  
 c) offer                      d) on-the-spot decision
- 25 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect ".....".  
 a) In two hours' time, I'll be booking the tickets.  
 b) In two hours' time, I will have booked the tickets.  
 c) By yesterday, I had booked the tickets.  
 d) By tomorrow, I'll be booking the tickets.
- 26 When we have done the experiment, we ..... the results with the science teacher. (Longman)  
 a) was discussing              b) discussed                      c) have discussed                      d) will discuss
- 27 My little grandchild ..... three next Friday. (Longman)  
 a) will be                      b) will have been                      c) is going to be                      d) would be
- 28 Salma ..... to leave the house as soon as she feeds her cat because she has an urgent meeting. (Longman)  
 a) has got                      b) will have got                      c) got                      d) get
- 29 I will start writing the report once I ..... the research. (Longman)  
 a) was doing                      b) have done                      c) will do                      d) had done
- 30 I hope the exam ..... difficult. (Longman)  
 a) isn't being                      b) isn't going to be                      c) won't have been                      d) won't be





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 The new factory will bring a lot of ..... to the area by employing people and refreshing the economy.  
a) harms                      b) troubles                      c) benefits                      d) debates
- 2 It was thought that most animal diseases could not be passed to ..... beings.  
a) humane                      b) human                      c) inhuman                      d) humanness
- 3 The patient is carefully ..... after the open-heart operation.  
a) revealed                      b) healed                      c) monitored                      d) approved
- 4 Dr Magdy Yacoub is one of the doctors who contributed much to ways of ..... heart treatments.  
a) distant                      b) explanatory                      c) autonomous                      d) surgical
- 5 Hurghada was ..... from a quiet farming village into a busy tourist resort.  
a) transformed                      b) transmitted                      c) transfused                      d) returned
- 6 The coach said he didn't have any ..... after losing the match.  
a) estimations                      b) accounts                      c) comments                      d) issues
- 7 Running your own business usually ..... working long hours, but it's worth the effort.  
a) consists                      b) involves                      c) refuses                      d) inspects
- 8 The team's coach was ..... last week after losing five successive متوالية matches.  
a) lost                      b) replaced                      c) placed                      d) detected
- 9 The famous band has just ..... its new album in Paris.  
a) revolved                      b) damaged                      c) purchased                      d) recorded
- 10 A group of ..... broke into the bank's system yesterday and stole millions of pounds.  
a) tracers                      b) crackers                      c) hackers                      d) gamers
- 11 The President's speech addressed a number of important political .....  
a) tissues                      b) issues                      c) trials                      d) records
- 12 A ..... is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject.  
a) blog                      b) paper                      c) diary                      d) dairy
- 13 ..... crimes such as phishing and hacking have become common in some countries.  
a) Motor                      b) Lawful                      c) Cyber                      d) Economical
- 14 Mum has proven that she can ..... any problem inside the house.  
a) handle                      b) register                      c) preach                      d) retreat
- 15 The website has games to appeal to both the PC beginners and the dedicated .....  
a) racers                      b) fighters                      c) boxers                      d) gamers



## Language

- 16 My brother ..... all evening because he has got an exam tomorrow.  
 a) will be studying                      b) will have studied  
 c) will study                                d) studies
- 17 He hopes he ..... to lots of countries before he is forty five.  
 a) travels                                    b) will be travelling  
 c) is travelling                              d) will have travelled
- 18 I ..... the doctor next week.  
 a) see                                        b) will have seen                      c) have seen                      d) am seeing
- 19 I'll ask him what he ..... for lunch.  
 a) will have had                      b) would have                      c) will have                      d) will be having
- 20 A: Why have you set your alarm clock to go off at 5.30?  
 B: Because I ..... then. I have to catch the early train.  
 a) was going to get up                      b) am going to get up  
 c) have got up                                d) get up
- 21 My son ..... his driving test tomorrow afternoon.  
 a) will have taken                      b) will be taking                      c) takes                      d) will be taken
- 22 We ..... our bedroom by the time mum gets home.  
 a) tidy                                        b) will have tidied                      c) will be tidied                      d) will be tiding
- 23 In the year to come, it seems likely that people ..... even greater control over nature.  
 a) will have been acquired                      b) will be acquired  
 c) to acquire                                d) will acquire
- 24 My friend is very intelligent. He ..... the test easily.  
 a) is going to pass                      b) will pass                      c) is passing                      d) would pass
- 25 Look out! A car ..... towards you.  
 a) is coming                                b) is going to come                      c) will be coming                      d) will come
- 26 Wait! I ..... you to the station.  
 a) drive                                        b) will have driven                      c) am driving                      d) will drive
- 27 The English lesson ..... at 8:45.  
 a) is starting                                b) will start                                c) starts                                d) will be started
- 28 We ..... around the world this time next year.  
 a) have travelled                                b) will travel  
 c) may be travelled                                d) will be travelling
- 29 ..... the tickets by tomorrow?  
 a) Will you be booking                      b) Will you book  
 c) Are you booking                                d) Will you have booked
- 30 I don't think you ..... any problems when you land in France.  
 a) will have                                b) won't have                                c) will have had                      d) will be having





## Writing Skill

## Writing tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Online comments تعليقات على الإنترنت

لكتابة تعليق جيد هناك بعض القواعد التي يجب عليك اتباعها ومنها:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Make it clear by using simple language. | - اجعل الأمر واضحًا باستخدام لغة بسيطة. |
| 2. Avoid sarcasm.                          | - تجنب السخرية.                         |
| 3. Avoid unnecessary abbreviations.        | - تجنب الاختصارات غير الضرورية.         |
| 4. Use facts.                              | - استخدم الحقائق.                       |
| 5. Don't confuse facts with opinions.      | - لا تخلط بين الحقائق والآراء.          |

## Model Comment

Write a comment on the positive and negative effects that technology has on everyday life in your country.

Posted 3 October 2021, 17.30

Nourhan

Technology, especially the internet, has become an important part of life in Egypt. It has helped the government to provide fast services. Now, people can get many online governmental services such as traffic services, getting official documents and even arranging for travel online. Through tablets and broadband internet connections at school, the Ministry of Education could improve education in secondary schools. Through social media, people can communicate with each other easily. However, the internet and mobile overuse have affected our social life much. Young people now lack a lot of communication skills. Moreover, online games have taken the place of practising sports which affected people's health and physical fitness badly. That's why we need to train our children and young people how to use technology more wisely.







# 1 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm sure you all know how important **recycling**<sup>(1)</sup> is. Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, cardboard, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. **Cereal**<sup>(2)</sup> boxes are made of cardboard. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. Let's get back to the **process**<sup>(3)</sup> of recycling. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant. There, the materials get **separated**<sup>(4)</sup>. They go into different piles. There are special machines that **crush**<sup>(5)</sup> each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. **They** are really heavy. You would need a forklift to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products. You can also recycle by yourself at home. You can save all the cans and aluminum containers and sell them at a local recycling centre, yes cans for cash. Use glass jars as containers for the kitchen or the office, you can paint the bottles and use other materials to **decorate**<sup>(6)</sup> them. Use empty water bottles as flower pots, just cut off the bottoms, there are many amazing **craft**<sup>(7)</sup> projects you can do with recycled material. You can do your part to save the planet. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

## 1 What is recycling?

- a) Giving old things to other people.
- b) Destroying unimportant things by burning them.
- c) Taking old things and turning them into new things.
- d) Painting old bottles and using them again.

## 2 Which one of the following can't be recycled?

- a) Things made out of paper.
- b) Things made of metal.
- c) Things made of cardboard, glass and plastic.
- d) Things made of cotton and lying food.



(7) حرفة

(5) يسحق  
(6) يزين(3) عملية  
(4) تفصل(1) إعادة تدوير  
(2) حبوب الغذاء



- 3 What happens to the materials in the recycling plant?
- They get separated and crushed.
  - They are delivered to our homes again.
  - Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products.
  - A forklift carries them away.
- 4 What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
- The square cubes.
  - The special machines.
  - The glass jars.
  - The piles of rubbish.
- 5 The following materials can be recycled except .....
- yogurt
  - books made of paper
  - soda cans and bags containers
  - magazines and newspapers
- 6 The word ..... means "a vehicle used for lifting and moving heavy objects".
- machine
  - cubes
  - The recycling plant
  - forklift truck
- 7 The best title for the passage is ".....".
- Recycling cans
  - Recycling saves our planet
  - Recycling from past to present
  - How to recycle bottles
- 8 Everything goes to a recycling plant. "Plant" here means ".....".
- a room
  - a machine
  - a factory
  - a kind of tree

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- He said "I want to go to the party"
  - He said, "I want to go to the party."
  - He said "I want to go to the party."
  - He said, "I want to go to the party".
- 2 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
- mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.
  - Mr ayman :who was sitting behind the desk: gave me a big smile.
  - Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk, gave me a big smile.
  - Mr Ayman, who was sitting behind the desk gave me a big smile.
- 3 When we write a biography, we should .....
- invent incidents to make the person famous
  - tell facts about the person
  - say nothing about the person's wrong deeds
  - force people to love the person

**قناة العباقرة ٣**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**





4 Narrative essays .....

- a) should be interesting to impress the reader
- b) should contain imaginative incidents to make suspense
- c) can tell real or imaginative stories
- d) all of the above

5 The first paragraph of any essay is called a/an .....

- a) introduction
- b) topic sentence
- c) body paragraph
- d) expository

6 "It is an evil that leads to ruin, destruction, hatred and death. The whole nation, the police and the masses should cooperate to put an end to it." This could be a part of an article about .....

- a) cooperation
- b) unemployment
- c) pollution
- d) terrorism

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Technology is important in our lives because it helps to deal with everyday activities. Technology offers various tools to boost development and to exchange information.

- (a) التكنولوجيا مهمة في حياتنا لأنها تساعد في التعامل مع الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا أدوات متنوعة لتعزيز التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.
- (b) التكنولوجيا مهمة في حياتنا لأنها تساعد في التعامل مع الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا أدوات متنوعة لاستخدام التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.
- (c) التكنولوجيا مهمة في حياتنا لأنها تساعد في زيادة الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا أدوات متنوعة لتعزيز التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.
- (d) التكنولوجيا مهمة في حياتنا لأنها تساعد في مضاعفة الأنشطة اليومية كما تقدم التكنولوجيا ماكينات متنوعة لتعزيز التنمية وتبادل المعلومات.

2 Entertainment technology helps people not only to relax and enjoy free time. The latest technology has been revolutionised daily entertainment. With computer technology, ways of being entertained have optimised greatly.

- (a) لا تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث أحدثت التكنولوجيا ثورة في مجال الترفيه اليومي ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تحسين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.
- (b) تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس ليس فقط على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث أحدثت التكنولوجيا ثورة في مجال الترفيه اليومي ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تحسين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.
- (c) لا تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ وفرت أحدث التكنولوجيا ثورة في مجال الترفيه اليومي ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تحسين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.
- (d) تساعد تكنولوجيا الترفيه الناس ليس فقط على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع بوقت الفراغ حيث أجلت أحدث التكنولوجيا ثورة في مجال الترفيه اليومي ومع تكنولوجيا الكمبيوتر، تم تخزين طرق الترفيه بشكل كبير.



3 Artificial intelligence refers to the use of human intelligence in machines that are programmed to think like humans and mimic their actions. These machines exhibit things associated with a human mind such as learning and problem-solving.

- (a) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعي إلى استخدام الذكاء الميكانيكي في الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتقليد أفعالهم وتعرض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشري مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.
- (b) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعي إلى استخدام الذكاء البشري في الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتقليد أفعالهم وترفض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشري مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.
- (c) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعي إلى استخدام الذكاء البشري في الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتقليد أفعالهم وتعرض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشري مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.
- (d) يشير الذكاء الاصطناعي إلى استخدام الذكاء البشري في الآلات المبرمجة للتفكير مثل البشر وتطوير أفعالهم وتعرض هذه الآلات أشياء مرتبطة بالعقل البشري مثل التعلم وحل المشكلات.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4 إن ترشيد المياه واجب قومي لتجنب مشاكل نقص المياه و ضمان توفير المياه للأجيال القادمة حيث لا يجب أن يتجاوز استهلاك المياه العذبة معدل الإحلال الطبيعي لها.

- a) Water rationalisation is a local duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The consumption of fresh water should exceed its natural replacement rate.
- b) Water rationalisation is a global duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The production of fresh water should not exceed its natural replacement rate.
- c) Water rationalisation is a national duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The consumption of fresh water should not exceed its natural replacement rate.
- d) Water rationalisation is a national duty to avoid water shortage problems and ensure the availability of water for future generations. The consumption of fresh water should not reduce its natural replacement rate.

5 قد أثبتت الأزمات المتلاحقة كجائحة «كوفيد-19» والحرب في أوكرانيا أهمية تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتي في كل المنتجات وخاصة الإنتاج الزراعي.

- a) Successive crises such as the "COVID-19" pandemic and the war in Ukraine had proved the importance of recognising self-sufficiency in all products, especially agricultural production.
- b) Successive crises such as the "COVID-19" pandemic and the war in Ukraine have proved the importance of achieving self-sufficiency in all products, especially agricultural production.
- c) Following crises such as the "COVID-19" epidemic and the war in Ukraine have proved the importance of achieving self-sufficiency in most products, especially agricultural production.
- d) Following crises such as the "COVID-19" pandemic and the war in Ukraine proves the importance of recognising self-sufficiency in all products, especially farming production.



6 رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة أثرت سلباً على الحياة الاجتماعية والتواصل بين الأجيال المختلفة في المجتمع.

- a) Because of its many benefits, modern technology has positively affected social life and communication between different generations in society.
- b) In spite of many benefits, modern technology has negatively affected social life and comfort between different generations in society.
- c) Despite its many benefits, modern technology has positively affected social life and understanding between different generations in society.
- d) Despite its many benefits, modern technology has negatively affected social life and communication between different generations in society.

4 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

Your friend faces some problems using the internet especially social media. Give him advice how to stay safe online. Your name is Mona and your email address is: mona100@example.com. Your friend is Malak and her email address is: malak10@example.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Dolby Digital, the next generation in ..... sound, is going to be sold soon.  
a) fair                      b) surround                      c) speaker                      d) clip
- 2 With the new sound system, you feel ..... in the actions of the movie.  
a) surfed                      b) floated                      c) dived                      d) immersed
- 3 The decision about firing workers to reduce costs will be difficult to .....  
a) implant                      b) inspect                      c) implement                      d) investigate
- 4 The police think that many young people took ..... to escape their problems.  
a) drugs                      b) turns                      c) trips                      d) tablets
- 5 The doctor said that my uncle needs a ..... treatment to remove the cancerous tumour.  
a) processed                      b) surgical                      c) conducting                      d) connecting
- 6 At the summer camp, I was given the task of building a fire. The synonym of the noun "task" is ".....".  
a) right                      b) pay                      c) duty                      d) luxury
- 7 We've done a/an ..... study on the company's weaknesses to avoid losses.  
a) global                      b) international                      c) local                      d) national
- 8 The train accident has become one of the ..... issues of the day.  
a) burning                      b) soothing                      c) cooling                      d) releasing
- 9 On Friday at 8 o'clock, I ..... my friend.  
a) will have met                      b) will meet                      c) am meeting                      d) meet
- 10 Once you take a nap, you ..... a lot better.  
a) feel                      b) will feel                      c) will have felt                      d) will be feeling
- 11 I will buy cheese from the corner shop when it .....  
a) will have opened                      b) will open  
c) opened                      d) opens
- 12 I will let you know the moment the builders ..... decorating.  
a) have finished                      b) finished                      c) will finish                      d) finishing
- 13 Once you ..... your homework, will you tidy your room, please?  
a) did                      b) will do                      c) 've done                      d) can do
- 14 In a formal email, you will conclude it with ".....".  
a) Bye                      b) Yours sincerely                      c) See you later                      d) See you soon



► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Travel sickness is **confined**<sup>(1)</sup> more to children. The all-too-familiar **symptoms** of **vomiting**<sup>(2)</sup>, **sweating**<sup>(3)</sup> and headache affect adults too, more often women than men. Even so, children between three and twelve are most at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling.

Travel sickness occurs when the information supplied to the brain by the eyes, the **inner**<sup>(4)</sup> ear and the sense of **physical**<sup>(5)</sup> movement are giving **contradictory**<sup>(6)</sup> information. This confusion is experienced when a person is **subjected to**<sup>(7)</sup> repeated movements while the body is still at rest.

The centre that brings about the attack of **motion**<sup>(8)</sup> sickness is the inner ear, providing as it does a complex **mechanism**<sup>(9)</sup> responsible for balance. If the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed, a person no longer suffers motion sickness.

So, it is important for a person who feels a little bit uneasy while travelling, to lie as flat as possible and close his eyes. It's advisable to fix their vision on distant objects or on the **horizon**<sup>(10)</sup>. Reading, map-reading and some forms of game-playing are inadvisable. Windows should be open as fresh air helps, and adults who are easily attacked by travel sickness should avoid too much drinking or smoking before travelling. As a remedy there are some pills known as K-Wells. They are taken half an hour before travelling. They melt in the mouth and this makes them quick acting. These pills may cause sleepiness or dry mouth. Doctors who prefer natural remedies recommend **ginger**<sup>(11)</sup> in one of its many forms.

15 The contradictory information given to the brain causes .....

- a) repeated movements
- b) travel sickness
- c) balance in the body
- d) death at once

16 The person doesn't suffer motion sickness if .....

- a) the nerve supply to the inner is destroyed
- b) they have more than one nerve in the inner ear
- c) they are adults
- d) they are travelling early in the morning

17 The organ that is responsible for balance in the body is the .....

- a) sense of physical movement
- b) inner ear
- c) complex mechanism
- d) the pills known as K-Wells



(11) زنجبيل

(9) آلية  
(10) الأنق

(7) خاضع لـ  
(8) حركة

(5) بدني  
(6) متناقض

(3) عرق  
(4) داخلي

(1) مقتصر  
(2) أعراض قىء



- 18 Those people who are likely to be attacked by travel sickness are not advised to ..... before travelling.
- a) smoke or drink too much
  - b) listen to or play music too much
  - c) sleep early or get up early
  - d) open the windows of the car
- 19 A natural remedy of travelling sickness is ..... in any form.
- a) coffee
  - b) tea
  - c) yeast
  - d) ginger
- 20 The phrase "at risk of losing their breakfast when travelling" means .....
- a) vomiting
  - b) sweating
  - c) sleeping
  - d) eating
- 21 To avoid travel sickness, you may .....
- a) read a book
  - b) play a game
  - c) look on the horizon
  - d) have big meals
- 22 The antonym of the word "confusion" is ".....".
- a) misunderstanding
  - b) clarity
  - c) mistake
  - d) chaos

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Nader was an only child. He was used to getting what he wanted. He knew no other way. When his parents played any games with him, they would let him win on purpose so that he would be happy. Otherwise, Nader would kick up a big **fuss**<sup>(1)</sup>.

In school, Nader took up football as his **co-curricular**<sup>(2)</sup> activity. He was a football **fanatic**<sup>(3)</sup>. His **idol**<sup>(4)</sup> was a famous English football star. Nader was not an **exceptional** player. He was usually a **reserve**<sup>(5)</sup> player in football matches. However, as this was his graduation year, his coach decided to give him a chance to play a match. Nader was excited upon hearing this piece of news.

Over the next two weeks, Nader put in his all into training. Even during the weekends, he would insist that his father should take him to the park to practise. At home, he would watch football matches on television, hoping to pick up some tips.



(5) بديل

(3) متعصب  
(4) قدوة

(1) ضجة  
(2) منهج تكميلي



32 The Suez Canal is the safest waterway in the world and an important source of Egypt's national income. The economic projects on its banks will add more to its benefits.

- (a) قناة السويس هي مجرى مائي آمن ومصدر هام من مصادر الدخل القومي لمصر، كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية في بنوكها المزيد إلى فوائدها.
- (b) تعد قناة السويس أكثر الممرات المائية أماناً في العالم ومصدرًا هاماً من مصادر الدخل القومي لمصر، كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية على ضفافها المزيد إلى فوائدها.
- (c) تعد قناة السويس أحد ممرات المياه السريعة في العالم ومصدرًا هاماً من مصادر الدخل القومي لمصر، كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية في بنوكها المزيد إلى فوائدها.
- (d) تعد قناة السويس أقصر الممرات المائية في العالم ومصدرًا هاماً من مصادر الدخل القومي لمصر، كما ستضيف المشاريع الاقتصادية على ضفافها القليل إلى فوائدها.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

33 أحد عيوب استخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي مثل الإنسان الآلي هو فقدان بعض الناس لوظائفهم، لكن ذلك يمكن تعويضه من خلال إعادة تدريب هؤلاء الناس لوظائف أخرى.

- a) One of the drawbacks of using Industrial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people lose their jobs, but this can be compensated for by retraining these people for other jobs.
- b) One of the disadvantages of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people change their jobs, but this can be compensated for by treating these people for other jobs.
- c) One of the disadvantages of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people lose their jobs, but this can be compensated for by retraining these people for other jobs.
- d) One of the demerits of using Artificial Intelligence, such as robots, is that some people lose their jobs, but this can be replaced for by treating these people for other jobs.

34 أعتقد أننا سنكون مستمرين في تزيين قاعات الاحتفالات عندما يصل الضيوف إذا لم نسرع وسوف يغضب أبي لذلك.

- a) I think we would decorate the hall when the guests arrived if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.
- b) I think we will have decorated the hall when the guests arrive if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.
- c) I think we decorated the hall when the guests arrived if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.
- d) I think we will be decorating the hall when the guests arrive if we do not hurry and my father will be angry about it.



► Answer the following questions: (Great Expectations)

35 Was it right of Pip to fight the boy at Miss Havisham's house? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

.....

.....

36 What do you think of Miss Havisham's decision to pay for Pip's apprenticeship?

.....

.....

.....

.....

37 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

"The best birthday party you've had"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



متنساش تتابعنا ♥

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 403



Assess your  
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!



### Key Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة	هندسة ميكانيكية (n)	mechanical engineering
ban (v) (ned)	يمنع	مسرحية/فيلم موسيقي	musical (n)
basis (n)	أساس	شريك/رفيق	partner (n)
character (n)	شخصية	تنبؤات	predictions (n)
checklist (n)	قائمة تدقيق	نشاط إشعاعي	radioactivity (n)
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	حقيقة/واقع	reality (n)
confusing (adj)	مربك	علم الروبوتات	robotics (n)
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	أعلى/أكبر سنًا	senior (adj)
detect (v) (ed)	يكشف	سفينة فضاء	spaceship (n)
developer (n)	مطور (برامج)	سرب	swarm (n)
electric-powered (adj)	يدار بالكهرباء	الجمهور المستهدف	target audience
electronics (n)	إلكترونيات	عنوان	title (n)
feedback (n)	التغذية الراجعة/تعليق	سياحة	tourism (n)
impressive (adj)	مؤثر	لاسلكي	wireless (adj)

### Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

come to life	يعود للحياة	لديه أشياء مشتركة	have in common
concentrate on	يركز على	يتلقى خبرًا من	hear from
dream of	يحلم بـ	يدون ملاحظات	make notes
feel about	يشعر بخصوص	يستبدل ... بـ	replace ... with
fill in	يملأ	يتحدث عن	talk about
focus attention on	يركز اهتمامه على	يدون	write down



## 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

## Vocabulary &amp; Language

- 1 We think that the person who won the quiz is a ..... . He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed.  
a) chat                      b) bias                      c) cheat                      d) spin
- 2 You must be ..... of yourself; you have made a silly mistake!  
a) proud                      b) pleased                      c) afraid                      d) ashamed
- 3 The ..... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.  
a) impact                      b) face                      c) scar                      d) surface
- 4 It is a/an ..... to think that women always do housework.  
a) prejudice                      b) stereotype                      c) type                      d) incident
- 5 What is the best ..... for a headache?  
a) cause                      b) treatment                      c) illness                      d) surgeon
- 6 People who leak books and join in ..... are punished for their crime.  
a) piracy                      b) pirates                      c) cheat                      d) chat
- 7 Doctors keep the health ..... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.  
a) paper                      b) records                      c) placements                      d) figures
- 8 She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. "Contribution" here is a synonym for ".....".  
a) deprivation                      b) donation                      c) estimation                      d) relation
- 9 My brother was finally ..... that he had been selected for the new position as a sales manager.  
a) asked                      b) said                      c) informed                      d) ordered
- 10 You should ..... your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.  
a) appear                      b) float                      c) inverse                      d) immerse
- 11 Many companies couldn't be ..... financially for their losses during the coronavirus pandemic.  
a) communicated                      b) compensated                      c) contained                      d) continued
- 12 The famous novelist has won a lot of international .....  
a) awards                      b) rewards                      c) words                      d) wards
- 13 Teachers should use different ways to assess students' .....  
a) treatment                      b) movement                      c) achievement                      d) agreement



- 14 Naguib Mahfouz is still a/an ..... to young novelists.  
 a) inspiration      b) respiration      c) animation      d) regulation
- 15 We should reward those who have made significant ..... to our society.  
 a) ammunition      b) constitutions      c) distributions      d) contributions
- 16 The new secretary is grumpy. This means she is .....  
 a) good-natured      b) well-known      c) bad-tempered      d) badly used
- 17 Try to avoid ..... when writing a news story.  
 a) pride      b) prejudice      c) justice      d) conscience
- 18 The ..... looked fascinating in her wedding dress.  
 a) bride      b) bridegroom      c) groom      d) pride
- 19 Yasmeen's winning invention was ..... by the need for cleaner water in her village.  
 a) contained      b) stained      c) parked      d) sparked
- 20 A/An ..... is someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn.  
 a) amateur      b) apprentice      c) employer      d) professional
- 21 The secret formula for success is hard work and .....  
 a) situation      b) ammunition      c) deterioration      d) determination
- 22 The ..... was found guilty of murder after a trial in a court of law.  
 a) convict      b) innocent      c) crime      d) judge
- 23 After going through many obstacles, the poor young man ..... as a doctor.  
 a) taught      b) qualified      c) defied      d) rewarded
- 24 When you leave out facts or certain information that doesn't agree with your point of view, this is called bias by .....  
 a) omission      b) placement      c) spin      d) reality
- 25 My brother is going to ..... in social engineering; it is the branch he likes most.  
 a) realise      b) specialise      c) emphasise      d) economise
- 26 While I ..... dinner, someone knocked on the door.  
 a) had      b) was having      c) did have      d) am having
- 27 After he had examined the athlete, the doctor ..... him permission to join the competition.  
 a) gave      b) given      c) had given      d) gives
- 28 The train ..... before we arrived at the station.  
 a) had left      b) has left      c) was leaving      d) will leave
- 29 Mr Ali ..... at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.  
 a) has worked      b) is working  
 c) will have been working      d) had been working



- 30 The bridge over the valley is built on a ..... scale than the one over the river.  
a) big                      b) bigger                      c) biggest                      d) the biggest
- 31 When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the ..... experience of my life.  
We were lucky that nobody was hurt.  
a) most shocking      b) shocking                      c) more shocking      d) less shocking
- 32 By 2050, I think that astronomers ..... new planets outside our solar system.  
a) will have found      b) find                      c) have found                      d) are finding
- 33 We won't be able to live on Mars until we ..... enough water there.  
a) will find                      b) have found                      c) will be finding                      d) found
- 34 I felt really sick ..... the party, so I went home.  
a) while                      b) when                      c) during                      d) on
- 35 Rami is very happy; he ..... a medal for writing poetry.  
a) is winning                      b) won                      c) has won                      d) had won
- 36 It has been two months since we ..... our uncle in the village.  
a) had visited                      b) visited                      c) have visited                      d) visiting
- 37 Yousef ..... as a secretary for ten years only. Now, he is a sales manager for a big food company.  
a) works                      b) worked                      c) has worked                      d) had worked
- 38 Did you finish reading the novel I ..... you?  
a) will lend                      b) have been lent                      c) will be lending                      d) had lent
- 39 I went to the company and ..... the sales manager.  
a) met                      b) had met                      c) have met                      d) will meet
- 40 I haven't seen Mr Ahmad ..... the last time we met at the club.  
a) for                      b) when                      c) since                      d) ago
- 41 Amany ..... three lessons before she went to bed.  
a) has revised                      b) had revised  
c) has been revising                      d) had been revising
- 42 I can't meet you since I ..... my lessons all day.  
a) will revise                      b) had revised                      c) will be revising                      d) have revised
- 43 I think reading a novel is ..... more interesting than watching a movie.  
a) as                      b) much                      c) many                      d) a lot of
- 44 A: Have you received a reply to your complaint? B: Yes, I ..... it yesterday.  
a) received                      b) had received                      c) was receiving                      d) have received
- 45 When I ..... the news, I will tell you!  
a) will get                      b) had got                      c) was getting                      d) have got
- 46 I was exhausted because I ..... working all day long.  
a) had been working                      b) have worked  
c) have been working                      d) had worked



- 47 By next October, I ..... the university.  
 a) will be joining    b) will join    c) am joining    d) will have joined
- 48 Don't worry; I ..... until you ..... better.  
 a) didn't leave / feel    b) won't leave / will feel  
 c) will leave / will feel    d) won't leave / feel
- 49 Once I ..... sure the car is ready for the journey, I ..... you.  
 a) had made / will contact    b) have made / will contact  
 c) have been made / will contact    d) will make / contacted
- 50 While my mother ..... our lunch, I ..... my homework, so I couldn't help her.  
 a) is making / was doing    b) was making / was doing  
 c) has made / was doing    d) was making / is doing

### Writing

- 51 Which of the following is punctuated correctly? .....  
 a) The teacher said, You must follow school rules, Hatem."  
 b) The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem".  
 c) The teacher said "You must follow school rules, Hatem."  
 d) The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
- 52 Pollution has a serious effect on our health. However, a lot of people are still ignorant of the importance of keeping the environment clean. This shows ..... in ideas.  
 a) addition    b) contrast    c) possibility    d) reason
- 53 In a hook sentence, you need to .....  
 a) sum up your essay by briefly revisiting the information covered  
 b) grab the reader's attention to read the essay  
 c) support, explain, illustrate, or provide evidence for the idea expressed in the topic sentence  
 d) analyse two points of view by either comparing them, contrasting them, or both
- 54 Which of the following sentences isn't punctuated correctly?  
 a) A 20-year-old student has won the gold medal.  
 b) She has bought three things: a vase, natural flowers and a wooden table.  
 c) After you type the report, Hatim, email it to Miss Salma.  
 d) What a wonderful jacket When did you buy it?
- 55 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?  
 a) Wael did you realise why I was angry with Gamal's brother?  
 b) Wael, did you realise why I was angry with Gamal's brother.  
 c) Wael, did you realise why I was angry with Gamal's brother?  
 d) Wael, did you realise Why I was angry with Gamal s brother?



- 56** An argumentative essay .....
- a) recounts an incident that either you or others have experienced
  - b) requires you to investigate an idea, evaluate evidence and set forth an argument concerning that idea
  - c) tells readers a story, often about an experience that resulted in a powerful life change
  - d) is a form of academic writing that is built around a detailed description of a person, building, place, situation, notion, etc
- 57** Which of the following is part of a persuasive essay on "The negative impact of the news on people and social media"?
- a) To start with, we should consider the possible benefits of the current news we follow all over the world.
  - b) In summary, social media plays an important role in spreading public awareness concerning the challenges, we face.
  - c) Moreover, the constant cycle of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed and worried.
  - d) On the other hand, we can't ignore that a lot of people aren't keen on following current events.
- 58** When concluding an essay on the benefits of mass media, one of the following sentences can't be used:
- a) To sum up, the mass media could be a window to the whole world.
  - b) In my opinion, there are numerous disadvantages to using mass media, especially if we use it badly.
  - c) In my opinion, the mass media are very useful to all of us, especially if we use them properly.
  - d) In conclusion, the mass media have made the world a small village.
- 59** When you start writing an essay about the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation, we can use:
- a) To sum up, the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation is an unforgettably interesting place to visit.
  - b) Moreover, the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation presents the Egyptian civilisation from prehistoric times to the present day.
  - c) Without doubt, the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation is a splendid place to visit.
  - d) In conclusion, our ancient Egyptian Civilisation is a source of pride for all of us.
- 60** A/An..... essay depends on opinions and emotions.
- a) argumentative    b) narrative    c) persuasive    d) descriptive



**2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Few women had become queens of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut, who is one of the most important females in Egyptian history. She was queen from around 1479 BCE to 1458 BCE, making her one of the longest ruling females. During her 21 years of rule, she improved trade with other countries, which had stopped for many years during a war.

Pictures from the walls of ancient temples show Hatshepsut's ships trading with a country called Punt (now part of East Africa), from where her ships brought back gold, valuable stones and animal skins. They also brought back trees, which were planted when they returned to Egypt. This is believed to be the first-time foreign trees were grown in a different country. The journey to Punt was probably the first of other trading trips, which included visits to Byblos (now in Lebanon) and Sinai.

Money from this trade helped Hatshepsut to build many amazing buildings and bring many years of peace and wealth to Egypt. The many buildings that Hatshepsut had built were usually larger and more impressive than buildings of the past. Her most famous buildings include the temples at Beni Hasan and at Deir el-Bahri, which some people call one of the wonders of the ancient world. But she also helped to repair other older monuments that had been damaged and started a period of artistic creativity.

Hatshepsut had many statues made of herself and you can find them in many of the world's greatest museums today. Many of the statues that were made at this time were in the Thutmoside style (named after her father Thutmose I), which people today consider as the typical ancient Egyptian style. The mummy of Hatshepsut and lots of information about her can be found at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation.

**1 What was Hatshepsut's main contribution to Ancient Egypt?**

- a) She had statues built.
- b) She brought peace and wealth to the country.
- c) She helped women become queens.
- d) She was a female stereotype.

**2 Which of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text?**

- a) Many trees grew there.
- b) People hunted animals there.
- c) It was a rich country.
- d) It had many wars with ancient Egypt.

**3 How could Hatshepsut afford to build so much during her rule?**

- a) She improved trade with other countries.
- b) She won wars with other countries.
- c) She planted trees from other countries.
- d) She had many statues made of herself.



- 4 What do we know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut?
- They are unusual.
  - They are in a style that people expect.
  - They are more impressive than other statues.
  - They are in a very unpopular style.
- 5 According to the article, gold, valuable stones and animals were ..... .
- finally kept in Punt
  - sold to African countries
  - brought to Egypt
  - restored before the reign of Hatshepsut.
- 6 People consider Deir el-Bahri one of the wonders of the ancient world. Wonders is similar in meaning to ..... .
- obstacles
  - myths
  - marvels
  - superstitions
- 7 Which of the following is incorrect according to the passage?
- Not many women had become queens of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut.
  - Hatshepsut improved trade with other countries, built many amazing buildings and made wars with others during her reign.
  - We can see the statues made for Hatshepsut in many of the world's greatest museums today.
  - Thutmose III was Hatshepsut's stepson.
- 8 We can see the mummy of Hatshepsut ..... .
- at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation
  - in East of Africa
  - in the temples at Beni Hassan
  - at a museum in Punt

### 3 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 Innovation is endless. The more man seeks progress and welfare, the more he invents things that make life easier. However, do you think all inventions don't have negative aspects?

- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما ابتكر الإنسان أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل، سعى إلى التقدم والرفاهية، ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب إيجابية؟
- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والتطور، اشترى أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل. ولذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟
- الابتكار لا نهاية له، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسهل. ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن كل الاختراعات ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟
- الرفاهية لا نهاية لها، فكلما سعى الإنسان إلى التقدم والرفاهية، ابتكر أشياء تجعل الحياة أسرع. ومع ذلك، هل تعتقد أن الرفاهية ليست لها جوانب سلبية؟



- 2 Women have played a pivotal role in the renaissance of ancient and modern societies. Through this role, they demonstrated their ability to achieve positive change in those societies.

- (a) لقد أظهرت المرأة دوراً محورياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، واستعرضت في تلك الفترة قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير النسبي في تلك المجتمعات.
- (b) لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً في بناء المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور رغبتها في تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.
- (c) لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً عادياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك الحضارات.
- (d) لقد لعبت المرأة دوراً محورياً في نهضة المجتمعات القديمة والحديثة، وأظهرت من خلال هذا الدور قدرتها على تحقيق التغيير الإيجابي في تلك المجتمعات.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

- 3 من المتوقع أن تتوقف طباعة الصحف في العقود القليلة القادمة. سنقرأ الأخبار عبر الإنترنت، لذلك سنحتاج إلى معرفة المزيد عن المواقع الإلكترونية الجديدة التي يمكن أن تعطينا وجهة نظر متوازنة.

- (a) In the next few decades, I think that we will have continued printing newspapers. We won't be reading the news offline, so we will need to know about new books that can give us a balanced point of view.
- (b) In the next few years, I think that we will have stopped printing newspapers. We will be borrowing the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a fixed point of view.
- (c) In the next few decades, it is expected that printing newspapers will have stopped. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.
- (d) In the next few decades, I think that we will have stopped printing newspapers. We will be reading the news online, so we will need to know about new websites that can give us a balanced point of view.

- 4 تهتم الدولة دائماً بحماية حقوق الملكية الفكرية للمؤلفين والناشرين، لذا تفرض عقوبة صارمة على القرصنة الفكرية وتسريب الكتب حفاظاً على حقوق المنتجين ودور النشر.

- (a) The estate always takes care of protect the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leak in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing homes.
- (b) The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it proposes a strict penalty on intellectual privacy and book diversion in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- (c) The state is always interested in protecting the intellectual property rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book leaking in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing houses.
- (d) The estate is always interested in protecting the intellectual liberty rights of authors and publishers, so it imposes a strict penalty on intellectual piracy and book lake in order to preserve the rights of producers and publishing house.





# Taking care of ourselves

## Unit 4

## Objectives

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى  
الوحدة الرقمية

- Reading** : An article about burnout; An excerpt from the poem *Suppose* by Phoebe Cary
- Writing** : An email to a friend to offer help; An essay about changes you have experienced in your life
- Listening** : Voice messages about well-being
- Speaking** : Discussion to find solutions for mental health problems
- Language** : Modal verbs; Making suggestions
- Life Skills** : Self-management; Resilience

**قناة العباقرة ٣**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**







## A Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

burnout (n)*	إرهاق العمل/انهيار عصبي	promote (v) (d)	يشجع/ينمي/يطور/يرقى
cope (v) (d)	يتأقلم	scold (v) (ed)	يؤنب/يوبخ
exhausted (adj)	مُزهق	self-care (n)	العناية بالنفس
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس/يقطب جبينه	stress (n)	ضغط عصبي/توتر
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
mental health (n)	الصحة النفسية	time management (n)	إدارة الوقت
pout (v) (ed)	يتجهم	well-being (n)	سعادة/رفاهية

Long and unpredictable work hours can lead to **burnout** and frustration.



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

alter (v) (ed)	يغير/يبدل	creation (n)	الخلق/الكون
amount (n)	كمية/مقدار	current affairs (n)	أحداث جارية
anxiety (n)	قلق/توتر	deal with (v)	يتعامل مع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	decision (n)	قرار
behaviour (n)	سلوك	downside (n)	عيب/خلل
choice (n)	اختيار	else (adv)	آخر
clear off (v) (ed)	يصفو/يتحسن (الطقس)	emotions (n)	مشاعر/عواطف
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز	extra (adj)	إضافي
connection (n)	علاقة/رابطة	extreme (adj)	شديد/متطرف
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم	face-to-face (adj)	وجها لوجه
contribute (v) (d)	يساهم/يشارك	frustrated (adj)	محبط



headache (n)	صداع	psychologist (n)	عالم نفسي/طبيب نفسي
increase (v) (d)	يزيد/يزداد	react (v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل
interact (v) (ed)	يتفاعل	reaction (n)	رد فعل
issue (n)	قضية	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل
keep up (v)	يواصل	researcher (n)	باحث
limit (v) (ed) (n)	يضع حدًا/يقلل/حد	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
pain (n)	ألم	schoolwork (n)	عمل مدرسي
particular (adj)	خاص/محدد	situation (n)	موقف
perfectly (adv)	بشكل كامل	skill (n)	مهارة
please (v) (d)	يسعد	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
poem (n)	قصيدة	suffer (v) (ed)	يعانى
pour down (v) (d)	ينهمر (المطر)	sunshine (n)	سقوط الشمس
pressure (n)	ضغط	surprise (v) (d) (n)	يدهش/يفاجئ/مفاجأة

### Workbook Vocabulary

basis (n)	أساس	physical (adj)	مادى/جسمانى
caffeine (n)	مادة الكافيين	priority (n)	أولوية
category (n)	فئة	promise (v) (d) (n)	يوعد/وعد
chemical (n) (adj)	مادة كيميائية/كيميائى	revision (n)	مراجعة
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	stretch (v) (ed) (n)	يقوم بتمرينات إطالة/إطالة
counsellor (n)	ناصح/مستشار	urgent (adj)	عاجل/منلح
endorphin (n)	هرمون الأندروفين (السعادة)		

**قناة العباقرة ٣ث**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**





## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Doctors assure that a balanced diet ..... good health and normal development.  
a) reduces      b) charges      c) promotes      d) ends
- 2 Many of the runners fell to the ground as they crossed the finishing line. They were really .....  
a) content      b) exhausted      c) relieved      d) relaxed
- 3 Balancing work and family is the main cause of ..... for many people nowadays.  
a) intention      b) oppression      c) success      d) stress
- 4 The boss was ..... when he entered the office, so I knew that he was annoyed about something.  
a) frowning      b) smiling      c) smelling      d) laughing
- 5 A/An ..... is a person whose job is to study a particular subject to find out new things about it.  
a) actor      b) researcher      c) adviser      d) helper
- 6 Mother ..... my little brother for breaking the valuable vase that grandfather gave us.  
a) praised      b) fired      c) scolded      d) expelled
- 7 Experts believe that we should try to ..... the children's use of social media.  
a) limit      b) mark      c) increase      d) develop
- 8 The new student does not ..... well with the other students in class.  
a) interrupt      b) interact      c) involve      d) contain
- 9 The young engineer says he can't ..... up with his work in the desert.  
a) hold      b) leave      c) keep      d) release
- 10 The reform plan is great, but the only ..... is that it's going to cost a lot of money.  
a) upside      b) advantage      c) merit      d) downside



## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

as a result	نتيجة لذلك	have a headache	يعانى من صداع
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	have a negative effect on	له تأثير سلبي على
do activities	يمارس أنشطة	in danger of	فى خطر من
do exams	يؤدى امتحانات	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
do exercise	يقوم بتمارين رياضية	take care of	يعتنى بـ
get better	يتحسن	take responsibility for	يتحمل مسؤولية
go for a walk	يقوم بالتمشية	there's a chance	هناك احتمال
afraid of	خائف من	pain in	ألم فى
angry at/with	غاضب من	pressure on	ضغط على
connection between	علاقة بين	think of/about	يفكر/يعتقد فى
conversation with	محادثة مع	unhappy about	غير سعيد بشأن

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
alter	يغير/يبدل	alteration alternative	تغيير بديل	altered alternative	متغير بديل
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك	behavioural	سلوكى
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
connect	يربط/يصل	connection	علاقة/رابطة	connected	مرتبط/متصل
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exhaust	يرهق	exhaustion	إرهاق	exhausted exhausting	مُزهق مرهق
frustrate	يجبط	frustration	إحباط	frustrated	محبط
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن/محسن
press	يضغط	pressure	ضغط	pressing pressured	ضاغط/ملح مضغوط
promote	يعزز/يطور	promotion	تعزيز/ترقية	promoted	معزز/مطور

## قناة العباقرة ٣

I should **alter** the sofa because it's about to break.  
The **alteration** of the sofa can't be delayed.  
- The **altered** sofa can be put on the roof.

182

Unit 4

علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
alter	يغير	change/adjust	remain/continue يبقى/يستمر
burnout	انهيار/إرهاق العمل	breakdown/collapse	endurance قدرة التحمل
concentrate	يركز	focus/intensify	distract/scatter يشوش
connection	علاقة/صلة	relation/link	division/separation تقسيم/انفصال
cope	يتأقلم مع	manage/handle	retreat/yield يتراجع/يستسلم
frown	يكشر/يعبس	pout	smile يبتسم
particular	خاص/محدد	specific/appropriate	general/common عام/شائع
pressure	ضغط	stress/tension	relaxation/ease استرخاء/راحة
promote	يعزز/ينمي	boost/develop	block/hinder يعوق
scold	يؤنب/يوبخ	blame/criticise	approve/compliment يستحسن/يجامل
suppose	يفترض/يظن	assume/guess	deny/reject ينكر/ينبذ

### Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I suppose that all my friends will come to the party. The verb "suppose" is similar in meaning to .....  
 a) guess                      b) deny                      c) reject                      d) ignore
- The family is putting pressure ..... their son to change his mind about his job.  
 a) for                      b) on                      c) at                      d) with
- Winners are the people who are able to ..... responsibility of their lives.  
 a) test                      b) play                      c) give                      d) take
- The aim of the meeting is to promote trade between the two countries.  
 The word "promote" is the opposite of .....  
 a) boost                      b) hinder                      c) develop                      d) change



- 5 My father always advises me to think longer before I ..... important decisions.  
a) make                      b) do                      c) give                      d) follow
- 6 The war in Ukraine ..... a negative effect on the economy and the environment.  
a) devises                      b) takes                      c) makes                      d) has
- 7 The government exerted great efforts to improve public transport in Egypt.  
The noun of the verb "improve" is .....  
a) improves                      b) improved                      c) improvement                      d) improvisation
- 8 The weather is very nice today. Let's go ..... a walk.  
a) in                      b) for                      c) at                      d) of
- 9 Giving up our car has greatly altered our lifestyle for the better. The word "alter" is similar in meaning to .....  
a) defy                      b) continue                      c) remain                      d) adjust
- 10 Sami's mother scolded him for breaking her favourite vase. The antonym of the verb "scold" is .....  
a) blame                      b) reproach                      c) approve                      d) reject

### Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخدماها.

#### 1 pain

ألم (تشعر به وغالبًا يكون بشكل مفاجئ)

*the feeling when part of your body hurts usually suddenly*

A broken leg causes a lot of **pain**.

He felt a sharp **pain** in his chest.

#### ache

ألم (مستمر غالبًا ليس شديدًا وتستخدم في الأسماء المركبة)

*a continuous pain, especially one that is not very bad, commonly used in compounds*

I felt an **ache** in my back after wandering all day.

Driving gives me a **headache**.

I've got a **stomachache**.

#### 2 skill

مهارة (يمكن تعلمها وممارستها)

- He plays the piano with great **skill**.

- The course will help you improve your communication **skills**.

#### talent/gift

موهبة (طبيعية يمكن تحسينها بالتعليم والتدريب)

- She was a young artist with a lot of **talent**.

- He showed a natural **gift** for comedy.



**amount**

كمية/مقدار (القدر الموجود في شيء)

*how much of something there is*Try to reduce the **amount** of fat in your meal.**proportion**

نسبة (مقدار شيء مقارنة بالكمية الكاملة الموجودة)

*the amount of something, compared with the whole amount that exists*A high **proportion** of the students were from poor families.**3 quota**

كوتا (حصة نسبية لا يمكن تجاوزها)

*a maximum amount of something that can be produced, sold, brought into a country*To protect local industry, the government sometimes impose import **quotas** on certain products.**yield**

محصول/ناتج (المقدار الذي تم إنتاجه من شيء وخاصة المحاصيل)

*the amount of something that is produced, especially crops*We are pleased with this year's cotton **yield**.**pour**

ينهمر/يسقط بشدة (المطر)

The weather was bad with the strong wind and the rain **pouring** down.**blow**

تهب (الرياح)

It was **blowing** from an easterly direction.**4 fall**

يسقط (المطر)

He stood at the balcony watching the rain **fall** on the road.**rise**

تشرق (الشمس)

Most Egyptian farmers start work very early just after the sun **rises**.**set**

تغرب (الشمس)

In Ramadan, Muslims start to eat just after the sun **sets**.**5 else**

آخر/أيضاً (تأتي مع أدوات الاستفهام وكلمات تحتوي على)

(some – any – no – every)

- Haven't you got anything **else** to wear? These clothes look terrible.- The book isn't here. Where **else** should I look?



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Because of the rise in prices, people spend a large ..... of their income on food.

a) amount                                      b) quality

c) proportion                                  d) quota
- 2 By midnight, the wind was ..... hard along the coast.

a) blowing                                      b) pouring

c) falling                                        d) rising
- 3 Mona got her ..... for languages from her mother who worked as a translator.

a) quota    b) gift

c) trend                                         d) wave
- 4 Some species exist in this area of the rainforest and nowhere ..... on earth.

a) another                                      b) other

c) others                                         d) else
- 5 Customer service jobs require young people with good communication ..... to be able to handle customers' complaints well.

a) skills    b) gifts

c) talents                                         d) awards
- 6 The government has decided to raise the ..... of electric car imports to encourage using them.

a) amount                                      b) proportion

c) quantity                                      d) quota
- 7 The man felt a sudden sharp ..... in his chest, so he was taken to hospital.

a) pain    b) ache

c) suffering                                      d) relief
- 8 We cancelled the voyage because rain began to ..... down and we felt like a storm was coming.

a) blow    b) pour

c) fall    d) rise

### قناة العباقرة ٣ث

**على تطبيق Telegram**

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Many of the workers in the factory are suffering from ..... as a result of overworking.  
a) burnout      b) relaxation      c) promotion      d) situation
- 2 He wasn't able to cope with the ..... and strains of the job, so he left it.  
a) surprises      b) stresses      c) wages      d) salaries
- 3 It's important to avoid the causes of poor mental ..... from the beginning.  
a) limit      b) innovation      c) health      d) wealth
- 4 The young mother ..... her child gently for his bad behaviour, which had a good effect on him.  
a) praised      b) frowned      c) improved      d) scolded
- 5 Being with my family gives me a wonderful sense of ..... and pleasure.  
a) stress      b) sorrow      c) well-being      d) revision
- 6 My uncle is a 40-year-old workaholic مدمن عمل who has never paid attention to self- ..... . He suffers from diseases.  
a) denial      b) care      c) assessment      d) promotion
- 7 All governments must work hard to ..... people's awareness of the dangers that threaten our environment today.  
a) promote      b) reduce      c) block      d) contribute
- 8 Exams are stressful, so students fall under ..... when the exams are near.  
a) decision      b) preservation      c) creation      d) pressure
- 9 The manager has said that we cannot move the deadline الموعد النهائي, so time ..... is very important to finish in time.  
a) management      b) wasting      c) reaction      d) connection
- 10 The weather forecast says that the weather is expected to continue to ..... over the next few days.  
a) prove      b) reduce      c) approve      d) improve
- 11 You should ..... on passing your final exams and don't let anything distract you.  
a) press      b) depend      c) concentrate      d) apply
- 12 Emergency jobs require someone who is good at ..... with pressure.  
a) telling      b) dealing      c) handling      d) reporting
- 13 The ..... between smoking and heart disease is well known.  
a) radiation      b) connection      c) separation      d) reaction
- 14 Small companies have ..... heavy financial losses during the COVID-19 crisis.  
a) dealt      b) feared      c) suffered      d) considered





- 15 Rice forms the ..... of the daily diet in many Asian countries such as Thailand and Indonesia.  
a) basis                      b) bias                      c) press                      d) stress
- 16 The landscape **مناظر طبيعية** in some coastal cities has been ..... by the climate change the world is facing.  
a) coped                      b) reacted                      c) altered                      d) interacted
- 17 There's a separate ..... for children in this karate competition.  
a) integrity                      b) category                      c) majority                      d) facility
- 18 Banks normally give ..... to large businesses when deciding on loans.  
a) minority                      b) superiority                      c) priority                      d) inferiority
- 19 Most students are afraid of ..... exams. So, they must revise hard before them.  
a) inspecting                      b) revising                      c) making                      d) doing
- 20 The children were angry ..... the way they had been treated at school.  
a) in                      b) for                      c) at                      d) of
- 21 His business was ..... so much better. That's why he could achieve good profits.  
a) getting                      b) going                      c) preferring                      d) making
- 22 The customer frowned impatiently with anger when the clerk was slow. The synonym of the verb "frown" is ".....".  
a) smile                      b) pout                      c) clear                      d) depict
- 23 Students should be used to dealing with pressure during their studies. The antonym of the word "pressure" is ".....".  
a) relaxation                      b) stress                      c) oppression                      d) depression
- 24 The passengers were getting very ..... at the delay of the flight.  
a) frustrate                      b) frustration                      c) frustrated                      d) frustrates
- 25 It was clear that the small ship was ..... danger of sinking.  
a) for                      b) in                      c) about                      d) out
- 26 ..... is a state of emotional, physical, and mental exhaustion caused by excessive and prolonged stress. (Longman)  
a) Break out                      b) Burnout                      c) Knockout                      d) Checkout
- 27 The new secretary was worried he wouldn't be able to ..... with his boss's demands. (Longman)  
a) run                      b) race                      c) cope                      d) carry
- 28 Doctors and nurses are responsible for the care and ..... of their patients. (Longman)  
a) well-born                      b) well-being                      c) self-harm                      d) self-denial
- 29 Time ..... is highly recommended when running your own business. (Longman)  
a) management                      b) retirement                      c) punishment                      d) reassignment
- 30 Congratulations! I heard you have been ..... to a higher position. (Longman)  
a) uprooted                      b) promoted                      c) operated                      d) removed





# 1 Making suggestions for the future

عمل اقتراحات للمستقبل

- هناك تعبيرات ومصطلحات كثيرة تعبر عن الاقتراح منها:

	Structure	Rule	Example
1.	How about	+ v.ing	How about <b>visiting</b> the museum?
	What about		What about <b>buying</b> a new computer?
	Have you considered		Have you considered <b>leaving</b> this area?
	Have you thought about		Have you thought about <b>selling</b> the car?
2.	Why don't you/we	+ inf.	Why don't you <b>leave</b> your car and take a taxi?
	You should		You should <b>concentrate</b> on your study.
	You could		You could <b>use</b> the bike instead of the car.
	Let's		Let's <b>meet</b> at the railway station.

## Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's up to you. .... with us or stay here.  
a) You should come      b) How about coming  
c) Let's come      d) You could come
- You seem stressed and worried. .... going to a movie?  
a) Let's      b) What about      c) You should      d) You could
- Why don't ..... Ola and Fatma if they want to come with us?  
a) asking      b) ask      c) you ask      d) to ask
- You ..... the car out of the garage. There is water running on its floor.  
a) should get      b) let's get      c) get      d) getting
- You say you're in a tight spot **مازق**. Have you thought about ..... your uncle for advice?  
a) ask      b) to asking      c) you ask      d) asking
- What about ..... chicken for lunch?  
a) had      b) have      c) having      d) not have
- Let's ..... a ticket today. It will be difficult for me tomorrow.  
a) get      b) got      c) getting      d) to get
- Have you considered ..... a new car? Yours is old-fashioned.  
a) buy      b) buying      c) to buy      d) being bought



## Extra points

مصطلحات إضافية للتعبير عن الاقتراح:

	Structure	Rule	Example
1.	I suggest	+ v.ing	I suggest <b>helping</b> Ahmed with his work.
	I recommend		She recommends <b>doing</b> exercise.
	How do you feel about		How do you feel about <b>meeting</b> Amr?
	Fancy		Do you fancy <b>going</b> to the cinema?
2.	... 'd better	+ inf.	You'd better <b>study</b> in the morning.
	I suppose you should		I suppose you should <b>play</b> handball.
	Shall I/we?		Shall I/we <b>help</b> Ahmed with his homework?
	Why not		Why not <b>go</b> and <b>see</b> a film?
3.	Don't forget ...	to + inf.	Don't forget <b>to watch</b> today's match.
	I'd like		I'd like <b>to give</b> Ahmed the money he needs.
	It would be nice		It would be nice <b>to finish</b> early.
4.	If I were you, I'd + inf.		If I were you, I <b>would visit</b> Italy for my holiday.

لاحظ



يأتي بعد **suggest/recommend** الفعل مضافاً له **ing** ولكن إذا جاء بعدهما **that** أو فاعل نستخدم **المصدر** مع أي فاعل قبلها.

I suggest **phoning** Ahmed and telling him the news.

I **suggest (that)** you **phone** Ahmed and tell him the news.

I **recommend that** Ameer **go** to Alexandria for his honeymoon.

بعد **How about/What about** نستخدم **v.ing** أو الاسم أو الضمير.

How about **visiting** Ahmed tomorrow?

How about **a nice drink**?

How about **having** a nice drink?

What about **(drinking) some more coffee**?

What about **a short walk** around the park?

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 It would be nice ..... lunch with us tonight.  
a) having      b) to have      c) you have      d) have
- 2 Why not ..... out and visit our relatives?  
a) to go      b) going      c) go      d) you go
- 3 She ..... do post-graduate studies abroad.  
a) 'd better      b) would better      c) suggests      d) recommends
- 4 If I were you, ..... another flat overlooking the Nile.  
a) shall I buy      b) how about buying      c) let's buy      d) I'd buy
- 5 What about ..... for our lunch?  
a) have a barbecue      b) a barbecue  
c) to have a barbecue      d) had a barbecue
- 6 I would never ..... using the phone while driving; it's against the law.  
a) blame      b) regret      c) recommend      d) object
- 7 I suggest ..... a nap before going out for fork.  
a) you take      b) taking      c) to take      d) both a & b
- 8 If he is bored with this job, I think he'd better look for another one. This is a kind of .....  
a) suggestion      b) blame      c) request      d) offer
- 9 How do you feel ..... visiting the zoo?  
a) on      b) of      c) about      d) for
- 10 Fancy ..... you here! It's a great surprise.  
a) to meet      b) meeting      c) meet      d) met

## 2 Regrets about the past

استخدام **ought to/should** للتعبير عن الندم:

Rule	Usage
<b>should/ ought to have + P.P.</b>	to talk about regret in the past للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغي فعل شيء لم نفعله).
He <b>should have studied</b> harder to pass the exam.	
<b>shouldn't/ oughtn't to have + P.P.</b>	to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea شيء حدث في الماضي وما كان ينبغي فعله.
I <b>shouldn't have insulted</b> him. He was angry and I'm sorry.	



## 3

## could have + P.P.

## Rule

could have + P.P.

## Usage

to say that someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do

كان في مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئاً ولكن لم يفعل وتستخدم للانتقاد أحياناً.

She **could have bought** a new phone, but she didn't.

## Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Haven't they given you the money back yet? They ..... it last week.  
a) shouldn't have    b) should have done    c) could have    d) could do
- 2 You ..... him so much money when he asked. It will take you a lot of time to get it back.  
a) could have lent    b) should have lent  
c) shouldn't have lent    d) should lend
- 3 He ..... at 10, but he was almost half an hour late.  
a) should have arrived    b) ought to arrive  
c) shouldn't have arrived    d) should arrive
- 4 You ..... them yesterday. Now it's too late.  
a) shouldn't have called    b) couldn't have called  
c) could call    d) should have called
- 5 You ..... television for so long. It was a waste of time.  
a) should have watched    b) should watch  
c) shouldn't have watched    d) could have watched
- 6 He ..... harder, but he was too lazy.  
a) shouldn't have studied    b) couldn't have studied  
c) must have studied    d) could have studied
- 7 I shouldn't have wasted my time playing games. This means that I ..... doing something.  
a) regret    b) think about  
c) suggest    d) blame others for
- 8 I had enough money and I ..... the bill, but I forgot.  
a) had to pay    b) could have paid  
c) have to    d) shouldn't have paid





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 What about ..... sport four times a week instead of six?  
a) do                      b) you do                      c) to do                      d) doing
- 2 Hi, Youssif. We are going to the mountains. Why ..... come with us?  
a) didn't you                      b) doesn't he                      c) don't you                      d) do you
- 3 Why don't you ..... some snacks with you?  
a) taking                      b) take                      c) to take                      d) about taking
- 4 ..... about taking that course in summer to improve your Spanish?  
a) Have you thought                      b) You could  
c) Let's                      d) Have you consider
- 5 Have you considered ..... to your family about your problem?  
a) to talk                      b) about talking                      c) talk                      d) talking
- 6 You ..... the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.  
a) shouldn't ask                      b) could have asked                      c) could ask                      d) should have asked
- 7 ....., I'd apply for the job.  
a) If you ask me                      b) If I were you  
c) How about you                      d) Have you considered
- 8 I fell off my bicycle. I ..... so careless.  
a) shouldn't have been                      b) should have been  
c) could have been                      d) should be
- 9 We got lost in Siwa. We ..... a map.  
a) shouldn't have taken                      b) should take  
c) should have taken                      d) could take
- 10 If she hates her job, then why .....?  
a) about quitting                      b) don't you quit                      c) not quitting                      d) doesn't she quit
- 11 You ..... plan your revision from now. It's important.  
a) shouldn't                      b) could                      c) needn't                      d) had to
- 12 The teacher isn't pleased with your homework. You ..... your brother to help you.  
a) let                      b) shouldn't ask                      c) couldn't ask                      d) could have asked
- 13 Have you considered ..... for your money back?  
a) asking                      b) to ask                      c) asked                      d) you should ask
- 14 I'm broke مفلس. I ..... my money on mobile phones.  
a) could have wasted                      b) should have wasted  
c) shouldn't have wasted                      d) should waste
- 15 It's very important ..... the advantages and the disadvantages of setting up your own business.  
a) should know                      b) to know                      c) let's know                      d) known



- 16 Why don't you lend your brother the money he needs to buy the book he needs? The speaker here is .....  
 a) suggesting b) offering  
 c) blaming d) asking about the cause
- 17 Shall I clean the room for you? The speaker here is .....  
 a) requesting b) offering c) suggesting d) asking for advice
- 18 I suggest that ..... grammar more.  
 a) study b) studying c) you studying d) you study
- 19 ..... to save more money? He always uses his money very recklessly.  
 a) Why doesn't he try b) How about trying  
 c) I suggest trying d) Let's try
- 20 If you don't want to go outside, ..... a movie?  
 a) let's watch b) I suggest watching  
 c) how about watching d) have you thought
- 21 ..... for a job and try to improve your living conditions?  
 a) Have you considered applying b) Why don't you apply  
 c) Let's apply d) How about applying
- 22 ..... abroad to complete your studies there?  
 a) Have you considered travelling b) What about travelling  
 c) Why don't you travel d) All are possible
- 23 Why don't we go to the cinema to watch the new film? ..... We've seen the film many times before.  
 a) Why not? b) OK, yes, let's.  
 c) No, let's not. d) What a good idea!
- 24 I suggest that he ..... more about it before he makes a decision.  
 a) think b) thought c) thinking d) should think
- 25 He's really beating himself up on failing the exam. This means .....  
 a) he has decided to try again b) he wants to forget all about that event  
 c) he blames himself for failing the exam d) he ignores that event
- 26 ..... spending the weekend in Alexandria? (Longman)  
 a) You could b) Why don't you  
 c) Let's d) Have you considered
- 27 ..... consult your dictionary or ask your teacher for help. (Longman)  
 a) You could b) What about c) How about d) Have you tried to
- 28 You ..... your composition: it is full of mistakes. (Longman)  
 a) must have revised b) should have revised  
 c) shouldn't have revised d) had to revise
- 29 I had a lot of money. I ..... that expensive T-shirt, but I don't like baggy clothes. (Longman)  
 a) must have bought b) shouldn't have bought  
 c) could have bought d) had to buy
- 30 I shouldn't have repeated that mistake. This means that I ..... it. (Longman)  
 a) didn't repeat b) repeated  
 c) ought to have repeated d) had to repeat





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 ..... is the state of being extremely tired or ill, either physically or mentally, because you have worked too hard.  
a) Burnout      b) Relaxation      c) Injury      d) Overdose
- 2 There is a ..... between pollution and the death of trees.  
a) collection      b) connection      c) reflection      d) separation
- 3 It's important to ..... before you do hard physical exercise so as to prepare your muscles.  
a) pout      b) scratch      c) cope      d) stretch
- 4 For hundreds of years, an enormous ..... of paper has been used to produce books.  
a) equality      b) quality      c) amount      d) capacity
- 5 In order not to be sent off, the player ..... being given a red card by the referee.  
a) insisted      b) avoided      c) promised      d) interacted
- 6 My ..... to leave school when I was only 15 was the worst mistake I ever made.  
a) decision      b) ambition      c) behaviour      d) revision
- 7 Ahmed got the best marks in English, which was a great ..... to his family.  
a) failure      b) anxiety      c) sorrow      d) surprise
- 8 The boys denied any ..... for the damage to the fence, but the security camera showed otherwise.  
a) reaction      b) responsibility      c) response      d) situation
- 9 Cheap cleaning products contain ..... that can be harmful to your skin.  
a) nutrients      b) crops      c) chemicals      d) seeds
- 10 Experts say that eating healthy food can ..... memory and concentration.  
a) remove      b) improve      c) prove      d) approve
- 11 The doctor gave Ahmed some tablets to ease the ..... in his stomach.  
a) pain      b) operation      c) tumor      d) action
- 12 Some people work such long hours that they may suffer from .....  
a) stress      b) press      c) relief      d) thirst
- 13 The disabled young man is in need of someone who can ..... care of him.  
a) do      b) make      c) take      d) give
- 14 I have very poor technical ..... . Could you help me fix my computer?  
a) skulls      b) terms      c) methods      d) skills



15 Doctors and nurses should learn to control their ..... in order to work perfectly.

- a) education      b) emotions      c) rewards      d) gifts

**Language**

16 I suggest ..... him a call before the end of the day.

- a) to give      b) give      c) giving      d) gave

17 I'm sorry for shouting at you – I ..... my voice.

- a) shouldn't have raised      b) should have raised  
c) could have raised      d) should rise

18 I recommend ..... that Chinese food.

- a) to try      b) trying      c) try      d) you trying

19 Have you ..... going to bed a bit earlier?

- a) thought      b) considered      c) suggest      d) believed

20 I failed the test. I ..... harder.

- a) shouldn't have studied      b) could study  
c) should study      d) should have studied

21 ..... out and buying some fruit?

- a) How about going      b) Why don't we go  
c) Let's go      d) We could go

22 Our mother wants a new bag. What about ..... father for help?

- a) to ask      b) asking      c) ask      d) asked

23 I missed the meeting in Assiut. I ..... an earlier train.

- a) should have caught      b) shouldn't have caught  
c) needn't have caught      d) mustn't have caught

24 ..... buy a new car? Yours always breaks down.

- a) How about      b) Why don't you      c) What about      d) Let's

25 ..... for a picnic or visiting the museum?

- a) We could go      b) Let's go      c) How about going      d) You should go

26 It's getting cold. We ..... our jackets.

- a) shouldn't have brought      b) must have brought  
c) should have brought      d) let's bring

27 ..... Hany or visit him to invite him to our party.

- a) We could phone      b) Could we phone  
c) What about phoning      d) Have you considered phoning

28 It's too cold in here. You ..... the window.

- a) must have opened      b) should open  
c) should have opened      d) shouldn't have opened

29 Don't think much. We ..... Spain or Italy for our holiday.

- a) should have visited      b) could visit  
c) could have visited      d) should be visited

30 You behaved rudely with your friend; you ..... have behaved yourself.

- a) might      b) must      c) should      d) shouldn't





## A

## Vocabulary



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

automatically (adv)	تلقائياً	optimistic (adj)	متفائل
aware (adj)	مدرك/واعٍ	participant (n)	مشارك
contagious (adj)	معدٍ	perception (n)	إدراك/وعى
disappoint (v) (ed)	يحبط	perfectionist (n)	باحث عن الكمال
edition (n)	إصدار/طبعة/نسخة	perfectly (adv)	على نحو كامل/بإتقان
efficient (adj)	كفاء	plan (n) (v) (ned)	خطة/يخطط
energy (n)	طاقة	real (adj)	حقيقي
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	reason (n)	سبب
extend (v) (ed)	يمتد/يمد	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى
final (adj)	نهائي	routine (n)	روتين/نمط/أسلوب
get together (v)	يجتمع/يتقابل	share (v) (d) (n)	يشارك/مشاركة
gratitude (n)	شكر/عرفان بالجميل	sign (n)	علامة
identify (v) (ied) *	يحدد	specific (adj)	خاص/محدد
memo (n)	مذكرة	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح/يناضل/يعانى
naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
normal (adj)	طبيعي	teenager (n)	مراهق
notice (v) (d)	يلحظ	trust (v) (ed) (n)	يثق في/ثقة
offer (v) (ed)	يعرض		

Scientists have **identified** a link between diet and cancer.





## Workbook Vocabulary

accept (v) (ed)	يقبل	influence (v) (d) (n)	يؤثر على/تأثير
alert (n)	تحذير/إنذار	member (n)	عضو
athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	perceive (v) (d)	يدرك
external (adj)	خارجي	raincoat (n)	معطف مطر
factor (n)	عامل	step (n) (v) (ped)	خطوة/يخطو

### Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I sent my friend a present to show my ..... after he supported me in the competition.  
a) gratitude      b) ingratitude      c) hatred      d) envy
- To be healthy, you should make exercise part of your daily .....  
a) red tape      b) system      c) routine      d) rest
- When I got home, I didn't have the time or ..... to argue with my wife.  
a) product      b) energy      c) atom      d) part
- The ..... match of the championship was attended by 60 thousand people.  
a) middle      b) specific      c) superior      d) final
- The young athlete was able to lead a/an ..... life, despite his disability.  
a) strange      b) normal      c) foreign      d) unhealthy
- The new owner of the company ..... to renew the offices as they look old.  
a) plans      b) rejects      c) rejoices      d) refuses
- Measles الحصبة is a kind of disease which is ..... for a week before and after the rash appears.  
a) unhealthy      b) desperate      c) contagious      d) infected
- Nursery schools play an important role in enhancing children's ..... of the world.  
a) prescription      b) reception      c) exception      d) perception
- Workshop ..... are encouraged to share their ideas with other people.  
a) employers      b) participants      c) enemies      d) venues
- The athlete ..... for 10 years to achieve success as an Olympic medal winner.  
a) released      b) puzzled      c) relaxed      d) struggled





## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	have problems with	لديه مشكلات مع
follow advice	يتبع نصيحة	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
get to sleep	يستغرق في النوم	make time for	يخصص الوقت لـ
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	on his own	بمفرده
have a talk	يتحدث/يدرّش	take action	يقوم/يتخذ إجراء
aware of	مدرك/واعٍ بـ	sit at	يجلس أمام
cope with	يتأقلم مع	worry about	يقلق على

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
identify	يحدد	identification identity	تحديد هوية هوية	identified	محدد هويته
notice	يلحظ	notice	ملاحظة	noticeable	ملحوظ
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed relaxing	مسترخ مريح
share	يشارك	share	مشاركة	shared	مشارك
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	موجِّه/اقتراحي

- I **suggest** watching a comic film tonight.
- My **suggestion** wasn't agreed on by the majority.
- The conditions are **suggestive** of what happened before. ★

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
efficient	كفاء	skillful/effective	incompetent/incapable غير قادر/غير كفء
expect	يتوقع	anticipate/predict	overlook/doubt يتجاهل/يشك
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse/mistake يرتبك/يسيء فهم



offer	يعرض	present/suggest	deny/request	ينكر/يطلب
relax	يسترخي	calm/cool	excite/worry	يثير/يقلق
specific	محدد	particular/definite	common/general	شائع/عام
suggest	يقترح	propose/recommend	oppose/deny	يعارض/ينكر

### Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My mother ..... her doctor's advice and went on a low-fat diet.  
a) gave                      b) followed                      c) offered                      d) designed
- 2 It must be really hard for a teacher to cope ..... the children under 5.  
a) for                      b) at                      c) with                      d) in
- 3 The researcher ..... a lot of notes of everything that he read.  
a) made                      b) did                      c) suggested                      d) replied
- 4 The manager is very busy, and he can't ..... time for any physical exercise.  
a) release                      b) defy                      c) depart                      d) make
- 5 The media has a role in making people aware ..... the danger of taking drugs.  
a) for                      b) in                      c) of                      d) at
- 6 The newspaper refused to identify the source of the allegations ادعاءات. The noun of the verb "identify" is ".....".  
a) identifiably                      b) identifies  
c) identity                      d) identifiable
- 7 He gradually relaxed and began to enjoy himself. The antonym of "relax" is .....  
a) clear                      b) calm                      c) cool                      d) worry
- 8 The company expects to complete work in two months' time. The synonym of the verb "expect" is ".....".  
a) predict                      b) overlook  
c) ignore                      d) deny

قناة العباقرة ٣ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





### energy

الطاقة (هي القدرة على أن تقوم بعمل دون تعب)/القوة التي تأتي من الكهرباء أو الفحم أو البترول وتستخدم لتسيير الآلات.

1

### power

نفوذ/سلطة/شدة/قوة محرك

- Children are usually full of **energy**.
- Most of the **energy** used nowadays comes from fossil fuels.

- The ship was helpless against the **power** of the storm.
- He was greedy for **power** and money.

### reason (n) for

سبب/مبرر/تبرير

2

### cause (n) of

سبب/مُسَبَّب (يؤدي إلى نتيجة)  
تأتي كفعل بمعنى يُسبب

- The police asked her the **reason** for her visit.
- Could you explain your **reasons** for choosing this job?

جملة + **The reason why**

- **The reason why** so many people caught the flu is still not clear.
- The major **cause** of these accidents is drivers going too fast.
- High winds **caused** many trees to fall during the night.

### share

- ١- يشارك/يشارك (بدون قسمة)
- ٢- يشارك (يترك شخصاً يستخدم ما يخصه)
- ٣- يشارك مع شخص في أفكار أو آراء
- ٤- يشارك شخصاً آراء أو مشاعر أو خبرة
- ٥- يوزع

3

### divide

- ١- يقسم/يفصل
- ٢- يقسم على رقم (في الرياضيات)

- We don't have enough books, so you'll have to **share**.
- When he was young, Samy never **shared** his toys with anyone.
- Other parents **share** their belief in the importance of reading.
- Students were able to **share** their experiences.
- They **shared** the cake between them.

- The book is **divided** into six sections.
- If you **divide** 21 by 3, you get 7.

### routine

روتين يومي (شخصي غالباً)

4

### custom

عادة مجتمعية

Everyone has their own morning **routine** before starting their daily activities.

In many countries, it's the **custom** for women to get married in white.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The police authority said that the ..... for the plane crash was engine failure, not human error.

a) reason                      b) search  
c) cause                        d) result
- 2 Most modern kings and queens rule only in a formal way, without real .....

a) energy                        b) gravity  
c) attraction                     d) power
- 3 After the Second World War, Germany was ..... into two separate countries.

a) shared                        b) divided  
c) derived                       d) relied
- 4 There's no fixed ..... of work at this hypermarket - every day is different.

a) activity                        b) custom  
c) routine                        d) tradition
- 5 Rugby is one of the sports that are most likely to ..... injury as it involves violent actions.

a) reason                        b) avoid  
c) cause                         d) result
- 6 I know that many people do not ..... some old views about women's role in society.

a) share                         b) divide  
c) split                          d) devise
- 7 In my opinion, tourists should respect the ..... and culture of the country they are in.

a) routines                        b) customs  
c) activities                       d) influences
- 8 At the end of the long race, the runners seemed to be running out of .....

a) power                         b) gravity  
c) influence                       d) energy





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The prison service should try to rehabilitate **يعيد تأهيل** prisoners so that they can lead ..... lives when they leave prison.  
a) average      b) normal      c) standard      d) terrific
- 2 Leila's neighbour helps her with the children and ..... support whenever she can.  
a) extends      b) alerts      c) offers      d) warns
- 3 Artificial flowers can sometimes look better than the ..... ones.  
a) real      b) false      c) optimistic      d) creative
- 4 Managers can ..... their employees to get the job done after setting clear rules.  
a) recognise      b) identify      c) suspect      d) trust
- 5 House prices are ..... to rise sharply in the next few months.  
a) expected      b) accepted      c) excepted      d) respected
- 6 He was always late for work. For this ....., his employer fired him.  
a) factor      b) reason      c) cause      d) share
- 7 After he had parked his car under a "No Parking" ....., the police drove it away.  
a) notice      b) note      c) sign      d) mark
- 8 Nour complained that the ..... was the same every day, with nothing to relieve the monotony **الرتابة**.  
a) routine      b) custom      c) red tape      d) tradition
- 9 A ..... went around the office, reminding staff of the date of the next meeting.  
a) sign      b) memo      c) signal      d) mark
- 10 Experts say that even the smallest baby can ..... its mother by her voice.  
a) extend      b) devise      c) identify      d) ally
- 11 Most young people believe that social media are a good way to ..... their feelings and views with others.  
a) divide      b) extend      c) export      d) share
- 12 I get a text ..... when I have used 80% of my mobile data.  
a) alert      b) tool      c) extinguisher      d) hose
- 13 If the device, for example a printer, has to be plugged into your computer, it is called a/an ..... device.  
a) middle      b) external      c) internal      d) perfect
- 14 Television brings many benefits, but it can also have a bad ..... on people.  
a) depiction      b) image      c) defect      d) influence
- 15 The coach insists that all team ..... must attend early-morning practice.  
a) organs      b) members      c) guests      d) hosts



- 16 Doctors warn us that lack of exercise is an important risk ..... for heart disease.  
a) defect      b) fiction      c) factor      d) plan
- 17 New technology is ..... to be a threat to employment as thousands of people may lose their jobs.  
a) perceived      b) achieved      c) concerned      d) influenced
- 18 Experts say that you must set some jobs for your child that he/she can do ..... his/her own.  
a) in      b) of      c) at      d) on
- 19 I asked my father to ..... me some advice about revising for the exam.  
a) give      b) take      c) suggest      d) request
- 20 Last night, I couldn't ..... to sleep, so I am very tired this morning.  
a) fill      b) get      c) give      d) take
- 21 The government is really ..... action to control inflation التضخم and protect citizens.  
a) giving      b) getting      c) taking      d) owning
- 22 Don't worry; you'll just have to cope ..... the situation in the company.  
a) with      b) at      c) in      d) about
- 23 The Ministry of Youth rejected a ..... that money should be spent to improve the old club and decided to rebuild it.  
a) suggest      b) suggestion      c) suggested      d) suggestive
- 24 The money was collected for a specific purpose. The synonym of the adjective "specific" is .....  
a) public      b) general      c) common      d) particular
- 25 Email is an efficient way of contacting a large number of people. The antonym of the word "efficient" is .....  
a) vague      b) clear      c) incompetent      d) responsible
- 26 It's important to be ..... of the signs of burnout. (Longman)  
a) pleased      b) keen      c) full      d) aware
- 27 I felt really ..... and angry with myself when I lost the match. (Longman)  
a) creative      b) impressed      c) frustrated      d) encouraged
- 28 In order to improve your mental health, you need to ..... responsibility for the things you can control. (Longman)  
a) sit      b) let      c) make      d) take
- 29 Burnout is caused by both the decisions you ....., and the situations you can't control. (Longman)  
a) sit      b) make      c) do      d) set
- 30 What activities can you ..... to help you feel good? (Longman)  
a) do      b) make      c) take      d) move



## Modal verbs الأفعال الناقصة

تستخدم (Modal verbs) وهي الأفعال المشروطة بوجود المصدر بعدها للضرورة والاستطاعة والاحتمال وإعطاء الإذن والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة، وقد تم شرح الاقتراح والنصيحة في الجزء الأول وسنتناول بالشرح الأجزاء الباقية في الجزء الحالي.

### 1 Necessity

الضرورة

تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن الضرورة:

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for ... to + inf.	had to ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها	It was necessary for ... to + inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for ... to + inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		needed to		will need to	
has got to					
need to/ needs to					

### Examples

- I **have to** get up early on school days.
- I **must** visit Ramy on Saturday as I have promised to visit him.

لاحظ

تفيد **must** الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقاً لهذه الضرورة وراضياً عنها.  
وتفيد **have to** ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار في فعلها أو لا.

- It **is necessary** for all students to study hard.
- All students **must/ have to/ have got to/ need to** study hard.
- It **was necessary** for him to visit Alex.
- He **had to** visit Alex.
- It **will be necessary** for the government to build more houses.
- The government **will have to build** more houses.

كان مضطراً لزيارة الإسكندرية لذلك زارها.

وللضرورة يمكن استخدام **It's a must/ necessity**

- It **is a must to visit** Alex.



## 2

## Lack of necessity

عدم الضرورة

تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة:

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.	didn't have to	It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.	won't have to	It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.
doesn't have to		didn't need to			
don't/ doesn't need to		لم يكن ضرورياً فعل شيء فلم نفعله			
needn't (بدون to)		needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضرورياً فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			



## Examples

- It **isn't necessary** for her to buy more dresses.
- She **doesn't have to/ needn't/ doesn't need to** buy more dresses.
- It **wasn't necessary** for me to travel abroad.
- I **didn't have to** travel abroad.
- I **needn't have travelled** abroad.

لم يكن واجباً فلم أفعل.

لم يكن واجباً ولكنى فعلت.

## 3

## Prohibition

المنع / الحظر / التحريم

تستخدم **mustn't/can't** للتعبير عن المنع أو الحظر ويمكن أيضاً استخدام أحد التعبيرات الآتية:You **mustn't (can't)** park here. = You **aren't allowed to** park here.



must/mustn't	
You <b>must come</b> and see us at the weekend.	(a warm invitation)
You <b>must wash</b> your hands before you eat.	(strong advice)
You <b>must buy</b> souvenirs for our friends here. We <b>mustn't forget</b> that tourism is important.	(a strong reminder to ourselves)

### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- You ..... pass your exams to go to university.  
a) can                      b) needn't                      c) may                      d) have to
- I really ..... phone Mazen. I promised I'd phone him as soon as I had any news.  
a) must                      b) have to                      c) need                      d) needn't
- Office staff ..... wear a suit, but they should look smart.  
a) mustn't                      b) shouldn't  
c) don't have to                      d) can't
- You ..... buy that book. You can borrow mine.  
a) mustn't                      b) needn't                      c) shouldn't                      d) can't
- Our school bus broke down, so the students ..... walk to school.  
a) must                      b) ought                      c) had to                      d) would
- Does he ..... wear a uniform at his school?  
a) had to                      b) has to                      c) must                      d) have to
- He ..... take an aspirin because he had a headache.  
a) needs to                      b) needn't                      c) needed                      d) needed to
- You ..... take your shoes off before going into the mosque.  
a) have to                      b) mustn't                      c) needn't                      d) has to
- I'll ..... buy a new suit for the wedding.  
a) have                      b) must                      c) need to                      d) needn't
- Dad ..... make his own dinner this week; Mum's not well.  
a) has to                      b) needs  
c) needn't                      d) had to



## 4 Ability

الاستطاعة

Present	Past	Future
can	could	will be able to
am/ is/ are able to	was/ were able to	

- Surgeons **can** (are able to) transplant hearts.
- We **could** beat the other team.

لاحظ

١ - الفرق بين **could/ could have**:



- I **could go** to school by bus, but I **could have gone** by train.

٢ - استخدام التعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن الاستطاعة:

**can/ be able to/ capable/ ability/ enable**

My friend	can/ could + inf.	speak English.
	is/ was able to + inf.	speak English.
	is/ was capable of + v+ing	speaking English.
	has/ had the ability to + inf.	speak English.
Money <b>enables</b> يُمكن us to buy what we need.		

٣ - تفيد **be able to** الاستطاعة بعد مجهود أما **can/could** فالتعبير عن الاستطاعة بشكل عام.

My rival was strong, but I **was able to** beat him.

The questions were difficult, but the students **were able to** answer them.

## 5 Probability/Possibility

الاحتمال

Present/ Future	Past
may/ might + inf.	may/ might have + P.P.

It's **probable that** Ali **will** visit us tomorrow.

Ali **may (might)** visit us tomorrow.



- Perhaps, they **won** the match.
- They **may (might) have won** the match.

تستخدم **might** للاحتمال في المضارع ولكنها أقل احتمالاً من **may**:

- My uncle **may** visit us tomorrow. (It is possible, but we aren't sure.)
- My uncle **might** visit us tomorrow. (There's a small chance.)

لاحظ استخدام **possible** للاحتمال إذا جاء بعدها **that** وفي هذه الحالة نستبدلها بـ **may**:

للاستطاعة + obj. + It's possible for	للاحتمال It's possible that + subj + verb
It's <b>possible for</b> her to speak Spanish well. She <b>can</b> speak Spanish well.	It is <b>possible that</b> it will rain tomorrow. It <b>may</b> rain tomorrow.

### Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My sister is only 6, but she ..... already play the piano.  
a) needn't      b) has to      c) must      d) can
- Do you see black clouds? It ..... rain this evening.  
a) needs      b) can      c) may      d) mustn't
- Nancy is late. She ..... her train.  
a) may have missed      b) may miss  
c) had to miss      d) should have missed
- The boy ..... walk again soon after he had had an operation.  
a) might      b) was able to      c) is able to      d) can
- If one person is careless with a library book, then it ..... be read by others.  
a) couldn't      b) may      c) mightn't      d) can't
- ..... you hold the door open for me while I carry the new TV in, please?  
a) Do      b) Must      c) May      d) Can
- Why ..... you come to the sports stadium with us this evening?  
a) can't      b) mustn't      c) haven't      d) aren't
- I ..... be slow, but at least I don't make stupid mistakes.  
a) can      b) must      c) may      d) have to
- By the time she was eight, she ..... Greek and Latin.  
a) can read      b) could read      c) was reading      d) will read
- My brother needs to ..... learn Spanish next year.  
a) be able to      b) can      c) could      d) is able to



## Modal verbs

Function	Time	Form	Example
<b>Advice</b> النصيحة	Present	must/should	You really <b>must change</b> the locks.
	Future	ought to/had better } + inf.	
<b>Regrets</b> الندم	Past	should have } + P.P.	You <b>shouldn't have driven</b> so fast.
	Past	ought to	
<b>Necessity</b> الضرورة	Past	had to } + inf.	They <b>had to move</b> to a bigger flat.
	Past	needed to	
	Present	must/ have to } + inf.	He <b>has to arrive</b> in time.
	Future	will have to } + inf.	
<b>Lack of necessity</b> عدم الضرورة	Future	will need to } + inf.	We <b>will have to arrive</b> at the airport at 7.
	Future	will need to	
	Past	did not have to } + inf.	You <b>didn't need to buy</b> more bread. There is enough for everyone.
	Past	did not need to } + inf.	
<b>Prohibition</b> التحريم	Past	need not have + P.P.	You <b>don't have to raise</b> your voice. I can hear you.
	Past	need not have + P.P.	
	Present	do not have to } + inf.	You <b>will not need to ask</b> for an exception if you arrive on time.
	Present	do not need to } + inf.	
<b>Ability</b> القدرة	Future	will not have to } + inf.	You <b>mustn't touch</b> this cable.
	Future	will not need to } + inf.	
	Past	could } + inf.	I <b>could ride</b> a bike when I was young.
	Past	was/were able to } + inf.	
<b>Possibility</b> الاحتمال	Present	can } + inf.	He <b>is able to drive</b> a car despite his disability.
	Present	am/ is/ are able to } + inf.	
	Future	will be able to + inf.	I <b>will be able to repair</b> the car when I finish my work.
	Future	will be able to + inf.	
	Past	might have } + inf.	She <b>could have arrived</b> twenty minutes ago.
	Past	could have } + inf.	
	Present	may } + inf.	There <b>may be</b> life on other planets.
	Present	might } + inf.	
	Present	could } + inf.	





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We ..... leave now or we'll be late.  
a) can                      b) will                      c) must                      d) needn't
- 2 I'll ..... go out soon. My father is waiting for me.  
a) should                      b) must                      c) ought to                      d) have to
- 3 You ..... get the 9:45 train. You could get the next one at 10:00; it's more proper.  
a) don't have to                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) must
- 4 I missed the bus this morning, so I ..... walk to school.  
a) have to                      b) ought                      c) had to                      d) must
- 5 We ..... see him tomorrow.  
a) would                      b) might                      c) had to                      d) ought
- 6 Hurry up! It is a quarter past 10. We really ..... be late.  
a) don't have to                      b) wouldn't rather                      c) needn't                      d) mustn't
- 7 He ..... take his medicine three times a day. The doctor told him so.  
a) has to                      b) need                      c) have to                      d) could
- 8 I ..... buy any food yesterday as there was no one at home.  
a) might                      b) must                      c) didn't have to                      d) have to
- 9 People who know a foreign language ..... learn a second one easily.  
a) should                      b) needn't                      c) mustn't                      d) can
- 10 I didn't want to go there but I .....  
a) might                      b) must                      c) had to                      d) can't
- 11 I didn't ..... phone my uncle because my sister did it herself.  
a) had to                      b) be to                      c) must                      d) have to
- 12 A: I live near my work.  
B: So you ..... go to the office on crowded buses.  
a) have to                      b) don't have to                      c) are able to                      d) can't
- 13 Does Hany ..... leave home at 7:30?  
a) have to                      b) has to                      c) must                      d) had to
- 14 Father is mending the car. After that, we ..... to go for a drive.  
a) can                      b) might                      c) will be able                      d) may
- 15 A: I ..... understand the rule; ..... I take the examination another time?  
B: Yes, of course.  
a) mustn't / must                      b) can't / may                      c) could / can                      d) may / can
- 16 A: ..... we do this work now?  
B: ..... You can do it tomorrow.  
a) May / Yes, you may                      b) Can / Yes, you can  
c) Could / Yes, you must                      d) Must / No, you needn't



- 17 It's a/an ..... for all of us to protect the country from any danger.  
a) necessary      b) has to      c) importance      d) must
- 18 You ..... get a visa before you go abroad next summer.  
a) mustn't      b) will have to      c) had to      d) needn't
- 19 That's a question nobody ..... answer.  
a) can      b) cannot      c) must not      d) were to
- 20 It was so warm that we ..... wear our coats. It was very pleasant.  
a) had to      b) couldn't      c) didn't have to      d) mustn't
- 21 We didn't go out last night. We ..... to the cinema, but we decided to stay at home.  
a) needn't go      b) must have gone  
c) should go      d) could have gone
- 22 You ..... find some of the most interesting people in this company; who knows?  
a) have to      b) may      c) should      d) ought to
- 23 You will have to pay a fine. You ..... so fast.  
a) shouldn't have driven      b) mustn't have driven  
c) must have driven      d) can't have driven
- 24 A: ..... I have another cup of coffee?  
B: No, you mustn't. You are suffering from high blood pressure.  
a) Need      b) Would      c) May      d) Must
- 25 Which sentence gives the meaning of the modal verb "must"?  
a) I might be wrong.      b) You can say something.  
c) He is to study hard.      d) He needs a dictionary.
- 26 The manager ..... the meeting because he was seriously ill. (Longman)  
a) had to postpone      b) shouldn't have postponed  
c) must postpone      d) needn't have postponed
- 27 You could do this task with your friend if you wish. This shows ..... (Longman)  
a) ability      b) suggestion      c) blame      d) refusal
- 28 She could hardly carry out the difficult task, .....? (Longman)  
a) could she      b) she could      c) couldn't she      d) she couldn't
- 29 I might stop working for this company. This means ..... (Longman)  
a) I am completely sure that this will happen  
b) there is a chance that this will happen  
c) I have made up my mind to stop working for this company  
d) I am completely sure that I will go on working for this company
- 30 It's probable that he won't come to the company today due to his illness; he ..... cancel the meeting. (Longman)  
a) must      b) might      c) should      d) had to





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 A good massage will relax your tired muscles. The synonym of the verb "relax" is ".....".  
a) damage      b) irritate      c) calm      d) press
- 2 A bomb ..... forced staff to evacuate the building for several hours.  
a) repair      b) alert      c) extinguisher      d) equipment
- 3 We replaced the old secretary with a new very ..... one who helped our company a lot.  
a) efficient      b) lazy      c) inactive      d) useless
- 4 Naguib Mahfouz's works have had a great ..... on many modern writers.  
a) reason      b) energy      c) influence      d) stress
- 5 The doctor gave the patient ..... instructions on how to care for the wound.  
a) unclear      b) specific      c) normal      d) public
- 6 Karl Luis and Usain Bolt, the great runners, are famous figures of the international .....  
a) politics      b) trade      c) soccer      d) athletics
- 7 Leila did not tell the boss the real ..... for her leaving the job.  
a) cause      b) search      c) reason      d) recipe
- 8 We need to make people ..... of the effects of their lifestyle on the environment.  
a) unconscious      b) aware      c) ignorant      d) denied
- 9 I am used to ..... together with my friends at the weekend.  
a) getting      b) taking      c) making      d) doing
- 10 The government ..... a gradual improvement in sales of electric cars, so they offer real advantages to them.  
a) accepts      b) expects      c) expels      d) respells
- 11 My uncle is very wealthy, so he never has to worry ..... money.  
a) for      b) in      c) about      d) with
- 12 The mobile clock ..... readjusts when you enter a new time zone.  
a) gradually      b) vainly      c) previously      d) automatically
- 13 Both the father and the mother ..... the responsibility for their children.  
a) share      b) deny      c) divide      d) repair



- 14 The first thing I ..... about the room was the colour of the wall paint.  
a) advised      b) noticed      c) signalled      d) commented
- 15 My pen friend asked me what ..... we have for New Year in our country.  
a) routines      b) roles      c) rights      d) customs

### Language

- 16 A horse ..... go twice as fast as an elephant.  
a) is used to      b) can      c) used to      d) is able
- 17 You ..... watch TV when you are studying.  
a) shouldn't      b) couldn't      c) aren't      d) didn't
- 18 Visitors ..... stay in the hospital after ten p.m.  
a) mustn't      b) might not      c) needn't      d) must
- 19 The skier broke his leg and ..... compete in the recent Olympic Games.  
a) had to      b) mustn't      c) couldn't      d) might
- 20 I feel sick and tired. So, I ..... go to school.  
a) could      b) didn't have to      c) am not able to      d) can
- 21 You ..... the job. Why didn't you try again?  
a) may take      b) can take      c) must take      d) could have taken
- 22 He ..... have replaced the tyre; it was still quite good.  
a) can      b) needn't      c) should      d) had to
- 23 You ..... a raincoat. You are wet through.  
a) should have worn      b) could wear      c) must have worn      d) may wear
- 24 As my sister was taking an examination, I ..... look after her baby yesterday.  
a) was able to      b) could      c) had to      d) must
- 25 "Adel ..... in the house now," thinks my mother.  
a) had to      b) might be      c) will be      d) be
- 26 My cousin ..... read and write when he was five.  
a) can      b) must      c) may      d) could
- 27 A: ..... I smoke here? B: No, you .....  
a) May / mustn't      b) Can / may      c) May / need      d) Can / needn't
- 28 Sorry, I ..... go with you. I ..... finish my work.  
a) mustn't / can      b) couldn't / have to      c) can't / must      d) may not / must
- 29 It's a/an ..... thing to eat healthy food.  
a) must      b) necessary      c) necessity      d) importance
- 30 I ..... buy a car until I had saved enough money.  
a) didn't have to      b) was able to      c) could      d) wasn't able to





## Writing Skill

## Writing tips

Write an email to a friend who seems to be suffering from burnout.

## An informal email

## Introduction

Possible signs of burnout you have noticed.

## Closing Paragraph

Some specific advice you could give your friend.

## Supporting Paragraph(s)

- Your own experiences of stress, exhaustion or burnout – real or imagined.
- What you know about the causes of burnout.
- Ideas for things that can help people with stress, exhaustion or burnout.

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Model informal email

To : kenzy@mail.com  
From : nourhan@mail.com  
Hi Kenzy,

I would like to write because I've noticed that you are different these days. You don't like to take part in any school trip and you say that you are always tired and exhausted to go to your karate training sessions. You also always refuse to go with us anywhere for the weekend. Our teachers say that you usually neglect your homework and leave your books at home.

I can understand this because I had nearly the same problems last year. My mother was very ill. So, I had to go to school, do the housework at home and look after my mother. I didn't have time to do any kinds of activities. I missed my training tennis lessons and didn't have time to get together with my friends. I then felt the same as you. I read about this case and found that experts say that workload and stress are the main causes of burnout and frustration.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you take the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together to talk about this.

Bye for now,  
Nourhan

## قناة العباقرة ٣ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe

Part (2) Lessons 3 & 4 215







1 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Kareem was at home reading when he heard a frantic knock on his door. He looked through the **peephole**<sup>(1)</sup> and saw that it was his neighbour, Mrs Farid. **Puzzled**<sup>(2)</sup>, he opened the door. "Sorry to disturb you, Kareem. Can you help me? My husband has fallen down and he's too heavy for me to **lift**<sup>(3)</sup> him up," Mrs Farid pleaded. Without **hesitation**<sup>(4)</sup>, Kareem went over. When he went into Mrs Farid's house, he was shocked to see Mr Farid lying face down on his bedroom floor, **motionless**<sup>(5)</sup>. He did not dare to move Mr Farid for fear that he might have any **internal**<sup>(6)</sup> injury. He called for an ambulance. Within ten minutes, they heard the ambulance siren. Kareem ran downstairs to meet the **paramedics**<sup>(7)</sup>. They **gingerly**<sup>(8)</sup> lifted Mr Farid onto a **stretcher**<sup>(9)</sup> and carried him into the ambulance. Kareem accompanied them to the hospital. The first thing that the doctor at the hospital did was to send Mr Farid for an X-ray. **This** was to ensure that there was no blood clot in the brain. Unfortunately, indeed there was. Mr Farid was immediately sent for emergency surgery. Finally, after three hours, the doctor emerged and reported that the clot was removed and Mr Farid was in **stable condition**<sup>(10)</sup>. Kareem and Mrs Farid heaved great sighs of relief. It was another hour later that they were allowed to see Mr Farid. By then, Mr Farid was **conscious**<sup>(11)</sup> but still groggy from the surgery. In fact, for the rest of Mr Farid's one-week hospital stay, Kareem tried to be with Mrs Farid whenever he could. The couple was very grateful to Kareem for the help he **rendered**<sup>(12)</sup>.

- 1 The best title for the passage is ".....".
  - a) Mr Farid's injury and Kareem's noble character
  - b) Mrs Farid's worry about her husband
  - c) A week in the hospital
  - d) The paramedics' bravery
- 2 According to paragraph one, why did Kareem open the door?
  - a) He was feeling frantic.
  - b) He wanted to see who it was.
  - c) He wanted to take a break from his reading.
  - d) He was unsure why Mrs Farid was looking for him.



(11) واع  
(12) قدمها

(9) نقالة  
(10) حالة مستقرة

(7) مسعفون  
(8) بحذر شديد

(5) بلا حركة  
(6) داخلي

(3) يرفع  
(4) تردد

(1) العين السحرية  
(2) متحير



- 3 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?
- Mr Farid lay very still.
  - Kareem was too shocked to move Mr Farid.
  - Mr Farid had fallen down in his bedroom.
  - Kareem was afraid that Mr Farid might have injured himself internally.
- 4 When the paramedics arrived, they .....
- ran to meet Kareem
  - did some stretching
  - carried Mr Farid into the ambulance
  - required an explanation
- 5 The paramedics were very ..... when they carried Mr Farid.
- bold
  - cautious
  - strong
  - careless
- 6 What does "This" in paragraph five refer to?
- Sending Mr Farid for an X-ray.
  - The blood clot in Mr Farid's brain.
  - Waiting for Mr Farid to have his surgery.
  - Sending Mr Farid for emergency surgery.
- 7 Which of the following best explains why the couple was grateful to Kareem?
- He had offered to call the ambulance.
  - He did not blame Mrs Farid for interrupting his reading.
  - He did his best to help the couple in whatever way he could.
  - He was clever enough not to have moved Mr Farid when he was unconscious.
- 8 The antonym of the word "groggy" is .....
- sleepy
  - unsteady
  - dizzy
  - alert

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
- "I don't know when he will arrive," said Ola.
  - "I don't know when he will arrive?" Said ola.
  - "I don't know when he will arrive.", said Ola.
  - "I don't know when he will arrive," Said Ola.
- 2 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
- If you visit Cairo; come and see me.
  - If you visit Cairo, come and see me.
  - If you visit Cairo: come and see me.
  - If you visit cairo, come and see me.
- 3 A message from one company to another company is a kind of .....
- a formal email
  - an informal email
  - an expository essay
  - a persuasive essay
- 4 In a/an ..... paragraph, the author is writing about what a person, place or thing is like.
- descriptive
  - persuasive
  - expository
  - narrative



5 The most important thing in writing an essay is to .....

- a) count the words written in it
- b) get the required number of paragraphs
- c) write a well-developed essay and make it interesting
- d) write very long sentences and paragraphs

6 Which type of essay would this topic sentence best go with? "The Himalayan Mountains are the tallest mountains in the world."

- a) Descriptive.
- b) Expository.
- c) Narrative.
- d) Persuasive.

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 People experiencing burnout often feel like they have nothing left to give and may dread getting out of bed each morning. They may also adopt a pessimistic outlook towards life and feel hopeless.

- (a) غالبًا ما يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يخشون النهوض من السرير كل صباح، كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متشائمة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون باليأس.
- (b) غالبًا لا يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من التوتر أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يندفعون للنهوض من السرير كل صباح، كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متشائمة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون باليأس.
- (c) غالبًا ما يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يخشون الذهاب للسرير كل مساء، كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متشائمة تجاه الحياة ويشعرون باليأس.
- (d) غالبًا ما يشعر الأشخاص الذين يعانون من الإرهاق أنه لم يتبق لديهم أي شيء يعطونه وقد يخشون النهوض من السرير كل صباح، كما أنهم قد يتبنون نظرة متشائمة تجاه الحياة ولا يشعرون بالأمل.

2 A study plan is an organised schedule outlining study times and learning goals. This schedule should include dates of exams, as well as deadlines for documents and projects.

- (a) خطة الدراسة هي جدول منظم يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التربية ويجب أن يتضمن هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد النهائية للمستندات والمشاريع.
- (b) خطة الدراسة هي جدول منظم يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التعلم ويجب أن يتضمن هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد النهائية للمستندات والمشاريع.
- (c) خطة الدراسة هي جدول معتاد يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التعلم ويجب أن يورط هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد النهائية للمستندات والمشاريع.
- (d) خطة الدراسة هي جدول متدرج يحدد أوقات الدراسة وأهداف التربية ويجب أن يتضمن هذا الجدول مواعيد الاختبارات، وكذلك المواعيد المبدئية للمستندات والمشاريع.



3 Mental health means feeling good about who you are, having balance in your life and in your thinking, and responding constructively to life's highs and lows.

- (a) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن هويتك، وتحقيق التوازن في حياتك وفي تفكيرك، والاستجابة البناءة لحالات النجاح والإحباط في الحياة.
- (b) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن إنجازك، وتحقيق التوازن في حياتك وفي تفكيرك، والاستجابة البناءة لحالات النجاح والإحباط في الحياة.
- (c) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن هويتك، وتحقيق الموازنة في حياتك وفي تفكيرك، والاستجابة السلبية لحالات النجاح والإحباط في الحياة.
- (d) تعنى الصحة العقلية الشعور بالرضا عن هويتك، وتحقيق الموازنة في حياتك وفي تفكيرك، والاستجابة البناءة للظروف المتغيرة في الحياة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

- 4 إن المراهقة فترة حاسمة من أجل تطوير عادات اجتماعية وعاطفية مهمة بالنسبة إلى السلامة النفسية. ويشمل ذلك اتباع أنماط نوم صحية، وممارسة الرياضة بانتظام، وتطوير مهارات التأقلم وحل المشاكل ومهارات التواصل مع الآخرين.
- a) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to psychological well-being. This consists of adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising regularly, and developing coping, problem-solving and personal skills.
- b) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to physical well-being. This includes adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising regularly, and developing coping, problem-solving and private skills.
- c) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to affection well-being. This includes adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising gradually, and developing coping, problem-solving and interpersonal skills.
- d) Adolescence is a critical period for developing social and emotional habits that are important to psychological well-being. This includes adopting healthy sleep patterns, exercising regularly, and developing coping, problem-solving and interpersonal skills.
- 5 بعدما خسر اللاعب المباراة، أدرك أنه كان ينبغي عليه أن يتدرب بشكل أفضل وأن ينفذ تعليمات مدربه.
- a) After the player lost the match, he realised that he should train better and carry out his coach's instructions.
- b) After the player lost the match, he realised that he must have prepared better and carry out his coach's instructions.
- c) After the player lost the match, he realised that he must have trained better and carried out his coach's directions.
- d) After the player lost the match, he realised that he should have trained better and carried out his coach's instructions.



6 أعتقد أنه لم يكن لزاماً عليك أن تشتري كل هذه الملابس الجديدة، فلديك بالفعل العديد من قطع الملابس التي نادراً ما ترتديها.

- a) I think you didn't have to buy all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you didn't rarely wear.
- b) I think you don't have to buy all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you don't rarely wear.
- c) I guess you needn't have bought all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you rarely wear.
- d) I guess you mustn't have bought all these new clothes. You already have many pieces of clothes that you rarely wore.

4 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

Should teachers and professors ban students to use mobile phones in class?



متنساش نتابعنا ♥

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 After his long day at work, Omar looks too ..... to do any further work.  
a) retreated      b) relaxed      c) pleased      d) exhausted
- 2 Experts and doctors say that physical and emotional ..... are closely linked.  
a) sorrow      b) exercise      c) well-being      d) fight
- 3 Students have a/an ..... between German, French, Spanish or Italian in secondary schools.  
a) choice      b) distraction      c) obligation      d) fiction
- 4 We were each given a specific topic to talk about. The antonym of the adjective "specific" is .....  
a) particular      b) private      c) common      d) special
- 5 Passengers were asked to ..... their own suitcases before they were put on the plane.  
a) deny      b) damage      c) identify      d) clarify
- 6 The operation enabled the wounded soldier to lead a/an ..... life.  
a) extinction      b) abnormal      c) strange      d) normal
- 7 It is advisable to ..... time for family and friends however busy you are.  
a) do      b) make      c) give      d) devise
- 8 My father is very angry with my elder brother as he was ..... to be home an hour ago.  
a) advertised      b) supposed  
c) altered      d) perplexed
- 9 He recommended ..... studying a foreign language if I wanted a better job.  
a) I starting      b) should I start      c) that I start      d) to start
- 10 ..... to the film theatre, then try an Italian restaurant.  
a) I suggested going      b) What about going  
c) How about going      d) Let's go
- 11 Shall we invite Yasser to the party? The speaker is making a/an .....  
a) offer      b) suggestion  
c) request      d) apology
- 12 It's getting late. I suggest we ..... a taxi.  
a) take      b) taking      c) to take      d) could take



13 Ola isn't happy. I ..... at her.

a) should have laughed

b) shouldn't have laughed

c) should laugh

d) ought to laugh

14 Which of these is not a medium for an email?

a) Intranet.

b) Internet.

c) Extranet.

d) Paper.

► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There are many **alternative**<sup>(1)</sup> energy sources: wind power, **solar**<sup>(2)</sup> power, **geothermal**<sup>(3)</sup> power, and **hydroelectric**<sup>(4)</sup> power are some examples.

Wind power is the ability to **capture**<sup>(5)</sup> the wind in a way to **propel** the blades of wind turbines. When the blades **rotate**<sup>(6)</sup>, this movement is switched into an electrical current with the help of an electrical generator. Wind towers are built on wind farms, and usually, there are several towers built together. There are several advantages of this energy source: there is no pollution, it never runs out, farming and **grazing**<sup>(7)</sup> can still take place on the same land as the wind turbines, and wind farms can be built anywhere. One disadvantage is that you need a **consistent**<sup>(8)</sup> wind to get enough power. If the wind speed decreases, less electricity is produced. Large wind farms can also have a negative visual effect on people who live **nearby**.

Solar energy is used for heating, cooking, making electricity, and even taking salt out of saltwater so the water can be drinkable and used for additional purposes that do not need salt. Solar power uses sunlight that hits the solar **thermal panels**<sup>(9)</sup> to **convert**<sup>(10)</sup> the sunlight to heat either air or water.

Other methods of using solar power include simply opening up blinds or shades and letting the sunlight pass into the room or using some type of mirror to heat water and produce steam. One advantage of solar power is that it is renewable. As long as there is sunlight, you will be able to harness the power from it. There is also no pollution and it can be used efficiently to heat and light things. You can see the benefits of solar energy in heating swimming pools, **spas**<sup>(11)</sup>, and water tanks in many cities across the country.



(11) عيون مائية

(9) ألواح حرارية

(10) يحول

(7) رعي

(8) مناسب

(5) يستحوذ على

(6) تدور

(3) حراري أرضي

(4) كهرومائي

(1) بديل

(2) شمسي



► 15 Why is wind power considered a renewable source of energy?

- a) Because it reduces electricity.
- b) Because the towers are built on wind farms.
- c) Because it never runs out.
- d) Because wind farms can be built anywhere.

16 When is less electricity produced?

- a) When the wind speed decreases.
- b) When the wind speed increases.
- c) When solar power is produced.
- d) When solar power increases.

17 What is solar energy used for?

- a) Cooking and taking salt out of saltwater.
- b) Heating.
- c) Making electricity.
- d) All of these.

18 On what condition is solar power renewable?

- a) As long as there is sunlight.
- b) As long as there is air.
- c) As long as there are solar panels.
- d) As long as there is petrol.

19 One of the following isn't an advantage of wind power.

- a) It lasts forever.
- b) It doesn't pollute the environment.
- c) It needs constant wind to get enough power.
- d) Wind farms can be built anywhere.

20 The underlined word "propel" means .....

- a) drive
- b) prepare
- c) push
- d) switch

21 What is the best title for the passage?

- a) Wind and solar power as renewable energy.
- b) How can we use the wind power.
- c) Wind power as a cheap source of energy.
- d) Why many people use the solar power.

22 The antonym of the word "nearby" is .....

- a) close
- b) neighbouring
- c) immediate
- d) distant

قناة العباقرة ٣ ث  
علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe





► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Henry attended a friend's birthday party today. It was an **army-themed**<sup>(1)</sup> party. The moment he arrived, he had to give a **salute**<sup>(2)</sup> at the door entrance. He was asked to report his name and the purpose of the visit.

"What is your name, soldier?"

"Henry, sir!"

"And why are you here?"

"To attend Matthew's birthday party, sir!" Once the **'commander'**<sup>(3)</sup> was **satisfied**<sup>(4)</sup> with Henry's answer, he was allowed to enter.

The first activity was a **camouflage competition**<sup>(5)</sup>. There were tubes of camouflage face paint available. Everyone had to apply it on the face like a real soldier. Henry had never done anything like this before so it took him a rather long time to get the hang of it. He realised that putting on different shades of green and black was much more effective. Once everyone was ready, their camouflage had to be tested. A camouflage **netting**<sup>(6)</sup> was placed in front of each person and the person who was the most well-hidden behind the netting was the winner. Surprisingly, Henry won the second prize.

Once the competition was over, there was a short break for lunch. After that, the children were provided with toy guns and army-print sunglasses. They formed two teams and played army war games. The two groups had a 'war' and fought to see who would emerge **victorious**<sup>(7)</sup>. **It** was **chaotic**<sup>(8)</sup> as the children were running everywhere and shooting and shouting. It sounded like a real war.

The last thing before the party ended was the cake cutting. Matthew had a mango sponge cake. The children sang the birthday song and Matthew blew out the birthday candles. That day, Henry had **tremendous**<sup>(9)</sup> fun. He really enjoyed the camouflage competition. He had fun **applying the gooey cream**<sup>(10)</sup> on his face and looking like a real soldier.

23 The best title to the passage is ".....".

- a) Camouflage is a good activity
- b) Henry's prize was a surprise
- c) An enjoyable army-themed party
- d) The children's war at the party



(9) هائل  
(10) وضع كريم لزج

(7) منتصر  
(8) فوضوى

(5) مسابقة تخف  
(6) شباك

(3) قائد  
(4) راض عن

(1) ذو طابع عسكري  
(2) تحية



- 24 According to the passage, which of the following is not true?
- a) Henry had to salute before he could enter the party.
  - b) Henry had to shout his name before he could enter the party.
  - c) Henry had to put on camouflage before he could enter the party.
  - d) Henry had to report his purpose of visit before he could enter the party.
- 25 Why did Henry take a long time to apply the camouflage paint to his face?
- a) He wanted to look like a real soldier.
  - b) There were many tubes of camouflage paint.
  - c) He had never done it before.
  - d) He wanted to find the most effective way of doing it.
- 26 The winner of the camouflage competition ..... .
- a) looked like a real soldier
  - b) used only tubes of black and green paint
  - c) covered his face with a camouflage netting
  - d) concealed himself the best behind the camouflage netting
- 27 What does "It" refer to?
- a) The war game.
  - b) The two teams.
  - c) The children at the party.
  - d) The shouting of the children.
- 28 Henry had tremendous fun at the party because ..... .
- a) he liked dressing up as a soldier
  - b) he liked the mango sponge cake
  - c) he liked singing the birthday song
  - d) he liked behaving like a soldier in the game
- 29 The synonym of the word "**gooey**" is ..... .
- a) faint
  - b) bright
  - c) bad
  - d) sticky
- 30 The party was really ..... .
- a) in an army camp
  - b) in Matthew's house
  - c) in the nearby school
  - d) in Henry's neighbour's house



► **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

**31** Many people deal with stress every day. Work, family issues, health concerns, and financial obligations are parts of everyday life that commonly contribute to heightened stress levels.

- (a) كثير من الناس يتعاملون مع الحيرة كل يوم. فالعمل، وقضايا الأسرة، والمخاوف الصحية، والحقوق المالية هي أجزاء من الحياة اليومية تساهم بشكل عام في ارتفاع مستويات التوتر.
- (b) كثير من الناس يتعاملون مع التوتر كل يوم. فالعمل، وقضايا الأسرة، والمخاوف الصحية، والحقوق المالية هي أجزاء من الحياة اليومية تساهم بشكل عام في خفض مستويات التوتر.
- (c) يتعامل كثير من الناس مع التوتر كل يوم. فالعمل، وقضايا الأسرة، والمخاوف الصحية، والالتزامات المالية هي أجزاء من الحياة اليومية تساهم بشكل عام في ارتفاع مستويات التوتر.
- (d) كثير من الناس يتعاملون مع التوتر كل يوم. فالعمل، وقضايا المرأة، والمخاوف الصحية، والالتزامات المالية هي أجزاء من الحياة اليومية لا تساهم بشكل عام في ارتفاع مستويات التوتر.

**32** Sports should be a major part of the school curriculum. Sport is important because it helps to teach various skills to students like leadership, patience, teamwork, and social skills.

- (a) كان يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًا من المناهج الدراسية؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر وجهد الفريق والمهارات الاجتماعية.
- (b) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًا من المناهج الدراسية؛ فالرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.
- (c) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا فرعيًا من المناهج الدراسية؛ فالرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والمثابرة والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.
- (d) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءًا رئيسيًا من المناهج الدراسية؛ فالرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مواهب مختلفة للطلاب مثل التقيد والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

**33** شهدت مصر طفرة كبيرة في المشروعات القومية، فعلى مدى السنوات القليلة الماضية دشنت الحكومة المصرية العديد من المشروعات التي تساهم في رفع مستوى الاقتصاد وزيادة الدخل القومي المصري عبر جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية.

- a) Egypt has witnessed a great leap in national projects. Over the past few years, the Egyptian government has launched many projects that contribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting foreign investments.
- b) Egypt has witnessed a great leap in national projects. Over the past many years, the Egyptian government has launched many projects that attribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting foreign investments.
- c) Egypt has witnessed a great leap in national projects. Over the past few years, the Egyptian government has rebuilt many projects that contribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting strange investments.
- d) Egypt has witnessed a great pull in national projects. Over the past few years, the Egyptian government has launched many projects that contribute to raising the level of the economy and increasing the Egyptian national income by attracting strange investments.



34 تسعى مبادرة مصر الرقمية إلى تمكين الجيل القادم من الشباب المصري خريجي كليات الهندسة والحاسبات والمعلومات ليصبحوا قادة على مستوى عالمي قادرين على تنفيذ الرؤية الرقمية لمصر.

- a) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to retrain the next generation of young Egyptian graduates from the colleges of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders capable of implementing the digital sight for Egypt.
- b) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to empower the next generation of young Egyptian undergraduates from the colleges of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders capable of implementing the digital sight for Egypt.
- c) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to empower the next generation of young Egyptian graduates from the colleges of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders full of implementing the digital vision for Egypt.
- d) The Digital Egypt initiative seeks to empower the next generation of young Egyptian graduates from the faculties of engineering, computers and information to become world-class leaders capable of implementing the digital vision for Egypt.

**Answer the following questions: (Great Expectations)**

35 Why do you think Miss Havisham asked Pip if he missed Estella when he went to thank her for his apprenticeship?

.....

.....

36 'I don't want all the poor people in this village to see me in my fine clothes.' Was Pip right to say this? Why? Why not?

.....

.....

37 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

"The social safety net of the government and its benefits to people."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 403



Assess your  
progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!





# The future of work

## Unit 5

## Objectives

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى  
الوحدة الرسمى

- Reading** : Text messages between a student and an IT Support worker
- Writing** : A letter of application for a job; An email asking for clarification about study tips
- Listening** : A podcast about the future of work
- Speaking** : A discussion about new ways of studying
- Language** : Verb patterns with the gerund and infinitive; Phrasal verbs
- Life Skills** : Problem solving

**قناة العباقرة ٣**

**علي تطبيق Telegram**

**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**







## A

## Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

catch up (v)	يلحق بـ/يجارى
install (v) (ed)	يركب/يثبت
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
leave (v)	يغادر/يتترك
look into (v) (ed)	يفحص/يحقق/يبحث

mute (v) (d) (adj) *	يكتم صوتاً/مكتوم الصوت
share (v) (d)	يشارك
switch on/off (v) (ed)	يشغل/يطفئ جهازاً
turn up (v) (ed)	يرفع مستوى الصوت
turn down (v) (ed)	يخفض مستوى الصوت

In online meetings, it is often best to **mute** your microphone when you are not speaking. ★



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بلمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

advent (n)	ظهور/وجود
analyse (v) (d)	يحلل
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدرّش/درّشة
check-out (n)	الدفع
communicate (v) (d)	يتواصل
create (v) (d)	ينتج/يبدع
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد
document (n)	مستند/وثيقة
efficient (adj)	كفاء
emerge (v) (d)	يظهر/ينشأ
employee (n)	موظف

environment (n)	بيئة
fade out (v) (d)	يخفت
independently (adv)	بشكل مستقل
instant (adj)	عاجل/فوري
internet connection (n)	اتصال بالإنترنت
interviewee (n)	المحاور (من يجري معه الحوار)
IT (Information Technology) (n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
meeting (n)	اجتماع/مقابلة
messaging (n)	مراسلة/تبادل الرسائل
microphone (n)	ميكروفون
motivated (adj)	متحفز



personal (adj)	شخصي	screen (n)	شاشة
predictable (adj)	متوقع / قابل للتنبؤ	software (n)	برمجيات / برامج تشغيل
prediction (n)	تنبؤ	sound (n)	صوت
project (n)	مشروع	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم / يدعم
range (n)	نطاق / مجال	technical (adj)	فني
realise (v) (d)	يدرك	trend (n)	موجة / اتجاه
reliable (adj)	موثوق به	user-friendly (adj)	سهل الاستخدام
repetitive (adj)	تكراري / متكرر	virtual (adj)	افتراضي
respond (v) (ed)	يرد / يستجيب	workplace (n)	مكان العمل

### Workbook Vocabulary

application (n)	طلب التحاق / تطبيق إلكتروني	plug (v) (ged) (n)	يقوم بتوصيل جهاز / قابس كهربائي
apply (v) (yied)	يتقدم بطلب	position (n)	وظيفة / موضع
available (adj)	متاح / متوافر	race (n)	سباق
consequence (n)	نتيجة	role (n)	دور
decline (n) (v) (d)	هبوط / انخفاض / يهبط / يقل	stressful (adj)	مجهّد
download (v) (ed)	يحمل من الإنترنت	suited (adj)	مناسب / ملائم
headphones (n)	سماعات الرأس	tool (n)	أداة
human contact (n)	اتصال بشري	type (n)	نوع
interpersonal (adj)	خاص بالتعامل مع الآخرين	version (n)	نسخة / إصدار
level (n)	مستوى	video conference (n)	مؤتمر عبر الفيديو
online (adj) (adv)	عبر الإنترنت	welfare (n)	رعاية / رفاهية



## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Most software updates can be ..... from their company's website.  
a) downloaded    b) created    c) innovated    d) reloaded
- 2 Emergency service should ..... to emergencies in a short time to prevent disasters.  
a) attack    b) respond    c) retake    d) repay
- 3 Most online shopping companies have their own ..... banking services.  
a) in line    b) airline    c) online    d) offline
- 4 One of the advantages of a laptop is having a wireless internet ..... that enables you to connect to the internet everywhere.  
a) contact    b) attachment    c) communications    d) connection
- 5 To protect your devices against hacking, you should ..... a firewall programme.  
a) repair    b) install    c) detect    d) design
- 6 Voice-recognition ..... takes your speech, understands it and performs the commands.  
a) hardware    b) software    c) machinery    d) training
- 7 If an athlete makes a false start, the ..... must be restarted in order to make it fair.  
a) game    b) competition    c) race    d) league
- 8 During the war, my grandfather left university to ..... the army and serve his country.  
a) enroll    b) attach    c) connect    d) join
- 9 A group of police officers are ..... into the disappearance of two children in the poor district.  
a) looking    b) putting    c) informing    d) realising
- 10 The engineers said that there are still a few ..... problems to be dealt with before starting the new gold mine.  
a) general    b) exceptional    c) electrical    d) technical



## Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

by accident	بالصدفة	have control over	يملك السيطرة على
do jobs	يقوم بالأعمال	stay in touch	يبقى على اتصال
have a meeting with	لديه اجتماع مع	take control of	يتحكم في
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	hear from	يتلقى خبراً من
consequences to	نتائج لـ	suited to/for	مناسب/ملائم لـ
decline in	انخفاض/هبوط في	type of	نوع من

## Verbs & Nouns Special Collocations

catch up with your work	تلحق بعملك	mute your microphone	يكتم صوت الميكروفون
install software	يثبت برمجيات	share your screen	تشارك شاشتك مع
join a virtual meeting	ينضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي	switch your camera on/off	تشغل/تطفئ كاميرتك
leave a virtual meeting	يغادر اجتماعاً افتراضياً	turn the sound up/down	يرفع/يخفض صوت
look into possibilities	يستطلع الاحتمالات		

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	تواصلي
create	ينتج/يبدع	creation creator	إنتاج/إبداع مبدع	creative	مبدع/إبداعي
decline	ينخفض/يهبط	decline	انخفاض/تراجع	declining	منخفض/متراجع
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب عمل	employed employable	موظف مؤهل للتوظيف



install	يركب/يُثبت	installation	تركيب/تثبيت	installed	مُثبت
predict	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
realise	يدرك/يحقق	realisation	إدراك/تحقيق	realisable	يمكن إدراكه/تحقيقه
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	رد/استجابة	responsive	استجابي
suit	يناسب/يلئم	suitability	مناسبة/ملائمة	suited suitable	مناسب/ملائم مناسب/ملائم

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
decline	ينخفض/يهبط	decrease/drop	increase/develop يزيد/يتطور
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly/absolutely	doubtfully/indefinitely بارتياح
install	يُثبت	set up	remove/uninstall يزيل/يلغى تثبيت
instant	فوري	immediate/present	delayed/late مؤجل
join	ينضم إلى	enter/incorporate	leave/avoid يترك/يتجنب
realise	يدرك	comprehend/recognise	misunderstand يسئ الفهم
respond	يستجيب/يرد	react/behave	neglect/depart يهمل/يغادر
stressful	مجهّد	annoying/nerve-racking	relaxing/pleasant مريح
suited	مناسب	appropriate/suitable	improper/unsuitable غير مناسب
welfare	رفاهية	prosperity/well-being	misery/depression بؤس/اكتئاب

## قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Profits have declined as a result of the recent drop in sales. The synonym of the verb "decline" is ".....".  
 a) decrease      b) increase      c) develop      d) deny
- 2 I found the old letter ..... accident as I was looking through my files.  
 a) for      b) on      c) in      d) by
- 3 A head teacher should ..... in touch with students and teachers' everyday concerns.  
 a) reply      b) live      c) stay      d) design
- 4 Moving to a new house is a very stressful experience. The antonym of the adjective "stressful" is ".....".  
 a) annoying      b) relaxing      c) nerve-racking      d) devastating
- 5 It is easy to ..... your screen with other members when you have a virtual meeting.  
 a) share      b) divide      c) discover      d) develop
- 6 With her qualifications and experience, she would seem to be ideally suited ..... the job.  
 a) off      b) at      c) to      d) out
- 7 I felt so unfit after the long vacation that I decided to join a gym. The verb "join" is the opposite of ".....".  
 a) enter      b) admit      c) rely      d) leave
- 8 When you ..... computer software, you put it onto your computer so that it can be used.  
 a) update      b) install      c) phish      d) scan
- 9 The date of the conference has not been definitely decided yet. The adverb "definitely" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
 a) doubtfully      b) uselessly      c) certainly      d) excitedly
- 10 We are happy that the new teacher ..... control over the children in class.  
 a) follows      b) brings      c) takes      d) gives



**install**

١. يركب جهازًا ويعدّه للتشغيل  
٢. يثبت برنامجًا في جهاز كمبيوتر أو  
تليفون محمول

- Security cameras have been **installed** in the city centre.  
- We've **installed** new anti-virus software.

**fix**

١. يثبت شيئًا في شيء آخر ليبقى مدة طويلة  
٢. يصلح

- The shelves should be **fixed** to the wall by a carpenter.  
- He's outside **fixing** the brakes of the car.

**interview**

- مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة) مقابلة (إذاعية)  
تليفزيونية/صحفية

- I've got an **interview** for a job as an interpreter.

**appointment**

- موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص في وقت معين)

- I have an **appointment** to see my lawyer next Saturday.

**conference**

مؤتمر

- The President arrived for a **conference** with local officials.

**meeting**

مقابلة/اجتماع

- They organised **meetings** on a number of important political issues.

**communicate (with)**

يتواصل/يتفاهم

- Most companies **communicate with** each other using English.

**contact**

يتصل بـ

- You can always **contact** me on my home number.

**connect**

يصل/يربط بين شيئين

- Cairo metro **connects** many parts of Cairo together.

**download**

يحمل (ينزل معلومات من الإنترنت)

- You can **download** this software for free.

**upload**

يرفع الملفات إلى الإنترنت

- It might take a while for this to **upload**.

**load**

يشحن/يحمل شحنة

- It took an hour to **load** the van.

**unload**

يفرغ الحمولة

- The driver **unloaded** some boxes from the back of the truck.



## position

تستخدم (position) بأكثر من معنى في اللغة الإنجليزية منها:

- ▶ Because of my broken leg, I struggled up into a sitting **position**. وضع
- ▶ I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your **position**. = **situation** موقف
- ▶ Our hotel was in a central **position** near Tahrir Square. = **location** موقع
- ▶ Our headmaster took the **position** that music classes are unimportant. = **attitude** موقف/رأي
- ▶ Bill took up his new **position** as Director in October. = **job/post** وظيفة
- ▶ The **position** of women in society should be promoted. = **importance/role** مكانة
- ▶ Samia finished the race in third **position** and won a medal. = **rank** مركز

## Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- ▶ 1 Egypt hosted the UN climate ..... known as COP 27 in Sharm El-Sheikh last November.  
a) interview      b) appointment      c) seminar      d) conference
- 2 Whether or not you're given a car depends on your position in the company. The word "position" in this sentence is similar to .....  
a) place      b) post      c) opinion      d) location
- 3 Images and songs are available for ..... freely on the internet.  
a) loading      b) uploading      c) downloading      d) unloading
- 4 If you ever need anything, please don't hesitate to ..... us online or by phone.  
a) connect      b) contact      c) attach      d) communicate
- 5 Many websites allow visitors to ..... videos and pictures from their computers.  
a) load      b) upload      c) download      d) unload
- 6 People use more than words when they ..... with each other.  
a) connect      b) contact      c) attach      d) communicate
- 7 One out of every ten candidates reached the formal ..... for the job of an accountant.  
a) interview      b) appointment      c) seminar      d) conference
- 8 The official position was that of refusing to negotiate with criminals. The word "position" in this sentence is similar to .....  
a) place      b) post      c) opinion      d) location





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The technician is coming tomorrow to ..... the new camera system in the bank.  
a) support      b) join      c) install      d) attach
- 2 My mother always blames me for wasting a lot of time ..... with my friends every day.  
a) struggling      b) chatting      c) collaborating      d) deriving
- 3 Many important historical ..... were destroyed when the library was on fire.  
a) documents      b) receipts      c) recipes      d) subscriptions
- 4 Experts and doctors warn us that a dirty ..... is a breeding ground أرض خصبة for germs.  
a) trend      b) position      c) department      d) environment
- 5 The new leader said that our group ..... would take place on Saturdays.  
a) interviews      b) contacts      c) meetings      d) views
- 6 A good director is the one who appreciates his/her ..... efforts and always encourages them.  
a) employees'      b) employers'      c) consumers'      d) buyers'
- 7 The rich businessman has his own ..... bodyguard who always appears beside him.  
a) personnel      b) personal      c) social      d) economical
- 8 My wife suggested that we could ..... for a loan from the bank to buy a car.  
a) comply      b) employ      c) deploy      d) apply
- 9 The economic depression was a ..... time for all of the people in the country.  
a) distracted      b) stressful      c) stressed      d) repetitive
- 10 The kidney plays a vital ..... in the removal of waste products from the blood.  
a) role      b) rule      c) roller      d) rail
- 11 The museum website allows you to take a/an ..... tour of its various sections.  
a) infinite      b) walking      c) economical      d) virtual
- 12 Access to some business websites is only ..... to registered users.  
a) available      b) spare      c) empty      d) free
- 13 The office received over 100 ..... for the job of an accountant.  
a) employees      b) applications      c) contacts      d) reflections
- 14 If the director didn't have a secretary to remind him, he wouldn't keep many of his ..... with clients.  
a) interviews      b) seminars      c) appointments      d) disputes
- 15 There is no ..... solution to the problem of rising pollution. It requires much time and efforts.  
a) playful      b) crippled      c) delayed      d) instant



- 16 Don't forget to ..... off all the lights before you go to bed.  
a) switch                      b) change                      c) alter                      d) accept
- 17 The situation is so uncertain that it is hard to make a confident .....  
a) predict                      b) prediction                      c) predicted                      d) predictable
- 18 More than fifty people responded to the job advertisement. The verb "respond" is the opposite of the verb ".....".  
a) reply                      b) remove                      c) delay                      d) neglect
- 19 The young lady touched the wet paint ..... accident and spoiled her new dress.  
a) in                      b) of                      c) by                      d) with
- 20 I ..... in touch with many of my friends after college.  
a) stayed                      b) sent                      c) missed                      d) lost
- 21 I haven't heard ..... my friend since he travelled to Paris months ago.  
a) by                      b) from                      c) for                      d) at
- 22 Unfortunately, the closure إغلاق of the factory left hundreds of local workers .....  
a) employ                      b) employment                      c) employee                      d) unemployed
- 23 Students should be encouraged to ..... control of their own learning, rather than just depending on the teacher.  
a) take                      b) give                      c) make                      d) do
- 24 There has been a decline ..... the number of people who read paperback books.  
a) for                      b) of                      c) with                      d) in
- 25 The internet provides instant access to an enormous amount of information. The adjective "instant" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
a) future                      b) delayed                      c) immediate                      d) old
- 26 You can join the ..... meeting by clicking on the link I sent you. (Longman)  
a) false                      b) virtual                      c) offline                      d) factual
- 27 I had to ..... my mobile phone during the meeting so no one would hear it if it rang. (Longman)  
a) mute                      b) meet                      c) turn on                      d) turn up
- 28 The internet ..... is quite strong in the office, so you can do all your online tasks easily. (Longman)  
a) linking                      b) connection                      c) joining                      d) separation
- 29 I usually turn ..... my computer when I leave the office. (Longman)  
a) on                      b) of                      c) off                      d) in
- 30 An efficient ..... should be promoted to motivate them to achieve more success. (Longman)  
a) unemployment                      b) employment  
c) employer                      d) employee





## Phrasal verbs

## الأفعال الاصطلاحية

هي الأفعال التي تتكون من فعل يتبعه حرف جر أو ظرف أو الاثنان معاً ويتغير معنى الفعل الأصلي مثل:

- يشبه look like / يعتنى بـ look after / يبحث عن look for / ينظر Look
- وتنقسم الأفعال الاصطلاحية إلى أفعال يمكن أن تنفصل ويأتي الاسم أو الضمير بين الفعل وحرف الجر مثل:
- He turned the light on.

وأفعال لا يمكن فصلها ويأتي الاسم في النهاية مثل: look at the picture

وفي حالة الأفعال التي تنفصل عن حرف الجر لا نستخدم الضمير بعد حرف الجر ولكن نستخدم الاسم فقط لاحظ المثال التالي:

- Turn the computer on. ✓
- Turn on the computer. ✓
- Turn it on. ✓
- Turn on it. X

وهذه أهم الأفعال الاصطلاحية التي يجب على الطالب إتقانها:

## Section 1

Phrasal Verb	Arabic Meaning	Examples
absorbed in	منهمك في	Tareq is absorbed in solving the problem.
accused of	متهم بـ	He was accused of killing his wife.
apply for (a job)	يتقدم (لوظيفة)	He can apply for this job.
back somebody up	يساند	My wife backed me up over my decision to quit my job.
believe in	يؤمن بـ	The school believes in letting children learn at their own pace.
block out	يسد/يحجب	Close the windows to block sounds out before you start to meditate.
blow out	ينطفئ الضوء	Make sure the flame in the lamp doesn't blow out. Lighting it isn't easy.
blow up	ينفجر/يفجر	The racing car blew up after it crashed into the fence.
break down	ينهار/تتعطل (سيارة)	Our car broke down at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.
break down	ينهار	The woman broke down when the police told her that her son had died.



break in	يقتحم مبنى	Somebody <b>broke in</b> last night and stole our jewellery.
break into something	يقتحم بالقوة	The firemen had to <b>break into</b> the room to rescue the children.
bring about	يحدث	The new government wants to <b>bring about</b> many changes in the way the country is run.
bring somebody up	يربى شخصاً	My grandparents <b>brought me up</b> after my parents died.
call on somebody	يزور شخصاً	We <b>called on</b> you last night but you weren't home.
calm down	يهدئ	You are still mad. You need to <b>calm down</b> before you drive the car.
care for	يهتم بـ	Our company supports an organisation that <b>cares for</b> homeless children.
carry on	يستمر	We can <b>carry on</b> our discussion at night.
carry out	ينفذ	Surgeons <b>carry out</b> operations.
catch up with	يلحق بـ	You'll have to run faster if you want to <b>catch up with</b> them.
charge with	يتهم بـ	The police arrested him and <b>charged</b> him <b>with</b> armed robbery.
check in	يصل ويسجل في فندق أو مطار	We will get the hotel keys when we <b>check in</b> .
check out	يغادر فندقاً	You have to <b>check out</b> of the hotel before 11:00 a.m.
cheer somebody up	يبهج شخصاً	I brought you some flowers to <b>cheer you up</b> .
come across something	يجد بالصدفة	I <b>came across</b> these old photos when I was tidying the closet.
come apart	ينفصل	The top and bottom <b>come apart</b> if you pull hard enough.



come from someplace	يأتي من (بلد)	He <b>comes from</b> China.
concentrate on	يركز على	Please, <b>concentrate on</b> your work.
consist of	يتكون من	The robot <b>consists of</b> several parts.
contribute to	يساهم في / يشارك	That film <b>contributed to</b> the growing awareness of global climate change.
count on	يعتمد على	I am <b>counting on</b> you to make dinner while I am out.
cry out	يصرخ من الخوف أو الألم	We heard someone <b>cry out</b> in the darkness.
cut down	يقلل	Eating less junk food <b>cuts down</b> the risk of getting heart disease.
cut something off	يوقف إمداد	The phone company <b>cut off</b> our phone because we didn't pay the bill.
cut something out	يقطع / يقص	I <b>cut</b> this ad <b>out</b> of the newspaper.
deal in	يتاجر في	She set up a successful website that <b>deals in</b> second-hand books.
deal with	يتعامل مع	Hany is very good at <b>dealing with</b> technical problems.
decide on	يقرر	I can't <b>decide on</b> which novel to read.
depend on	يعتمد على	Children usually <b>depend on</b> their mothers.
devote to + v+ing	يكرس	Volunteers <b>devoted</b> most of their time <b>to helping</b> people in need.
die down	يهدأ / يخمد	The musicians waited for the applause to <b>die down</b> before starting to play.
die out	ينقرض	Many animal species have <b>died out</b> recently and disappeared forever.
dispose of	يتخلص من	The hospital was fined for not <b>disposing of</b> its waste properly.
do without	يستغنى	We'll have to <b>do without</b> the air-conditioning while they fix it.



dream of	يحلم بـ	► He <b>dreamed of</b> becoming a rich and successful businessman.
dress up	يرتدى أجمل الثياب	► It's a fancy restaurant so we have to <b>dress up</b> .
drive out	يطرد	► Why did the police <b>drive</b> the beggars <b>out</b> of the park and onto the streets?
drop in/by/over	يزور فجأة	► I might <b>drop in/by/over</b> for tea sometime this week.
drop + شخص + off	ينزل شخصاً	► I'll <b>drop</b> you <b>off</b> on my way home.

### Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The building was blown ..... by the terrorists.  
a) in                      b) to                      c) off                      d) up
- I need a mechanic. My car ..... down.  
a) got                      b) turned                      c) broke                      d) switched
- ..... up children is not an easy task.  
a) Bringing                      b) Going                      c) Cleaning                      d) Calling
- He thanked the nurses who had cared ..... him.  
a) to                      b) for                      c) of                      d) on
- The report charges cars ..... being responsible for half of the century's air pollution problems.  
a) to                      b) on                      c) for                      d) with
- The country is changing very quickly and many of the old traditions are .....  
a) dying out                      b) turning up                      c) letting down                      d) carrying out
- A lot of institutions ..... donations from the public.  
a) care for                      b) depend on                      c) call on                      d) contribute to
- My family is made up of four people. This means that it ..... of four persons.  
a) dreams                      b) accuses                      c) consists                      d) disposes
- If you want to lose weight, you must ..... on fatty foods.  
a) decide                      b) count                      c) depend                      d) cut down
- I was in Italy carrying ..... research for my book.  
a) on                      b) out                      c) of                      d) about



## Section 2

eat in	يأكل داخل المنزل	get through	يحصل على/يجتاز
eat out	يأكل في مطعم	get to	يصل إلى
eat up	يلتهم	get together	يتقابل
end up	الوصول إلى قرار نهائي	get up	ينهض من الفراش
engage in	ينخرط في	give in	يستسلم
expose to	يُعرض لـ	give off	تطلق روائح/تبعث
fall down	يقع	give something up	يقلع عن
fill something in	يملأ استمارة	go after somebody	يطارد
find out	يكتشف/يعرف	go after something	يحاول تحقيق
focus on	يركز على	go off	ينطلق/ينفجر
get ahead of	يتقدم على	grow up	يكبر/يبلغ
get along/on	يتحaban/يتفقدان جيداً	hand something in	يرسل/يسلم
get away with	يفلت من عقاب	hang on	ينتظر قليلاً
get off	ينهي عملاً/يغادر مكاناً/ينزل من مواصلة	hang up	ينهي مكالمة
get on	يتعامل مع/يساير	hear about	يعرف
get on something	يركب	hear from	يتلقى أخباراً من
get over something	يتغلب على مرض أو مشكلة	hear of	يسمع عن
get rid of	يتخلص من	hold on	ينتظر قليلاً

### Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Thieves ..... away with computer equipment worth 30.000 pounds.  
a) gave                      b) run                      c) put                      d) got
- Khalid has decided to give ..... playing football at the end of this season.  
a) up                      b) out                      c) off                      d) in
- I finally managed to get ..... my driving test.  
a) up                      b) over                      c) through                      d) rid of
- Potatoes turn green when exposed ..... light.  
a) over                      b) on                      c) for                      d) to



- 5 I don't know how we're going to get ..... this problem.  
a) to                      b) over                      c) up                      d) through
- 6 In class, all students should ..... discussing the ideas of the lesson.  
a) bring up                      b) get rid of                      c) engage in                      d) give in
- 7 If you are busy all day, you need to ..... more about these night courses.  
a) depend                      b) fill                      c) contribute                      d) find out
- 8 As you are older, it's time you ..... all these old toys.  
a) got rid of                      b) brought up                      c) got away with                      d) got over
- 9 What do you want to be when you .....?  
a) bring up                      b) grow up                      c) turn up                      d) engage in
- 10 Our next holiday will be in a place I've never .....  
a) gone to                      b) heard from                      c) heard of                      d) arrived

### Section 3

impact on/upon	يؤثر على	long for	يشتاق إلى
impose on	يفرض على	look after	يعتنى بـ
insist on/upon	يصر على	look down on somebody	يحتقر/يعتبره أقل شأنًا
interest in	يثير اهتمامًا	look for	يبحث عن
invest in	يستثمر في	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
involve in	ينغمس في	look into something	يفحص/يحقّق
join in	يشارك	look something up	يبحث في مرجع أو قاعدة بيانات
keep away from	يمنع/يبعد عن	look up to	يحترم
keep on doing something	يستمر في عمل شيء	make somebody up	يستخدم المكياج
keep somebody/something out	يمنع من الدخول	make something up	يخترع/يخلق قصة
lead to	يؤدي إلى	make up	يتصالح/يسوى نزاعًا
let down	يحبط/يخيب الآمال	make up for	يعوّض
lie down	يستلقي	make up (the) mind	يقرر
log in (or on)	يدخل على الإنترنت أو قاعدة بيانات	name after	يسمى على اسم
log out (or off)	يخرج من الإنترنت أو قاعدة بيانات	object to	يعترض على



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 She insists ..... having her own bedroom.  
a) on                      b) to                      c) for                      d) with
- 2 A good manager will try to involve everyone ..... the decision-making process.  
a) on                      b) with                      c) in                      d) about
- 3 The employees strongly objected ..... the terms of the contract بنود العقد.  
a) on                      b) for                      c) with                      d) to
- 4 I'm trying to make ..... for the time I lost while I was sick.  
a) on                      b) up                      c) at                      d) with
- 5 A degree in English could lead ..... a career in journalism.  
a) to                      b) on                      c) with                      d) about
- 6 I'd be very interested ..... hear your opinion.  
a) about                      b) in                      c) to                      d) on
- 7 You look really tired. Why don't you go and ..... for a while?  
a) lie down                      b) join in                      c) log in                      d) make up
- 8 The team let the fans ..... when they lost the final.  
a) of                      b) up                      c) behind                      d) down
- 9 My father has travelled and left me to look ..... the business until he gets back.  
a) after                      b) for                      c) to                      d) up
- 10 He always ..... stories to make us believe what he says and does.  
a) turns up                      b) makes up                      c) makes up for                      d) carries out

#### Section 4

pay for something	يدفع ثمنًا	result in	ينتج عنه
pay somebody back	يرد الدين	run after	يطارد
pick something out	يختار	run away	يهرب
pick up	يلتقط	run into	يقابل بالصدفة
pick somebody up	يحضر شخصًا من مكان	run over	يدهس
put something off	يؤجل	set off	ينطلق/ينفجر
put something on	يرتدى	show off	يستعرض متفاخرًا
put something out	يطفئ	stand for	يرمز إلى
put up with	يطيق/يتحمل	stick to something	يستمر في عمل شيء



sum up	يلخص	think something over	يفكر مليًا
switch something off	يغلق	throw something away	يتخلص من
switch something on	يشغل/يفتح	try something on	يقيس ملابس
take after somebody	يشبه أحد أفراد العائلة	turn over	يقلب
take care of	يعتنى بـ	turn down	يرفض/يخفض (الصوت)
take in	يخدع / يستوعب/ يفهم/ يمتص	turn something off	يغلق
take off	تقلع الطائرة	turn something on	يشغل
take something off	يخلع شيئًا	turn something up	يعلى/يزيد
take up	يشغل حيزًا	use something up	يستنفد/يستهلك
talk into	يقنع	wear off	يتلاشى
tear something up	يمزق	work out	يحسب/يتمرن

### Language Check point 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The thieves ran ..... when the alarm went off.  
a) into                      b) after                      c) away                      d) over
- Although I had enough money, Ali insisted on paying ..... the drinks.  
a) for                      b) to                      c) of                      d) at
- I'm the eldest member in the family and all my younger brothers take ..... me.  
a) up                      b) after                      c) on                      d) in
- My neighbours take ..... their garden very well.  
a) in                      b) off                      c) after                      d) care of
- I couldn't have a shower as my sister had used ..... all the hot water.  
a) up                      b) off                      c) of                      d) in
- Can you turn the television .....? I can't hear it.  
a) down                      b) up                      c) over                      d) off
- I felt quite excited as the plane ..... from Athena to Cairo.  
a) set up                      b) turned off                      c) broke down                      d) took off
- Don't be taken ..... by products claiming to help you lose weight in a week.  
a) over                      b) up                      c) in                      d) down
- In your final paragraph, ..... your argument.  
a) sum up                      b) take off                      c) set off                      d) start up
- I'll ..... early to avoid the traffic.  
a) break down                      b) set off                      c) take off                      d) turn on







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 You can't leave the hotel without checking .....  
a) in                      b) out                      c) into                      d) against
- 2 He has travelled for a year. I'm looking forward ..... hearing from him.  
a) on                      b) for                      c) to                      d) about
- 3 You can count ..... Osama. He's very reliable.  
a) on                      b) of                      c) to                      d) for
- 4 Our boss believes ..... the power of positive thinking and teaches us about it.  
a) of                      b) in                      c) to                      d) on
- 5 When Ahmed was a baby, he was ..... up by his grandfather in Sohag.  
a) brought                      b) used                      c) turned                      d) made
- 6 Hany cared ..... his mother while she was recovering from her illness.  
a) on                      b) of                      c) for                      d) to
- 7 I'm still not sure if we can play tennis today. It depends ..... the weather.  
a) to                      b) on                      c) for                      d) in
- 8 When he was young, he dreamed ..... being a famous football player.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) to                      d) of
- 9 Many soldiers were exposed ..... dangerous gases during the war.  
a) to                      b) on                      c) of                      d) in
- 10 We're concentrating ..... opening new markets for our products overseas.  
a) to                      b) of                      c) on                      d) with
- 11 My sister and I used to argue a lot, but now we get ..... well.  
a) up                      b) along                      c) through                      d) over
- 12 We trust Ola, so we ..... her up when the company accused her of stealing.  
a) brought                      b) made                      c) turned                      d) backed
- 13 When Basma was driving to work, her car ....., so she took a taxi instead.  
a) turned down                      b) used up                      c) broke down                      d) fell off
- 14 After you check ..... to the hotel, the porter will take your bags up to your room.  
a) out                      b) on                      c) onto                      d) in
- 15 Do you think going for a walk would ..... Sally up? She's still feeling bad about losing her job.  
a) make                      b) bring                      c) cheer                      d) back
- 16 If you're overweight, it's time to ..... on the amount of fatty food, junk food and snack foods that you eat.  
a) turn off                      b) cut down                      c) get through                      d) use up
- 17 Would you mind dealing ..... this customer's inquiry? I'm too busy at the moment.  
a) in                      b) to                      c) with                      d) on



- 18 She can't do ..... her coffee in the morning. It gets her going.  
a) without      b) with      c) to      d) well
- 19 The new government will focus ..... developing the country's industrial sector.  
a) over      b) in      c) to      d) on
- 20 How are you getting ..... with the other people in the office?  
a) away      b) on      c) in      d) through
- 21 Companies advertise in order to interest people ..... their products.  
a) in      b) to      c) of      d) about
- 22 In our staff meetings, we want everyone to join ..... and share their ideas.  
a) of      b) to      c) in      d) by
- 23 We named our daughter ..... my grandmother, so now there are two Zainabs in our family.  
a) with      b) after      c) for      d) before
- 24 Some people try to impose their views or beliefs ..... other people.  
a) to      b) about      c) in      d) on
- 25 How can I get my son to ..... all his vegetables?  
a) bring up      b) make up      c) eat up      d) back up
- 26 If we work as a team, we can get ..... the reports much faster.  
a) through      b) up      c) to      d) over
- 27 I don't feel like going ..... to a restaurant. Let's stay home and eat ..... tonight.  
a) in/out      b) out/in      c) in/in      d) out/out
- 28 He ran fast to get ahead ..... his competitors, and now he's leading ..... the race.  
a) to/of      b) of/to      c) of/.....      d) of/of
- 29 The doctor told him to take ..... his shoes and ..... down on the couch.  
a) on/turn      b) off/lie      c) off/turn      d) in/get
- 30 The wounded soldier cried ..... in pain as his friends picked him ..... and put him on a stretcher.  
a) of/up      b) over/of      c) up/out      d) out/up
- 31 Please, turn the sound ..... . I can't hear you clearly.  
a) up      b) on      c) off      d) over
- 32 If you neglect your work, it will be difficult to catch ..... . (Longman)  
a) down      b) out      c) up with      d) up
- 33 Which mobile phone have you decided ..... , Sir? (Longman)  
a) at      b) up      c) to      d) on
- 34 Don't give ..... on your dreams. One day you will achieve them. (Longman)  
a) over      b) up      c) at      d) of
- 35 I am going to pick my uncle up from the airport. This means that I'm going to ..... . (Longman)  
a) say goodbye to my uncle at the airport  
b) take my uncle from home to the airport and see him off  
c) meet my uncle at the airport and take him to another place  
d) go to the airport and travel with my uncle







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 The director asked us all to ..... our mobile phones before the meeting.  
a) plug                      b) update                      c) analyse                      d) mute
- 2 The ..... quality of the CD wasn't good, so I didn't enjoy the song.  
a) view                      b) sound                      c) sight                      d) image
- 3 If you miss a lot of classes, it's very difficult to ..... up with your study.  
a) look                      b) give                      c) catch                      d) get
- 4 Companies can use video ..... as a low-cost alternative to travelling for meetings.  
a) research                      b) conference                      c) hardware                      d) investigation
- 5 Kenzy was listening to music through her ..... and she couldn't hear her mother calling.  
a) headphones                      b) microphones                      c) francophone                      d) recorders
- 6 When I go to the movies, I like to sit close to the ..... so, I book tickets in the front row.  
a) actors                      b) speaker                      c) screen                      d) camera
- 7 Thirty people applied for the job, but the director chose only five .....  
a) guards                      b) employers                      c) interviewers                      d) interviewees
- 8 Most jobs in service industries require people who are efficient at human .....  
a) attach                      b) link                      c) contact                      d) method
- 9 You can download a free trial ..... of the anti-virus from the website.  
a) vision                      b) version                      c) revision                      d) provision
- 10 The President is very concerned about the ..... of the citizens and he exerts great efforts for that.  
a) welfare                      b) luck                      c) aspect                      d) view
- 11 Although he is nearly forty years old, Ronaldo's fitness ..... is better than that of many 20-year-old players.  
a) quantity                      b) level                      c) surface                      d) number
- 12 Experts say that internet addiction can affect your ..... skills and make you away from your friends.  
a) specific                      b) technological                      c) interpersonal                      d) predictable
- 13 We believe that all governments should ..... and invest in scientific research.  
a) report                      b) respond                      c) support                      d) rapport
- 14 Our centre offers free ..... support for those buying our software.  
a) exercising                      b) technical                      c) financial                      d) healthy



15 Scientists have always warned that hunting led to a marked ..... in bird numbers.

- a) evidence      b) release      c) increase      d) decline

**Language**

16 This company deals ..... buying and selling cars.

- a) in      b) with      c) about      d) of

17 I never hear ..... Ragab these days. Do you know how he is?

- a) about      b) of      c) from      d) on

18 The terrorists planned to blow ..... the bridge but in vain.

- a) off      b) to      c) in      d) up

19 The company's directors were arrested and charged ..... tax evasion **تهرب ضريبي**.

- a) to      b) of      c) on      d) with

20 Did you call ..... Maher and see his new apartment?

- a) on      b) for      c) in      d) over

21 In many developed countries, people get at least four weeks ..... for vacations.

- a) for      b) of      c) off      d) on

22 Old Sohir longs ..... the days when everything was cheap.

- a) about      b) to      c) with      d) for

23 Many languages are dying ..... because fewer and fewer people are learning and speaking them.

- a) from      b) of      c) out      d) down

24 He cut ..... the funny picture from the magazine.

- a) off      b) down      c) on      d) out

25 Wait until her anger dies .....

- a) of      b) out      c) down      d) to

26 You can drop me ..... at the end of the street.

- a) on      b) off      c) in      d) by

27 It's too bright in here. Let's close the curtains to ..... the sunlight.

- a) block out      b) turn off      c) take in      d) run away

28 Omar ..... the candles on his birthday cake, and then he made a wish.

- a) blew up      b) turned on      c) picked up      d) blew out

29 Don't forget to give back the room key when you ..... of the hotel.

- a) check in      b) check out      c) ran away      d) run out

30 This fire doesn't seem to be ..... much heat.

- a) going off      b) giving off      c) getting over      d) cutting down





## A Vocabulary

## Vocabulary on Reading

brainstorm (n) (v) (ed)	عصف ذهني/يقوم بعصف ذهني	point (n)	نقطة
centre (n)	مركز/وسط	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
click (v) (ed)	ينقر (بالفأرة)	presentation (n)	عرض
creative (adj)	مبدع	session (n)	جلسة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	similar (adj)	مشابه
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر	slide (n)	شريحة لعرض البيانات
give up (v)	يستسلم/يتخلى عن	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
heading (n)	عنوان	technique (n)	تقنية/أسلوب
highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط ضوءاً/يبرز	text (n) (v) (ed)	نص/يرسل رسالة نصية
link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط	tip (n)	نصيحة/تلميح
list (n)	قائمة	topic (n)	موضوع
mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية	understand (v)	يفهم
order (n)	ترتيب	word (n)	كلمة

## Workbook Vocabulary

address (n) (v) (ed)	عنوان/يخاطب	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
arrow (n)	سهم	icon (n)	رمز/أيقونة
attach (v) (ed)	يصل/يلحق بـ	mark (n) (v) (ed)	درجة/علامة/يبرز
background (n)	خلفية	option (n)	اختيار
certain (adj)	معين/محدد/متأكد	phrase (n)	عبارة
clip (n)	مقطع (فيديو)	reduce (v) (d)	يخفض/يقلل
concentration (n)	تركيز	revise (v) (d)	يراجع
details (n)	تفاصيل	shocked (adj)	مصدوم
essential (adj)	ضروري	tend to (v) (ed)	يميل إلى
express (v) (ed)	يعبر عن	unit (n)	وحدة
grateful (adj)	ممتن/معتز بالجميل	video call (n)	مكالمة فيديو



## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The two sisters are so ..... that it's almost impossible to tell one from the other.  
a) similar      b) curious      c) difficult      d) different
- 2 My friend warned me not to open the file that was ..... to the email as it might contain a virus.  
a) attached      b) established      c) connected      d) enclosed
- 3 Knowing how to use a computer is becoming as ..... as the ability to read and write.  
a) unimportant      b) essential      c) introductory      d) affecting
- 4 The musicians gathered in the studio, waiting for the start of the recording .....  
a) role      b) experiment      c) session      d) experience
- 5 All researches show a ..... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.  
a) tie      b) clash      c) sign      d) link
- 6 Advertising agencies use ..... ways to market their services for customers.  
a) creative      b) affecting      c) recessive      d) oppressive
- 7 The PowerPoint presentation had interesting ..... that attracted the staff's attention.  
a) programmes      b) slides      c) shows      d) signals
- 8 The spelling mistakes in the students' compositions are ..... in red.  
a) spoiled      b) damaged      c) highlighted      d) inspected
- 9 A/An ..... is a picture on a computer screen that represents a program, disk drive, file, or instruction.  
a) panel      b) folder      c) emoji      d) icon
- 10 Surgical ..... have improved considerably in the last twenty years.  
a) wards      b) searches      c) techniques      d) corridors

### Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at the start/end of	فى بداية/فى نهاية	it sounds like	هذا يبدو وكأنه
feel free to	لا تتردد أن/معك كامل الحرية لـ	keep ... healthy	يبقى ... بصحة جيدة
get stressed	يتعرض للضغط	make a list	يعد قائمة
in advance	مقدماً	make changes	يجرى تغييرات
bring/get ... together	يجمع	meet up with	يتقابل/يجتمع مع
learn about	يعرف/يتعلم عن	surprised by	مندعش من





## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
attach	يلحق	attachment	ملحق	attached	متصل/مرفق
explain	يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيري
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر/تعبيري
link	يصل/يربط	link	رابط	linked	متصل
prepare	يعد/يجهز	preparation	إعداد/تجهيز	prepared	معد/مجهز
present	يقدم	presentation	تقديم/عرض تقديمي	presentational	تقديمي
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	reduction	تخفيض	reduced	مخفض
shock	يصدم	shock	صدمة	shocked shocking	مصدوم صادم
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	ملخص

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
attach	يربط/يلحق	connect/stick	detach/divide يفصل/يقسم
creative	مبدع	artistic/imaginative	ungifted/untalented غير موهوب
effectively	بفاعلية	efficiently/adequately	doubtfully ineffectively بارتياب بشكل غير فعال
essential	ضروري	important/vital	extra/optional إضافي/اختياري
explain	يشرح/يفسر	clarify/illustrate	confuse/question يربك/يتساءل
guess	يخمن/يظن	imagine/suppose	disbelieve/refuse ينكر/يرفض
highlight	يميز	distinguish/emphasise	neglect يهمل
link	رابط/صلة	contact/connection	detachment فصل
prepare	يعد/يجهز	arrange/get ready	halt/scatter يتوقف/يبعثر
reduce	يخفض/يقلل	decrease/lessen	increase/expand يزيد/يوسع
shocked	مصدوم	amazed/astonished	relaxed مسترخ



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The company must reduce costs to compete effectively. The adverb "effectively" can be replaced by ".....".  
a) doubtfully      b) helplessly      c) intentionally      d) efficiently
- 2 I told my friend that it would have helped to know in ..... that he was coming to our house.  
a) general      b) advance      c) public      d) private
- 3 The successful applicant learned ..... his appointment by telephone yesterday.  
a) about      b) in      c) at      d) out
- 4 Men don't express their emotions as much as women do. The noun of the verb "express" is ".....".  
a) expressed      b) expressed      c) expression      d) expressive
- 5 The company has a team of 10 creative architects on the project. The synonym of the adjective "creative" is ".....".  
a) imaginative      b) ungifted      c) inefficient      d) imaginary
- 6 It is really important to ..... your children healthy through their lifestyle.  
a) remain      b) stay      c) waste      d) keep
- 7 This report highlights some of the problems faced by old people in winter. The opposite of the verb "highlight" is ".....".  
a) neglect      b) distinguish      c) assert      d) show
- 8 We had to ..... changes to the office to cope with the new security rules.  
a) do      b) give      c) make      d) follow
- 9 The teacher explained the rules to the children. The adjective of the verb "explain" is ".....".  
a) explains      b) explaining      c) explanation      d) explanatory
- 10 He was absolutely shocked by the plane crash. The antonym of the adjective "shocked" is ".....".  
a) amazed      b) astonished      c) relaxed      d) frightened



**speech**

خطاب (أخبار عن موضوع خاص أمام  
مجموعة بشكل رسمي)

In her **speech**, the minister proposed major changes to the welfare system.

**presentation**

1 عرض تقديمي (لوصف أو شرح فكرة  
وخاصة في مجال العمل)

I had to give a **presentation** to the board of directors.

**statement**

بيان (شفوي أو مكتوب أمام جمهور  
وخاصة الصحفيين)

The minister issued a short **statement** in which he said he had no plans to resign.

**say**

يقول (يخبر شيئًا باستخدام الكلمات)

Mariam **said** she'd probably be late.

**2 announce**

يعلن عن شيء بشكل رسمي

- The results will be **announced** tomorrow.
- We will **announce** the winners next Sunday.

**express**

يعبر عن مشاعر أو رأي

Young children often find it difficult to **express** their emotions.

**list**

قائمة (أسماء/أرقام/أشياء) لمراجعتها أو  
القيام بها

Make a **list** of all the things you have to do.

**3 menu**

- ١ - قائمة طعام (في مطعم)
- ٢ - قائمة (مهام) في جهاز يمكن الاختيار  
منها

- He looked at the **menu** and decided to have the salad.
- Select PRINT from the main **menu**.

**heading**

عنوان مقال/صحيفة/أجزاء كتاب

I only had time to read the **heading** of the chapters in the book.

- ١ - عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
- ٢ - لقب
- ٣ - مسمى وظيفي

- The **title** of this play is "King Lear".
- The **title** "Ms" became much more popular in the 1980s.
- Her official **title** is Personnel Manager.

**address**

- ١ - عنوان (مكان)
- ٢ - عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكتروني
- ٣ - خطاب/خطاب

- I can give you the **address** of a good restaurant.
- They have changed their website **address**.
- The president delivered his first **address** in the parliament.

**قناة العباقرة ٣**

علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe





**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The famous couple ..... their marriage in one of the most popular TV channels.

a) expressed                      b) said  
c) announced                  d) lectured
- 2 The new guests were asked to add their names to the bottom of the ..... of attendees.

a) picture                        b) photo  
c) list                             d) menu
- 3 Several people made ..... at the funeral of the famous footballer, Pelé.

a) speeches                      b) statements  
c) presentations                d) chats
- 4 All job applicants were asked to print their names and home ..... in block capitals.

a) addresses                    b) titles  
c) headings                      d) awards
- 5 Press the Esc button if you want to return to the main .....

a) picture                        b) photo  
c) list                             d) menu
- 6 I've read one of Naguib Mahfouz's books, but I can't remember the .....

a) address                        b) title  
c) heading                        d) award
- 7 The sales manager is giving a PowerPoint ..... to the management board about his department's achievement

a) speech                        b) statement  
c) presentation                d) chat
- 8 The farmers have ..... anger at the plans of building a power station near their fields.

a) expressed                    b) said  
c) stated                         d) lectured

### قناة العباقرة ٣ث

**على تطبيق Telegram**

رابطہ القناة @taneasnawe







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My elder brother works in a sports ..... instructing people in the use of the gym equipment.  
a) background    b) centre    c) clinic    d) session
- 2 My cousin is so ..... that she sometimes makes her own clothes which we all like.  
a) creative    b) ordinary    c) strange    d) imaginary
- 3 Today's newspaper gives all the terrible ..... of the murder and the murderer.  
a) slides    b) tips    c) recipes    d) details
- 4 If you click on this ....., it takes you to our flight timetable to different destinations around the world.  
a) connection    b) contact    c) link    d) way
- 5 The victim had red ..... on her arm where she'd burned herself.  
a) signs    b) corrections    c) marks    d) signals
- 6 Doctors advise us that a low-fat diet can ..... the risk of heart disease.  
a) produce    b) introduce    c) deduce    d) reduce
- 7 My mother always tells me when I am tired, it's easy to lose my .....  
a) connection    b) investigation    c) concentration    d) reflection
- 8 The young architects had a meeting to ..... some ideas about the new project.  
a) brainstorm    b) brain drain    c) brain wave    d) brain wreck
- 9 On reading texts, the students ..... important vocabulary in their textbooks.  
a) attached    b) highlighted    c) darkened    d) expressed
- 10 Farmers should employ the latest ..... in farming to increase production.  
a) slides    b) options    c) techniques    d) plans
- 11 The employees must be given enough training to be able to do their jobs .....  
a) inaccurately    b) reflectively    c) defectively    d) effectively
- 12 By law, customers have the ..... to return the bought products in 14 days.  
a) option    b) obligation    c) casualty    d) inquiry
- 13 Some studies show that girls ..... to be better at languages than boys.  
a) blend    b) tend    c) mend    d) repent
- 14 The clerk sent an email ..... the main points we had discussed in our meeting.  
a) preparing    b) erasing    c) summarising    d) pressing
- 15 It's incorrect to ..... people by their first names at these formal events.  
a) oppress    b) depress    c) bless    d) address



- 16 After his account had been hacked, the old man was ..... to discover that he had no money left in his account.  
a) shocked      b) shocking      c) grateful      d) creative
- 17 Our company may need to ..... its sales policy in the light of the recent reports.  
a) improvise      b) revise      c) address      d) aspire
- 18 I guessed that you must be related because you look so similar. The synonym of the verb "guess" is ".....".  
a) respect      b) assert      c) propose      d) suppose
- 19 The medical company brought ..... researchers from three different universities to work on the new vaccine.  
a) up      b) together      c) down      d) for
- 20 The old man sold the house at a ..... price because of his financial problems.  
a) reduce      b) reduction      c) reduced      d) reducing
- 21 One of the most important tips to do well in your exams is that you shouldn't ..... stressed.  
a) get      b) turn      c) make      d) fly
- 22 The friendly game was good ..... for our team's games at the international championship.  
a) prepare      b) preparation      c) prepared      d) impaired
- 23 Students are asked to ..... free to ask questions if they don't understand.  
a) fall      b) keep      c) feel      d) miss
- 24 People were evacuated from the coastal regions ..... advance of the hurricane اعصار.  
a) with      b) for      c) at      d) in
- 25 Experience is essential for this job. The antonym of the adjective "essential" is ".....".  
a) obligatory      b) costly      c) optional      d) revised
- 26 My teacher has given us some study ..... so we can improve our grades. (Longman)  
a) tops      b) tapes      c) tips      d) types
- 27 I can't ..... on this work for more than five hours; I need a break. (Longman)  
a) persist      b) suggest      c) concentrate      d) penetrate
- 28 I intend to ..... the Faculty of Engineering after I finish secondary school. (Longman)  
a) leave      b) go      c) join      d) enroll
- 29 My friend's health has ..... since he/she started smoking. (Longman)  
a) decided      b) improved      c) increased      d) declined
- 30 A good teacher should always ..... his/her students to think independently. (Longman)  
a) fabricate      b) motivate      c) join      d) communicate



**-ing forms or the infinitive****1****Some verbs are always followed by the -ing form:**هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا إليه **ing** ومنها هذه الأفعال:

admit (to)	يعترف بـ	dislike	يبغض/يكره	suggest	يقترح
deny	ينكر	enjoy	يتمتع بـ	finish	ينهى
avoid	يتجنب	practise	يمارس	go (activities)	يذهب
spend	يقضى	understand	يفهم	recall	يسترجع
appreciate	يقدر	imagine	يتخيل	recollect	يستحضر
consider	يفكر/يتأمل	involve	يحتوى	report	يبلغ
continue	يواصل	keep	يواصل/يحافظ	resent	يستاء
delay	يؤجل	mention	يذكر	resist	يقاوم
discuss	يناقش	mind	يمنع	risk	يخطر
escape	يهرب	miss	يخطئ	save	يصون
excuse	يسامح	postpone	يؤخر	stand	يصمد
fancy	يتخيل	prevent	يمنع	tolerate	يتسامح
forgive	يسامح	quit	يوقف/يترك		

**Examples**

- Karim **admitted/denied taking** my pen without asking me.
- The driver of the car **avoided hitting** the motorbike.
- He **dislikes/enjoys sleeping** during the day.
- They're going home as soon as they've **finished working**.
- Samir and his brother **practise playing** tennis every day.
- My friend **suggested going** for a picnic on the beach.



## 2

## Some verbs are always followed by to + infinitive:

٢ هناك أفعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا إليه to + inf. ومنها هذه الأفعال:

arrange	ينظم	expect	يتوقع	offer	يقدم
decide	يقرر	hope	يأمل	promise	يعد
agree	يقبل/يوافق	learn	يتعلم	plan	يخطط
want	يريد	allow	يسمح	advise	ينصح
aim	يهدف	demand	يطلب	hurry	يسرع
appear	يبدو	deserve	يستحق	forbid	يمنع
prepare	يعد/يجهز	pretend	يتظاهر	determine	يصمم
long	يشتاق	prove	يثبت	ask	يطلب
warn	يحذر	manage	يتمكن	refuse	يرفض
attempt	يحاول	fail	يفشل	threaten	يهدد
care	يهتم	guarantee	يضمن	neglect	يهمل
wait	ينتظر	choose	يختار	happen	يتصادف
dare	يجرؤ	wish	يرغب	seem	يبدو



## Examples

- Everyone **agreed/arranged/decided to meet** at the airport.
- I **expect/hope to finish** my homework later this evening.
- I **learned to swim** when I was three years old.
- She **offered/promised to help** her mother prepare lunch.
- What do you **plan/want to do** in the summer?





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I don't enjoy ..... as much as I used to.  
a) to cook      b) cook      c) cooking      d) to cook
- 2 Her parents didn't want her ..... him.  
a) to marry      b) marrying      c) married      d) to be married
- 3 Some students decided ..... snow sculptures in the park.  
a) make      b) to be made      c) making      d) to make
- 4 I'll suggest ..... to Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.  
a) go      b) going      c) to go      d) to going
- 5 Before you go to London, you should practise ..... English.  
a) to speak      b) speak      c) speaking      d) to speaking
- 6 Your suggestion appears ..... logical; I agree with you.  
a) is      b) to be      c) being      d) to being
- 7 I ..... her to use my dictionary.  
a) made      b) let      c) allowed      d) refused
- 8 Heba: Let's go to the library. This means that Heba ..... to the library.  
a) lets us go      b) allows us to go      c) refuses to go      d) suggests going
- 9 I ..... eating late at night since it makes me feel heavy in the morning.  
a) dislike      b) forbid      c) enjoy      d) hope
- 10 The convict ..... stealing the lady's money, so he was imprisoned.  
a) hoped      b) decided      c) admitted      d) denied

3

Some verbs can be followed by either (to + infinitive) or (the -ing form), with no change in meaning.

٣ بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها to + inf. أو v.ing بدون تغيير في المعنى.

hate	يكره	like	يحب	love	يحب	intend	ينوي
prefer	يفضل	start	يبدأ	continue	يستمر	begin	يبدأ

I hate/like/love/prefer to do/doing exercise every day.

It has started to rain/raining.

لاحظ

إذا أتى أحد الأفعال السابقة مضافاً إليه ing فلا يأتي الفعل بعده مضافاً إليه ing.

He is ~~beginning studying~~.

He is beginning to study.



4

Some verbs can be followed by either (to + infinitive) or (the -ing form), but there is a change in meaning:

بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها **to + inf.** أو **v.ing** مع وجود تغيير في المعنى.

<b>stop + v + ing</b>	يتوقف عن فعل شيء لفترة أو يقلع عن الشيء تمامًا.	Leila <b>stopped listening</b> to the radio. كانت ليلي تسمع الراديو ثم توقفت.
<b>stop + to + inf.</b>	يتوقف عن شيء ليفعل شيئاً آخر (هدفًا) وغالبًا عندما يكون ماشيًا.	Leila <b>stopped to listen</b> to the radio. كانت ليلي تفعل شيئاً آخر ثم توقفت لكي تسمع الراديو.
<b>remember + v + ing</b>	يتذكر أنه فعل شيئاً. تم الحدوث أولاً ثم تذكر ثانيًا.	I <b>remember phoning</b> my mother. تذكرت أنني اتصلت بوالدتي.
<b>remember + to + inf.</b>	يتذكر أن يفعل شيئاً. يتذكر أولاً ثم يفعل الشيء ثانيًا.	I <b>remembered to phone</b> my mother. تذكرت أن اتصل بوالدتي (لم أنس).
<b>forget + v + ing</b>	تم حدوث الشيء أولاً ثم نسيه أو لم ينسه بعد ذلك.	I <b>forgot locking</b> the door. أغلقت الباب ولكنني نسيت. I'll never <b>forget driving</b> my car for the first time. عالق في ذاكرتي الرؤية لأول مرة.
<b>forget + to + inf.</b>	نسي أن يفعل الشيء أصلاً فيعتذر أو يذهب ليفعله بعد ذلك.	I <b>forgot to bring</b> my book. I'm sorry. نسيت أن أحضر كتابي.
<b>regret + v + ing</b>	فعل شيئاً ثم ندم بعد ذلك.	I <b>regret arriving</b> late. وصل متأخرًا وهو نادم الآن.
<b>regret + to + inf.</b>	يأسف أن يقول شيئاً أو يفعل شيئاً مضطراً لذلك.	He <b>regrets to say</b> that he can't go. هو يأسف أن يقول إنه لا يستطيع أن يذهب.
<b>try + v + ing</b>	حاول أن يفعل شيئاً ونجح فيه - يحاول تجريب شيء ويرى نتيجته.	Why don't you <b>try adding</b> some sugar to taste better? لماذا لا تجرب أن تضع بعض السكر ليحسن المذاق؟
<b>try + to + inf.</b>	يحاول أن يفعل شيئاً ببذل الجهد.	The firemen are <b>trying to put</b> out the fire. يحاول رجل المطافئ أن يخمد النار.

لاحظ



I

When "to" means **so as to/in order to**, it is followed by an infinitive:

(I) عندما تأتي **to** مثل الروابط الخاصة بالغرض **so as to/in order to** (بمعنى لكي أو أن) يأتي بعدها المصدر.

I study hard **to get** good marks.



## II

When "to" is a part of an expression, it is often followed by the -ing form:

(II) عندما تكون to جزءاً من تعبير في هذه الحالة يأتي بعدها v.ing، هنا تعتبر to حرف جر.

owing to	نتيجة لـ	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
contribute to	يساهم في/يشارك في	own up to/admit to	يعترف بـ
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	take to	يعتاد على
object to	يعترض على	(be) accustomed to	يعتاد على
(be)(get) used to	يعتاد على	lead to	يؤدي إلى

I look forward to/am used to spending the holidays in Sharm.

## 5

Some expressions are followed by the -ing form:

نستخدم (v + ing) بعد الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية:

(be) busy	مشغول في	have difficulty in	لديه صعوبة في
(be) worth	يستحق	can't help	لا يستطيع منع
It's no good ...	لا فائدة من	can't stand	لا يتحمل
It's no use ...	لا فائدة من	feel like	أشعر برغبة في
how/what about	وماذا عن؟ (اقتراح)	put off	يؤجل
what's the use of	ما فائدة؟	there is no point in	لا جدوى من الجدل

It's no good/no use wasting time.

I feel like/can't help eating sweets.

## 6

We use the infinitive without (to) with the following expressions and verbs:

نستخدم المصدر بدون (to) بعد التعبيرات و الأفعال الآتية:

had better	ينبغي	would rather	من الأفضل	let	يسمح
make	يجعل	help (+ inf. or to + inf.)	يساعد		

The thieves made the man empty his pocket.

Mona'd better take the umbrella with her in case it rains.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 She never forgets ..... a cat when she was young.

a) to kill                                      b) kill

c) killing                                     d) killed
- 2 It was difficult for Nour to get used to ..... in a foreign country.

a) live                                        b) living

c) lived                                       d) be lived
- 3 Samia admitted to ..... her sister's dress without asking.

a) wear                                        b) wore

c) have worn                                d) wearing
- 4 I remember ..... a TV programme about biodiversity. It was interesting.

a) watching                                b) watch

c) to watch                                  d) being watched
- 5 When the children stopped ....., everyone clapped.

a) to sing                                      b) sing

c) singing                                    d) to singing
- 6 We regret ..... you that your application has been unsuccessful.

a) to inform                                b) informing

c) informed                                 d) to informing
- 7 We need to change. We can't go on ..... like this.

a) to live                                       b) lived

c) living                                       d) live
- 8 My father intends ..... a house.

a) buying                                      b) to buy

c) to have bought                        d) both a & b
- 9 Oh, my dear! It's starting ..... .

a) raining                                      b) to rain

c) to raining                                 d) both a & b
- 10 He could remember ..... along the road just before the accident, but he couldn't remember the accident itself.

a) to drive                                    b) drove

c) driving                                      d) driven



### Extra points

go on + v + ing	يستمر في عمل شيء	She <b>went on talking</b> for hours.
go on + to + inf.	يستمر في عمل شيء بعد الانتهاء من شيء آخر	After finishing the report, she <b>went on to type</b> some letters.
mean + v + ing	يشمل/يضم	Finding a job <b>means attending</b> many interviews.
mean + to + inf.	ينوي/يهدف إلى	He <b>means to find</b> a job abroad.
see/hear/listen/watch + v + ing	يسمع أو يرى جزءًا من الشيء	I <b>watched</b> my father <b>painting</b> the living room. رأيت والدي يدهن الحجرة (جزء من الحدث).
see/hear/listen/watch + inf.	يسمع أو يرى الشيء كله	I <b>watched</b> my father <b>paint</b> the living room. رأيت والدي يدهن الحجرة من البداية إلى النهاية.

### لاحظ

- ١ بعد كلمة **only** والتعابير **it's the first/second/last, etc.** وصفات التفضيل نستخدم **to + inf.**
  - Ahmed was the last one **to arrive** at the party.
  - He called me only **to say** that he would be late.
- ٢ نستخدم **(to + inf)** بعد **'d like/'d love/'d prefer**
  - I **'d love to go** for a walk.
- ٣ لاحظ أننا نستخدم **(not)** قبل **(verb + ing)** أو **(to + infinitive)** عند النفي:
  - I **regret not warning** him about the huge hole in the road. He fell off the bike.
  - They **decided not to buy** this house. It's old fashioned.
- ٤ الأفعال **advise/permit/allow/forbid** يأتي بعدها **v.ing** إذا لم يأت بعدها مفعول.
  - My teacher **advised taking** a course during the summer vacation.

## قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He hopes ..... a prize for his school work.  
a) winning      b) to win      c) to winning      d) that win
- 2 We all noticed that she avoided ..... at us.  
a) looks      b) to look      c) looking      d) to be looked
- 3 My parents want me ..... hard and get high marks.  
a) studying      b) studied      c) study      d) to study
- 4 We've just finished ..... a TV programme about Egyptian history.  
a) to watch      b) watching      c) to watching      d) watch
- 5 When did you decide ..... biology at university?  
a) to study      b) studying      c) study      d) to studying
- 6 We've arranged ..... my brother up from the airport.  
a) picking      b) to picking      c) pick      d) to pick
- 7 Ali is planning ..... all weekend revising for next week's maths test.  
a) spending      b) to spend      c) to spending      d) spend
- 8 Hany and his sister practise ..... tennis every day after school.  
a) playing      b) to play      c) played      d) play
- 9 My parents suggested ..... to the theatre.  
a) go      b) to go      c) to going      d) going
- 10 I'd like ..... something on this for our project.  
a) being done      b) doing      c) to do      d) do
- 11 I regret ..... to the cinema. It was not a very good film.  
a) to go      b) go      c) going      d) went
- 12 I am not used ..... a suit and tie every day.  
a) to wear      b) having worn      c) to wearing      d) to have worn
- 13 I prefer ..... by bus to ..... by train.  
a) to travel/travelling      b) being travelled/having travelled  
c) travelling/to travel      d) travelling/travelling
- 14 It's no use ..... to him. He's asleep.  
a) talk      b) talking      c) to talk      d) having talked
- 15 Would you care ..... a look at my latest report?  
a) had      b) having      c) to have      d) have
- 16 I couldn't help ..... when you fell down.  
a) laughed      b) to laugh      c) at laughing      d) laughing
- 17 On my first day at school, I remember ..... into my classroom and seeing my teacher.  
a) going      b) to go      c) went      d) to going



- 18 Nehad regrets ..... her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.  
a) not phoning      b) not phoned      c) not phone      d) not to phone
- 19 I completely forgot ..... you my electronic dictionary. I thought I had lost it.  
a) lend      b) to lend      c) to lending      d) lending
- 20 Amina admitted not ..... how to open the door.  
a) to be known      b) knowing      c) to know      d) known
- 21 I asked my father to let me ..... the match at the stadium.  
a) watch      b) to watch      c) watching      d) to watching
- 22 I'm looking forward to ..... more on this project.  
a) be done      b) do      c) did      d) doing
- 23 Hala hoped ..... to Jana's party.  
a) for being invited      b) she will be invited      c) being invited      d) to be invited
- 24 I dislike ..... late at night.  
a) visiting      b) to visit      c) being visited      d) was visited
- 25 He advised me ..... an automatic car instead of my used Fiat.  
a) to be bought      b) buying      c) to buy      d) to buying
- 26 After talking about the accident, he went on ..... about the match.  
a) talks      b) to talking      c) talking      d) to talk
- 27 There is no point in ..... with her.  
a) to argue      b) arguing      c) argued      d) to have argued
- 28 I went to the airport ..... to meet her, but she didn't arrive.  
a) to have expected      b) to expect      c) expecting      d) to be expected
- 29 A: Why does your sister bite her nails?  
B: She doesn't enjoy ..... them; she just can't help ..... it.  
a) biting / to do      b) biting / doing      c) bite / do      d) to bite / doing
- 30 I always look forward to ..... as the captain of the team.  
a) chose      b) choosing      c) choose      d) being chosen
- 31 The criminal was in disguise to avoid ..... by the police. (Longman)  
a) arresting      b) being arrested      c) arrest      d) be arrested
- 32 The shop assistant talked me into buying that expensive T-shirt. This means that he ..... (Longman)  
a) allowed me to buy it for a low price  
b) persuaded me to come again for a better collection  
c) convinced me to buy it  
d) forced me to buy it
- 33 I was made ..... the composition again, as it was full of mistakes. (Longman)  
a) to revise      b) revise      c) revising      d) to revising
- 34 I got him to change his mind. This means that I ..... change his mind. (Longman)  
a) forced him to      b) let him  
c) persuaded him to      d) hoped he would
- 35 A: Why didn't you return the book you had borrowed? B: Oh! I remember ..... it a week ago. (Longman)  
a) to returning      b) return      c) to return      d) returning





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 A mind ..... is a type of diagram with lines and circles for organising information so that it is easier to use or remember.  
a) operation      b) process      c) test      d) map
- 2 A hotel room was prepared for each guest of the conference. The synonym of the verb "prepare" is ".....".  
a) arrange      b) halt      c) scatter      d) disorganise
- 3 The company director is expected to make an official ..... about the new branch to the press soon.  
a) speech      b) presentation      c) statement      d) proverb
- 4 People ..... to be happier if they have a successful career and good family relationships.  
a) trend      b) tend      c) pretend      d) attend
- 5 We had to ..... changes to our holiday plans because of urgent financial matters.  
a) make      b) miss      c) lose      d) devise
- 6 The article contains some useful beauty ..... which women should follow.  
a) taps      b) tapes      c) tops      d) tips
- 7 You must use a special cable to ..... the printer to the computer or it won't work well.  
a) catch      b) contact      c) attach      d) comply
- 8 You can say they are identical twins. Even their likes and dislikes are .....  
a) ambitious      b) similar      c) worthwhile      d) mature
- 9 I often meet ..... with my friends at the weekends.  
a) down      b) of      c) by      d) up
- 10 You look great. It ..... like you had a good time on your trip.  
a) sounds      b) views      c) relies      d) depends
- 11 I am extremely ..... to all my teachers for all the help and support they gave me.  
a) efficient      b) grateful      c) doubtful      d) intensive
- 12 People wonder if there is a ..... between illnesses and radioactive waves.  
a) link      b) contact      c) communicating      d) connecting
- 13 We did our best to repair the engine, but in the end, we had to ..... it up as it was.  
a) stay      b) bring      c) give      d) do



- 14 The names of the students in the class were listed in an alphabetical .....  
 a) order                      b) system                      c) request                      d) menu
- 15 The documentary began with a ..... from a battle in the Second World War.  
 a) clap                      b) grip                      c) gap                      d) clip

### Language

- 16 Our teacher refused ..... our questions as we were talking during the lesson.  
 a) to answer                      b) answering  
 c) answer                      d) being answered
- 17 They expect thousands of people ..... Sapporo for the Snow Festival.  
 a) visit                      b) to visit                      c) visiting                      d) to visiting
- 18 If I were you, I'd avoid ..... into the city during the festival.  
 a) travel                      b) to travel                      c) travelling                      d) to travelling
- 19 I really want ..... to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year.  
 a) go                      b) going                      c) to going                      d) to go
- 20 She tried ..... him the terrible truth, but she just couldn't bring herself to do it.  
 a) tell                      b) to tell                      c) telling                      d) to telling
- 21 Gehan forgot ..... her money, so I lent her ten pounds.  
 a) bring                      b) to bringing                      c) bringing                      d) to bring
- 22 Ibrahim was the first one ..... at the office.  
 a) to arrive                      b) arrives                      c) to arriving                      d) arrived
- 23 She offered ..... me to the station in her car.  
 a) to take                      b) taking                      c) took                      d) take
- 24 How about ..... at that festival for our project?  
 a) to looking                      b) looking                      c) to look                      d) looked
- 25 If you can't find the key, try ..... the lock with something else, like a knife or a screwdriver.  
 a) open                      b) to open                      c) to opening                      d) opening
- 26 We spent a very enjoyable evening ..... about old times.  
 a) talking                      b) talk                      c) having talked                      d) to talk
- 27 She can't get used to ..... for such a large company.  
 a) work                      b) working                      c) being work                      d) worked
- 28 It's no good ..... to fix this machine. It's completely broken.  
 a) try                      b) to try                      c) trying                      d) to trying
- 29 Hesham likes ..... a nap in the afternoon.  
 a) to be taken                      b) to taking                      c) to take                      d) take
- 30 Would you please ..... this case into the boot of the car?  
 a) help lift                      b) help to lifting                      c) help me lifting                      d) to help lift





## Writing Skill

## Writing tips

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## A reply to an email

You receive an email from a friend who's trying to help you to study more effectively. Plan a reply to this email.

Hi there,

Thank you for your email about helping me to study more effectively. I understand how to arrange my study sessions following the Pomodoro technique, taking short breaks between my study sessions and then a long one after finishing a certain task such as studying for an important exam. This would benefit me to refresh my energy and enable me to get good results. Have I understood that correctly?

You also advised me to teach what I have studied to another classmate. I've already had a deal with one of my classmates to do that. Moreover, she would also do the same with me. I would explain maths lessons for her and she would explain history lessons for me. Really, I expect this to be very useful for both of us.

Thanks very much for your tips. They have really made a difference in my study and exam results. I think I will do better in the near future.

Talk to you soon.

## A Letter of Application

Write a letter of application for a job as a student welfare officer in your local university.

Include the following information:

- ▶ How you can help other students.
- ▶ What skills you have that will help them.
- ▶ Why you would like this post.

قناة العباقرة ٣  
علي تطبيق Telegram  
رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## Model Letter

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter to apply for the position of student welfare officer. I believe that I am suited to the role because I have good skills to help people feel more positive and enthusiastic. This has been one of my best qualities which made my friends call me 'Positive Energy' for all the support I gave them in their problems.

At school, I did a course in dealing with stressful situations. That's because I wanted to be a psychiatrist, however. I didn't get enough grades to join the Faculty of Medicine. However, I studied psychology in the Faculty of Arts, Cairo University. I like using my free time to help other people. I also do a lot of voluntary work helping in a children's hospital.

I am very excited to apply and I hope you decide to offer me the position. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Mahmoud Ahmed Helmy

## تطبيق الأضواء



ذاكر دروسك الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال  
فيديوهات شرح الدروس و بنك أسئلة الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)







# 1 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

London is the capital of Great Britain. It is situated in the southeast of England on the River Thames and there are lots of bridges across the Thames. The most famous of these bridges is Tower Bridge. The **machinery**<sup>(1)</sup> which **draws up**<sup>(2)</sup> the bridge when a ship passes under it is hidden in the two towers. Near Tower Bridge, on the north bank of the Thames there is the Tower of London. It is a big castle, its oldest part, the White Tower, **dates back**<sup>(3)</sup> to the times of William the Conqueror. Back in history, the tower served as a prison, now it is one of London's main **tourist attractions**<sup>(4)</sup>. Tourists are guided by "Beefeaters" in historic uniforms and the Crown Jewels are on display there.

The London home of the Queen is Buckingham Palace where you can see the "Changing of the Guards". The **coronation**<sup>(5)</sup> of the Kings and Queens takes place in Westminster Abbey. Near this enormous church, there are the Houses of Parliament, the seat of the British government. They consist of a group of buildings, among them St. Stephen's Tower, the famous clock tower housing Big Ben, one of the world's biggest bells. Not far from the Houses of Parliament there is Trafalgar Square with Lord Nelson's Column, **erected**<sup>(6)</sup> in the memory of **Admiral**<sup>(7)</sup> Nelson, who won against the Spanish in the Battle of Trafalgar.

London is also famous for its parks. There is Hyde Park, there is St. James's Park, which is the oldest and there is Regent's Park, which houses the London Zoo. In **former**<sup>(8)</sup> times all the parks were **royal**<sup>(9)</sup> gardens. Apart from **sightseeing**<sup>(10)</sup>, tourists also love shopping in London. You will find the big **stores**<sup>(11)</sup> in Oxford Street and the smaller shops in the little side streets.

## 1 What is Big Ben?

- a) A bell.                      b) A church.                      c) A clock.                      d) A clock tower.

## 2 London is situated .....

- a) in the centre of England                      b) in the southwest of England  
c) in the north of England                      d) in the southeast of England

## 3 What is the river running through London called?

- a) The Danube.                      b) The Thames.                      c) The Seine.                      d) The Nile.

## 4 How many towers has the Tower Bridge got?

- a) One.                      b) Four.                      c) Two.                      d) Three.



(11) محلات تجارية

(7) أميرال/قائد في البحرية (9) ملكي  
(10) زيارة المعالم (8) سابق

(5) تتويج  
(6) مقام

(3) يعود إلى  
(4) موقع سياحي

(1) آلات  
(2) ترفع



- 5 What is the oldest part of the Tower of London?  
 a) White Tower. b) Black Tower.  
 c) Bloody Tower. d) Hyde Park.
- 6 What is the greatest attraction at the Tower of London?  
 a) Wax figures. b) The Crown Jewels.  
 c) Paintings of the Kings and Queens. d) Hyde Park.
- 7 Where does the Queen live?  
 a) In Westminster Abbey. b) In Buckingham Palace.  
 c) In the Houses of Parliament. d) In the White Tower.
- 8 Where is the London Zoo?  
 a) In St. James's Park. b) In Hyde Park.  
 c) In Regent's Park. d) In the White Tower.
- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1 Which of the following are examples of punctuation marks?  
 a) Commas and full stops. b) Dollar and pound signs.  
 c) Plus and minus signs. d) Abbreviations and phonetics.
- 2 ..... can be used in place of a comma, parenthesis, or colon to emphasise the conclusion of a sentence.  
 a) En dash b) Hyphen c) Em dash d) Semicolon
- 3 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?  
 a) Yasser has all the ingredients! minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions.  
 b) Yasser has all the ingredients: minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions.  
 c) Yasser has all the ingredients" minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions."  
 d) Yasser has all the ingredients, minced meat, milk, potatoes, and onions.
- 4 "Moreover, when tourists come to Egypt, they can visit the places of interest."  
 What kind of sentence is the one above? A/An ..... sentence.  
 a) introductory b) topic c) supporting d) closing
- 5 "I've never forgotten this bad experience, and I'd like to advise everyone not to drive when he/she is very tired." The sentence above is .....  
 a) an introduction to a narrative essay  
 b) the final outcome and the message when concluding an essay  
 c) a topic sentence to narrate an incident  
 d) a supporting sentence to persuade the reader to do something
- 6 Which of the following best describes the purpose of a persuasive essay?  
 a) To provide an objective analysis of a topic.  
 b) To entertain the reader with a fictional story.  
 c) To persuade the reader to adopt a particular viewpoint or take a specific action.  
 d) To describe a personal experience or event.



### 3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 The world of work is changing. Technological progress and globalisation are re-shaping the labour market. At the same time, new organisational business models are contributing to the emergence of new forms of work.

- (a) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل سوق العمل. في الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة في ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.
- (b) يتغير عالم العمل حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل سوق العمل. في الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة في ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.
- (c) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تطوير سوق العمل. في الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة في ظهور آليات عمل جديدة.
- (d) عالم العمل يتغير حيث يعمل التقدم التكنولوجي والعولمة على إعادة تشكيل قوة العمل. في الوقت نفسه تساهم نماذج الأعمال الجديدة في ظهور أشكال عمل جديدة.

2 According to the World Economic Forum's report, AI is expected to replace 85 million jobs worldwide by 2025. However, the report says that it will also create 97 million new jobs in that same timeframe.

- (a) وفقًا لتقرير المنتدى الاقتصادي العالمي، من المتوقع أن يحل الذكاء الاصطناعي محل ٨٥ مليون وظيفة في جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥ ومع ذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة في نفس الإطار الزمني.
- (b) وفقًا لتقرير المؤتمر الاقتصادي العالمي، من المتوقع أن يحل الذكاء الاصطناعي محل ٨٥ مليون وظيفة في جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥ ومع ذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة في نفس الإطار المكاني.
- (c) وفقًا لتقرير المنتدى الاقتصادي العالمي، من المتوقع أن يطور الذكاء الاصطناعي ٨٥ مليون وظيفة في جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥ ومع ذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة في نفس الإطار الزمني.
- (d) وفقًا لتقرير المنتدى الاقتصادي العالمي، من المتوقع أن يحل الذكاء الاصطناعي محل ٨٥ مليون وظيفة في جميع أنحاء العالم بحلول عام ٢٠٢٥ وبالإضافة لذلك، يقول التقرير إنه سيخلق أيضًا ٩٧ مليون وظيفة جديدة في نفس الإطار الزمني.

3 A virtual meeting is a form of communication that enables people in different locations to use their internet connected devices to meet in a virtual room. They are used for connecting with family and friends, or in business.

- (a) الاجتماع الافتراضي هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكن الأشخاص في مواقع مختلفة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء في غرفة افتراضية. ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو في العمل.
- (b) الاجتماع الافتراضي هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكن الأشخاص في مواقع متشابهة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء في غرفة افتراضية. ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو في العمل.
- (c) الاجتماع الافتراضي هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكن الأشخاص في مواقع مختلفة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء في غرفة وهمية. ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو في العمل.
- (d) الاجتماع الوهمي هو شكل من أشكال الاتصال يمكن الأشخاص في مواقع مختلفة من استخدام أجهزتهم المتصلة بالإنترنت للالتقاء في غرفة. ويتم استخدامها للتواصل مع العائلة والأصدقاء أو في العمل.



**(B) Choose the correct English translation:**

4 يعتبر التخطيط الجيد للدراسة من أهم الأعمال التي يسعى لها الطلاب المتميزون للحصول على الراحة عند أداء دراستهم ولتوفير كثير من الوقت والجهد للحصول على النجاح والتفوق.

- a) Good study planning is one of the most important tasks that distinguished students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to keep a lot of time and effort to obtain success and excellence.
- b) Good study planning is one of the most important tasks that distinguished students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to save a lot of time and effort to obtain success and excellence.
- c) Good study planning is one of the most important responsibilities that distinguished students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to save a lot of time and effort to refrain success and excellence.
- d) Good study planning is one of the most important tasks that ordinary students seek to obtain comfort when performing their studies and to waste a lot of time and effort to obtain success and excellence.

5 بعد أن أصابه المرض وعد أخى الأكبر بأنه سيتوقف عن التدخين الذى سبب له الضرر لكنه لم يستطع أن يفي بوعد.

- a) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he would stop to smoke, which hurt him, but he could not keep his promise.
- b) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he will stop smoking, which hurt him, but he could not meet his promise.
- c) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he would stop smoking, which hurt him, but he could not keep his promise.
- d) After he fell ill, my eldest brother promised that he would stop to smoke, which hurt him, but he could not break his promise.

6 ما أقبح الحروب! فهي تسبب انهيار البنية التحتية للدول وتشرّد المواطنين وتقتل الأبرياء وتظل نتائجها لسنوات كثيرة قادمة.

- a) How ugly are wars! They cause the destruction of the government's understructure, displace citizens, and kill innocent people. Its results live for many years to come.
- b) How ugly are wars! They cause the collapse of the state's infrastructure, dismiss citizens, and kill innocence people. Its results remain for many forward years.
- c) How ugly wars are! They cause the collapse of the country's downstructure, displace citizens, and kill innocence people. Its results remain for many past years.
- d) How ugly wars are! They cause the collapse of the state's infrastructure, displace citizens, and kill innocent people. Its results remain for many years to come.

**4 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:**

How will Artificial Intelligence and its uses change our life in the future.

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The style of ..... is very important in a museum as it attracts visitors.  
a) sale                      b) propaganda                      c) presentation                      d) ancestors
- 2 My daughter has a weekly karate ..... at the club on Saturdays.  
a) fiction                      b) session                      c) conference                      d) seminar
- 3 The library's only open at ..... times of day, so it wouldn't be open this evening.  
a) certain                      b) sure                      c) common                      d) gradual
- 4 Modern technology has become one of the most important ..... to enhance teaching methods.  
a) imaginations                      b) sections                      c) machines                      d) tools
- 5 Before a ..... meeting, all participants should test the devices and make sure they are comfortable with the major features.  
a) fictional                      b) virtual                      c) verbal                      d) musical
- 6 Doctors believe that pollution can ..... a lot of health problems.  
a) create                      b) apply                      c) employ                      d) sell
- 7 Our house has been much less hot since my father had an air conditioner .....  
a) put                      b) done                      c) installed                      d) made
- 8 My friend sent me a ..... message to say that he would be late for the meeting.  
a) book                      b) click                      c) signal                      d) text
- 9 I advise you ..... smoking.  
a) to start                      b) starting                      c) not to starting                      d) not to start
- 10 How about ..... our teacher about the best way to study English?  
a) asking                      b) ask                      c) to ask                      d) to asking
- 11 The school arranged ..... a new charity this year.  
a) to supporting                      b) supporter                      c) to support                      d) supporting
- 12 Kareem finished ..... his dinner at 6:30.  
a) being eating                      b) eating                      c) to eat                      d) eaten
- 13 I have promised my son ..... him to the zoo after the exams.  
a) taking                      b) to be taken                      c) to taking                      d) to take
- 14 A message to your manager is a kind of a/an .....  
a) formal email                      b) informal email  
c) descriptive essay                      d) narrative essay



► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Whales are the largest animals in the world, even larger than some **species**<sup>(1)</sup> of dinosaurs. **Ironically**<sup>(2)</sup>, whales are among the gentlest **creatures**<sup>(3)</sup> we know. There are people who go through great lengths to help them.

In 1988, when three young whales were trapped in the sea. It was close to winter and the sea had begun to freeze over. Whales require oxygen from the air, so the frozen ice was a great danger as it prevented them from getting any air. Volunteers from all over soon turned up to help these creatures. They cut holes in the ice so as to provide more breathing holes for the whales. This effort was a success although one whale drowned.

Although the whale is very huge, it is not hindered at all by its size when it is in water. Whales have tails that end like **flippers**<sup>(4)</sup>. With just a gentle **flick**<sup>(5)</sup>, it can **propel**<sup>(6)</sup> itself forward. The skin of a whale is so smooth that it does not create any **friction**<sup>(7)</sup> that can slow the whale down. A whale's breathing hole is located on the top of its head, so it can breathe without having to completely push its head out of the water. Whales are protected from the cold seawater by body fat that is called **blubber**<sup>(8)</sup>.

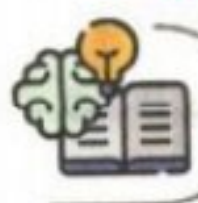
Whales live in the ocean, but in terms of behaviour, they are more similar to humans than fish. They live in family groups and they even travel in groups when they have to **migrate**<sup>(9)</sup> from cooler to warmer waters. The young stay with their parents for as long as fifteen years. Whales are known not to desert the ill or injured members; instead, they **cradle**<sup>(10)</sup> them. Moreover, female whales have very strong **maternal instincts**<sup>(11)</sup>.

15 The best title to the passage is ".....".

- a) Whales and their life
- b) How to save whales
- c) Whales and the different seasons
- d) Whales are big creatures

16 Volunteers helped the three young whales as .....

- a) whales are gentle creatures and they were trapped
- b) winter is near
- c) they wanted to hunt them
- d) it was hot around them, and they were about to die



(11) غرائز أمومية

(9) يهاجر  
(10) يضم

(7) احتكاك  
(8) شحم

(5) هزة  
(6) يدفع

(3) مخلوقات  
(4) زعانف

(1) أنواع  
(2) بشكل ساخر



- 17 By using the word "ironically" in the second sentence, the writer suggests ..... .
- a) it is not true that whales are very gentle
  - b) it is difficult to believe whales are gentle despite their humungous size
  - c) whales may not be as gentle as they look
  - d) whales are definitely the gentlest creatures in the world
- 18 Winter poses such a danger to whales because ..... .
- a) they cannot swim in icy cold water
  - b) whales can drown without sufficient air
  - c) they cannot eat when the weather is too cold
  - d) the water is too cold for them as they are warm-blooded
- 19 Whales can move easily in water because of their ..... .
- a) tail
  - b) flippers
  - c) tail and skin
  - d) tail, skin and breathing hole
- 20 The human qualities of whales are not highlighted by the fact that ..... .
- a) they do not desert the ill or injured members
  - b) they migrate from cooler to warmer waters
  - c) they live in family groups and travel in groups
  - d) the young stay with their parents for almost fifteen years
- 21 The phrase "maternal instincts" in the last paragraph suggests that female whales ..... .
- a) are close to their families and other whales in the group
  - b) strongly believe in living and travelling with their own families
  - c) are very caring towards their young
  - d) tend to leave their young to fend for themselves once they are ready
- 22 The synonym of the word "drown" is ".....".
- a) sink
  - b) float
  - c) drift
  - d) swim

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

It was the beginning of the school holidays and Ramy was looking forward to spending time with his friends from his neighbourhood, playing football and running around the playground. He was very upset when his mother told him that he was going to stay at his grandparents' house as both she and his father were going on a business trip. He had no friends there and had no computer games to play with. Even the television programmes were boring because he and his grandparents had different preferences. However, he had no say in the matter.



Ramy loved his grandparents but being **elderly**<sup>(1)</sup>, they could not take him out or play games with him. His younger sister was not interested in the same things as he was. She only liked to play with her dolls. During the **initial**<sup>(2)</sup> couple of days, Ramy killed time by doing his holiday homework.

One day, he **devised**<sup>(3)</sup> a plan. When his grandparents were taking their **naps**<sup>(4)</sup>, he **sneaked**<sup>(5)</sup> out of the house. He attempted to take a public bus back to his neighbourhood to find his friends. This was a whole new experience for him. However, on the bus ride home, he fell asleep. By the time he woke up, he was in a strange place. **This** worried him. He then borrowed the telephone of a nearby shop to call his grandfather.

An hour later, Ramy's grandfather arrived in a taxi. He was silent throughout the ride back. Ramy was feeling very **guilty**<sup>(6)</sup>. He knew that his **impetuous**<sup>(7)</sup> behaviour must have caused his grandparents a lot of worry. He apologised to his grandparents **profusely**<sup>(8)</sup>. Seeing his **remorse**<sup>(9)</sup>, they decided to give him a second chance and did not report the incident to his parents. Ramy was relieved.

23 The best title to the passage is ".....".

- a) Ramy's adventure at a new place
- b) Ramy's holiday wasn't a success
- c) Ramy's holiday with his grandparents
- d) Ramy's grandparents

24 According to paragraph one, why was Ramy feeling upset?

- a) It was the start of the school holidays.
- b) His parents did not allow him to watch television.
- c) His father was going on a business trip without him.
- d) He had to stay with his grandparents for the holidays.

25 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?

- a) Ramy was an only child.
- b) Ramy loved his grandparents.
- c) Ramy had holiday homework.
- d) Ramy felt bored at his grandparents' house.



(9) تائب الضمير

(7) متهور  
(8) بشدة

(5) تسلل  
(6) منذب

(3) ابتكر  
(4) غفوات

(1) كبير السن  
(2) استهلالي



- 26 Why did Ramy devise a plan?
- a) He wanted to get enough rest.
  - b) He wanted to get out of the house.
  - c) He wanted to irritate his grandparents.
  - d) He wanted to let his grandparents have their afternoon nap.
- 27 Ramy's grandparents proved to be .....
- a) kind and understanding
  - b) cruel
  - c) aggressive
  - d) unpleasant
- 28 What does "This" in paragraph three refer to?
- a) Feeling very grown-up.
  - b) Calling his grandfather.
  - c) Being lost.
  - d) Falling asleep on the bus.
- 29 Why did Ramy feel relieved at the end?
- a) He managed to find his way home.
  - b) His grandfather came to pick him up in a taxi.
  - c) His grandparents were not worried about him.
  - d) His grandparents forgave him for his actions.
- 30 The synonym of the word "remorse" is ".....".
- a) happiness
  - b) regret
  - c) pride
  - d) tolerance

► Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 31 Sooner or later, youth will face huge responsibilities so they should be armed with determination and a strong will. School is the best place to prepare them for these responsibilities.
- (a) عاجلاً أم آجلاً، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات جسيمة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بعزم وإرادة قوية، والمدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.
  - (b) عاجلاً أم آجلاً، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات ضخمة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بالصبر والوصية القوية، والمدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.
  - (c) عاجلاً أم آجلاً، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات هائلة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا مسلحين بالتصميم والمستقبل القوي، والمدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.
  - (d) عاجلاً أم آجلاً، سيواجه الشباب مسئوليات عملاقة، لذا يجب أن يكونوا أصحاب أذرع قوية وعزيمة للمستقبل، المدرسة هي أفضل مكان لإعدادهم لهذه المسئوليات.



- 32 The government pays great attention to developing slums and providing them with the necessary services for a better life. This will surely promote the life of the people living there.

- (a) تدفع الحكومة اهتماماً كبيراً بتطوير المدن وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل، وهذا بالتأكيد سيغير حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.
- (b) تولى الحكومة حضوراً كبيراً بتطوير القرى وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل، وهذا بالتأكيد سيعدل حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.
- (c) تدفع الحكومة عطفاً كبيراً لتطوير العشوائيات وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل، هذا بالتأكيد سيدون حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.
- (d) تولى الحكومة اهتماماً كبيراً بتطوير العشوائيات وإمدادها بالخدمات اللازمة لحياة أفضل، هذا بالتأكيد سيطور حياة الناس الذين يعيشون هناك.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

- 33 رغم كل الصعوبات والأزمات التي واجهتها مصر، إلا أن الوحدة والتعاون اللذين يتميز بهما المجتمع المصري هما ما جعلنا نتغلب عليها كلها.

- a) Despite all the dreams and crises that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that characterise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.
- b) Despite all the difficulties and crises that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that characterise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.
- c) In spite of all the difficulties and crises that Egypt faced, the strength and cooperation that specialise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.
- d) Despite all the difficulties and crisis that Egypt faced, the unity and cooperation that privatise the Egyptian society is what made us overcome them all.

- 34 لم يندم العامل على تركه وظيفته السابقة لأن عمله الجديد فى مصنع الكيماويات سبب له كثيراً من المتاعب الصحية بالرغم من زيادة الأجر.

- a) The worker has regretted to leave his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems despite the increase in wages.
- b) The worker hasn't regretted leaving his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems despite the increase in fares.
- c) The worker hasn't regretted leaving his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems despite the increase in wages.
- d) The worker has regretted leave his previous job because his new job in the chemical factory caused him a lot of health problems although the increase in fees.



► Answer the following questions: (Great Expectations)

35 Why do you think Pip visited Miss Havisham before leaving for London?

.....

.....

.....

.....

36 What's your opinion of the character of Herbert Pocket?

.....

.....

.....

.....

37 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

"After graduation from university, you read a job advertisement of an accountant at one of the national banks. You want to apply for the job."



متنساش تتابعنا ♥



Assess your progress



< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practise more

65 : 84%

Take more exams

85 : 100%

Well done!

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 403





# Let's Get It Done!

## Unit 6

## Objectives

- Reading** : A report on a study into productivity
- Writing** : A reflective text
- Listening** : An interview with an expert on productivity
- Speaking** : Brainstorm and discuss ideas to improve productivity
- Language** : Get something done; Causative verbs
- Life Skills** : Productivity; Self-management



**قناة العباقرة ٣**  
**علي تطبيق Telegram**  
**رابط القناة @taneasnawe**







## A Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

assess (v) (ed)	يقيم/يحلل	productivity (n)	إنتاجية
decline (v) (d) (n)	ينخفض/انخفاض	progress (n) (v) (ed)	تقدم/يتقدم
efficiency (n)	كفاءة	raise (v) (d)	يرفع/يزيد
productive (adj)	منتج	vary (v) (y-ied)	يتغير/يتنوع/ينوع



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف/يهدف	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
analysis (n)	تحليل	research (n)	بحث علمي
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	researcher (n)	باحث
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	response (n)	رد/استجابة
diary (n)	يوميات/مذكرات	rest (n) (v) (ed)	باق/راحة/يرتاح
finding (n)	اكتشاف	result (n)	نتيجة
individual (n) (adj)	فرد/فردى	significantly (adv)	بشكل كبير
level (n)	مستوى	specific (adj)	محدد
manage (v) (d)	يدير/يتحكم في	state (v) (d) (n)	يعلن/يصرح/حالة
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	stress (n)	قلق/توتر
owl (n)	بومة	task (n)	مهمة
period (n)	فترة من الوقت	varying (adj)	مختلف/متنوع
positive (adj)	إيجابي	worry (n) (v) (y-ied)	قلق/يقلق
private (adj)	خاص		



## Workbook Vocabulary

analyse (v) (d)	يحلل	hand (v) (ed)	يُسَلِّم
delay (v) (ed)	يؤجل/يؤخر/تأجيل	honest (adj)	مخلص/صادق/أمين
distracted (adj)	مشتت	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض
effectiveness (n)	فاعلية	procrastinate (v) (d)	يماطل
error (n)	خطأ	procrastination (n)	مماطلة
excuse (n) (v) (d)	عذر/يعذر	result in (v) (ed)	ينتج عنه
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل/يرسب	tidy (v) (ied) (adj)	يرتب/مرتب

## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Some players are ..... over their contracts in order to see how much money they can have out of their clubs.  
a) hurrying      b) procrastinating      c) inspecting      d) aspiring
- If you continue neglecting your work, you won't ..... any success.  
a) achieve      b) relieve      c) lose      d) miss
- Experts say that we all must learn much from bees which are highly ..... workers.  
a) puzzling      b) consuming      c) negative      d) productive
- The Minister of Health ..... that standards at the governmental hospitals were developing.  
a) denied      b) relied      c) stated      d) prospected
- It's very hard to stop smoking when it's been a lifelong .....  
a) habit      b) expectation      c) study      d) custom
- My boss told me that I can trust the secretary – she's completely .....  
a) regular      b) honest      c) deceitful      d) specific
- In a five-star hotel, each guest has a ..... bathroom in his/her room.  
a) public      b) general      c) special      d) private
- The doctor says you'll get the results when the blood ..... is complete.  
a) pattern      b) cell      c) analysis      d) disease
- It is a fact that chess is a game which requires a very high ..... of concentration.  
a) level      b) floor      c) map      d) route
- The decision to build a new factory caused an angry ..... from local residents.  
a) activity      b) response      c) agreement      d) hacking

قناة العباقرة ٣ ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe





## Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	keep a diary	يكتب يوميات بانتظام
draw conclusions	يستخلص استنتاجات	make a study plan	يعد خطة للمذاكرة
in detail	بالتفصيل	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
change to	تغيير لـ	happy with	سعيد بخصوص
come over	يزور	increase in	زيادة فى
effect of	تأثير لـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى

## Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
analyse	يحلل	analysis	تحليل	analysed	تم تحليله
assess	يقيم/يحلل	assessment	تقييم	analytical	تحليلي
distract	يششت	distraction	تششت	assessable	قابل للتقييم
effect	يفعل	effectiveness	فاعلية	distracted	مششت
excuse	يعذر	excuse	عذر	effective	فعال
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	excusable	معذور
repeat	يكرر	repetition	تكرار	interrupted	مقاطع
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع/اختلاف	repetitive	متكرر
				various	مختلف/متنوع

## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
aim	هدف	goal/target	avoidance تجنب
assess	يقيم	analyse/evaluate	ignore/neglect يتجاهل
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interfere/stop	continue/allow يستمر يسمح



mention	يذكر	refer to/report	conceal/neglect	يخفي/يتجاهل
productive	منتج	energetic/fruitful	idle/inactive	كسول/غير نشيط
progress	تقدم	advance/evolution	decline/failure	انخفاض/فشل
state	يعلن	declare/confirm	confuse/hide	يربك/يخفي
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	differ/modify	conform/remain	يتفق/يبقى

## Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Exams are not the only means of assessing a student's ability. The synonym of the verb "assess" is ".....".  
a) evaluate      b) ignore      c) neglect      d) deny
- The ..... of the COVID-19 vaccines is still questioned by some scientists.  
a) effect      b) effectiveness      c) effective      d) affecting
- I asked my friends to come ..... to my house and we'll discuss the problems in class.  
a) with      b) at      c) over      d) on
- The director stated that only one of the head offices will receive a promotion. The antonym of the verb "state" is ".....".  
a) declare      b) confirm      c) advertise      d) hide
- My teachers always advise me to ..... a study plan to get high marks.  
a) make      b) do      c) discard      d) replace
- We had a very productive meeting as we solved many problems. The adjective "productive" can be replaced by .....  
a) consuming      b) fruitful      c) inactive      d) lazy
- There has been an increase ..... the prices of many food products in the last few months.  
a) of      b) by      c) on      d) in
- One of the students continued to interrupt the teacher in the middle of the English class. The verb "interrupt" is the opposite of ".....".  
a) interfere      b) stop      c) continue      d) halt



## Notes on Vocabulary

### delay

يؤجل (ينتظر حتى وقت لاحق لفعل شيء).

*to wait until a later time to do something*

He decided to **delay** his decision until he had seen the full report.

### 1 procrastinate

يماطل (يؤجل فعل شيء يجب فعله)

*to delay doing something that you ought to do*

Don't **procrastinate** – make a start on your assignments as soon as you get them.

### progress

تقدم (عملية التحسن في أداء شيء)

*the process of getting better at doing something*

Assessment tests are evaluating the students' **progress**.

We have made good **progress** towards meeting our objectives.

### advance

تقدم (اكتشاف أو اختراع أو تغيير يجلب التقدم)

*a discovery, invention, or change that brings progress*

There have been a lot of **advances** in scientific knowledge lately.

In recent years, there have been enormous economic and social **advances** in Egypt.

### 2

### breakthrough

إنجاز/اختراق (اكتشاف أو إنجاز هام خاصة ما يحدث بعد فترة طويلة من المحاولة)

*an important discovery or achievement, especially one that happens after a long period of trying*

Scientists have described the discovery as a major **breakthrough**.

The **breakthrough** in the investigation came when police found a stolen car.

### reason

سبب (تبرير لسبب حدث أو القيام بفعل)

*why something happens, or why someone does something*

What was the **reason** for the delay?

I don't know the **reason** why he left his last job.

### explanation

تفسير (مجموعة من الأسباب توضح سبب حدوث شيء)

*a set of reasons that helps you to understand why something happens*

There are various possible **explanations** for climate change.

Is there any **explanation** for his behaviour?

### excuse

عذر (تبرير لشيء فعلته أو كان يجب أن تفعله وغالبًا غير حقيقي أو دقيق)

*a reason that you give to explain why you have done something bad, or haven't done something that you should have done*

She said she couldn't come because she had to work late, but it was just an **excuse**.



**aim = goal**

هدف (شيء تأمل أن تحققه بفعل شيء)

something you hope to achieve by doing something

- ▶ The main **aim** of the plan was to provide employment for local people.
- ▶ The country can achieve its **goal** of reducing poverty by a third.

**target**

4 مستهدف (كمية أو مقدار تريد أن تحققه)

a particular amount or total that you want to achieve

- ▶ The company is hoping to meet its **target** of increasing profits by 10%.

**ambition**

طموح (شيء تأمل أن تحققه في حياتك أو مهنتك في المستقبل)

something that you very much want to achieve in your future life/career

- ▶ Ferial Ashraf achieved her **ambition** of winning a medal in the Olympic Games.

**diary**

يوميات / مذكرات (لتسجيل أحداث أو آراء)

I've put the date of the party down in my **diary**.

**journal**

5 ١ - دورية (يوميات يكتبها شخص هام)  
٢ - دورية (مجلة علمية متخصصة)

The university library buys a copy of all the major science **journals**.

**blog**

مدونة (مذكرات أو تسجيل آراء على أحد مواقع الإنترنت)

The chef has a food **blog** in which she shares recipes, tips, and restaurant reviews.

## قناة العباقرة ٣ ث

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe

## تطبيق الأضواء



اختبر نفسك بأسئلة متنوعة بأكثر من صيغة  
على تطبيق الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
www.aladwaa.com





### Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The Egyptian scientist has several articles published in a scientific ..... called "Science".  
 a) journal                      b) blog                      c) diary                      d) tabloid
- 2 The teachers at some schools complain that many of the students lack .....  
 a) aim                      b) target                      c) ambition                      d) result
- 3 I think the club management will ..... for as long as possible before making a decision.  
 a) delay                      b) procrastinate  
 c) forward                      d) delete
- 4 The salesman gave me a quick ..... of how the vacuum cleaner works before I bought it.  
 a) cause                      b) explanation  
 c) excuse                      d) reason
- 5 With further funding, the research team hope to be able to achieve a .....  
 a) progress                      b) device  
 c) breakthrough                      d) reason
- 6 The doctor decided to ..... my grandfather's surgery for a week for more tests.  
 a) delay                      b) procrastinate  
 c) forward                      d) delete
- 7 The owners of the new club are setting a/an ..... of 2,000 new members.  
 a) aim                      b) target                      c) ambition                      d) result
- 8 Because of being late for work, I made up some ..... about my car breaking down.  
 a) reasons                      b) explanations                      c) excuses                      d) causes
- 9 Regular tests enable the teacher to monitor the ..... of each child.  
 a) progress                      b) advance  
 c) breakthrough                      d) result
- 10 You can post anything on a ..... — a message, link, photo or video clip.  
 a) diary                      b) journal  
 c) research                      d) blog





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The government are making a good ..... in fighting computer crime, but it is still a long way.  
a) breakthrough    b) progress    c) failure    d) respect
- 2 Mother always tells us not to ..... her while she's working in the kitchen.  
a) explain    b) repeat    c) corrupt    d) interrupt
- 3 Like most of my friends, I used to keep a secret ..... when I was a teenager.  
a) blog    b) dairy    c) diary    d) result
- 4 The directors of the different departments will meet ..... to discuss the company's financial problems.  
a) regularly    b) totally    c) accidentally    d) significantly
- 5 The chef said that the cooking time of the cake might ..... slightly depending on your oven.  
a) evolve    b) vary    c) manage    d) develop
- 6 When we got home, we spent the ..... of the day watching TV and relaxing.  
a) change    b) part    c) rest    d) conclusion
- 7 My elder brother is always making ..... for not helping me with my studies.  
a) excuses    b) reasons    c) explanations    d) intentions
- 8 Studies show that if a working environment is pleasant, ..... increases.  
a) stress    b) immobility    c) laziness    d) productivity
- 9 A lot of people ..... their driving test the first time, but they gradually improve.  
a) fail    b) feel    c) fall    d) fill
- 10 Government officials in Turkey ..... the earthquake damage at millions of dollars.  
a) redirected    b) assessed    c) declined    d) delayed
- 11 I was impressed by the ..... with which the new secretary types documents.  
a) analysis    b) deficiency    c) efficiency    d) oppression
- 12 The documentary's ..... of the issues of climate change was very accurate.  
a) treatment    b) analysis    c) result    d) error
- 13 Your mobile phone can make you ....., so it is better to put it away while studying.  
a) analysed    b) concentrated    c) focused    d) distracted
- 14 To achieve good results, we need to perform as a team rather than a group of .....  
a) individuals    b) enemies    c) fans    d) customers



- 15 Some people tend to ..... when it comes to paying their bills.  
a) duplicate      b) procrastinate      c) hibernate      d) recuperate
- 16 The nurse ..... the patient a glass of lemonade and told him to drink and try to calm down.  
a) warned      b) delivered      c) treated      d) handed
- 17 The news announced that the crash ..... in the deaths of 14 passengers.  
a) resulted      b) reasoned      c) persuaded      d) caused
- 18 I only found two minor ..... in the student's essay, so I gave him full marks.  
a) tasks      b) aims      c) errors      d) qualities
- 19 The police officer said that he would ..... some conclusions from the investigations.  
a) refuse      b) draw      c) take      d) give
- 20 The teachers will explain the school's needs ..... detail in their next meeting.  
a) at      b) for      c) of      d) in
- 21 During his expedition to the North Pole, the scientist ..... a diary every day.  
a) read      b) kept      c) lost      d) missed
- 22 Her investigations ultimately ..... فى النهاية led ..... the discovery of the missing documents.  
a) with      b) for      c) in      d) to
- 23 The jacket is available in ..... colours you can choose from.  
a) vary      b) variety      c) various      d) varying
- 24 She didn't mention the economy in her speech. The verb "mention" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
a) lead      b) leave      c) ignore      d) refer to
- 25 We need to tidy the house before the guests arrive. The verb "tidy" is the opposite of the verb ".....".  
a) realise      b) organise      c) disorganise      d) evaporate
- 26 The manager used to encourage his workers' ..... levels. (Longman)  
a) necessity      b) productivity      c) facility      d) equality
- 27 Nowadays, employees are mostly evaluated according to their ....., regardless of the number of years they have worked. (Longman)  
a) importance      b) experience      c) efficiency      d) sufficiency
- 28 The exams questions should ..... in order to cover all aspects of the assessment. (Longman)  
a) decrease      b) include      c) raise      d) vary
- 29 I read an important report on ..... the impact of advertising on children. (Longman)  
a) assessing      b) pressing      c) aggressing      d) blessing
- 30 Energy bills have increased ..... this winter all over the world. (Longman)  
a) significant      b) significance      c) significantly      d) signify



## Causative verbs

تستخدم السببية **Causative** لبيان أننا غالبًا لا نفعل الشيء بأنفسنا ولكن شخصًا آخر يقوم بفعل الشيء لنا وهي قسمان:

١- المبني للمعلوم **Active**

٢- المبني للمجهول **Passive**

## 1 Causative

## Active

make / let / allow / stop / have / get

نستخدم هذه الأفعال لنقول أن شخصًا ما أو موقفًا أجبر أو طلب أو أقنع أو سمح لشخص آخر بفعل شيء أو أوقفه من عمل شيء.

Rule	Example
1 make + <b>obj.</b> مفعول عاقل + inf.	My parents <b>make</b> me <b>tidy</b> my room.
2 let + <b>obj.</b> مفعول عاقل + inf.	Ali <b>lets</b> me <b>use</b> his mobile phone.
3 allow + <b>obj.</b> مفعول عاقل + to + inf.	Ali <b>allows</b> me <b>to use</b> his mobile phone.
4 stop + <b>obj.</b> مفعول عاقل + from + v.ing.	The cold weather <b>stops</b> us <b>from going</b> out.
5 have + <b>obj.</b> مفعول عاقل + Inf.	I <b>have</b> my son <b>clean</b> the room.
6 get + <b>obj.</b> مفعول عاقل + to + Inf.	Ali <b>got</b> his mother <b>to make</b> a cake.

لاحظ

١ عند استخدام **make** يعني إجبار الشخص بفعل شيء وهي تعني **force**.

٢ عند استخدام **let/allow** يعني السماح لشخص بفعل شيء وهي تعني **permission**.

٣ عند استخدام **have** يعني الطلب أو سؤال شخص أن يفعل شيئًا وهي تعني **ask**.

٤ عند استخدام **get** يعني إقناع شخص أن يفعل شيئًا وهي تعني **persuade** وإن كان لها معنى «يجعل» أيضًا بدون إقناع كما في المثال التالي:

► My stomach pain **got** me **to stay** in bed for a week.

## Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My friend allowed me ..... his car twice.  
a) borrow      b) to borrowing      c) borrowing      d) to borrow
- 2 Let's ..... this crossword puzzle together.  
a) did      b) doing      c) do      d) to do
- 3 We'll get the carpenter ..... the broken table.  
a) to fix      b) fixes      c) fixing      d) fix
- 4 My parents always make me ..... my homework before I go out.  
a) to do      b) do      c) doing      d) done
- 5 The rain didn't stop us ..... the trip.  
a) enjoy      b) to enjoy      c) from enjoying      d) enjoyed



## 2 Causative

## Passive

ونبدأ جملة السببية في المجهول بالفاعل (الشخص صاحب الشيء) وتكون القاعدة كالتالي:

Rule	Example
Subj. (صاحب الشيء) الفاعل + have/ get + obj. (مفعول الشيء) + p.p.	I <b>have/ get</b> my room <b>cleaned</b> every day.
	Ali <b>had/ got</b> his car <b>repaired</b> yesterday.
	She <b>will have</b> a ring <b>bought</b> tomorrow.

وتستخدم السببية مع جميع الأزمنة مثل:

I	have/ get	مضارع بسيط
	had/ got	ماض بسيط
	am having	مضارع مستمر
	was having	ماض مستمر
	have had	مضارع تام
	had had	ماض تام
	will have	مستقبل
	can have	فعل ناقص
	must have	فعل ناقص

my car

repaired.

## Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I ..... my hair cut yesterday.  
a) had                      b) have                      c) have had                      d) had had
- We're going to have our new shower .....  
a) install                      b) installed                      c) installing                      d) being installed
- ..... new curtains made lately?  
a) He has had                      b) Has he                      c) Does he have                      d) Has he had
- We always decorate our house. This means .....  
a) someone decorates it for us                      b) it isn't decorated  
c) we decorate it ourselves                      d) we persuade someone to do it
- My neighbours are having their windows changed. This means .....  
a) they do it themselves                      b) someone is doing it for them  
c) their windows are broken                      d) they don't have windows





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I had my friend ..... me to the airport.  
a) to drive      b) driving      c) drive      d) driven
- 2 She grabbed the rail to stop herself .....  
a) from falling      b) falls      c) to fall      d) fall
- 3 The teacher made us ..... the whole exercise.  
a) to rewrite      b) rewritten      c) rewriting      d) rewrite
- 4 His wife got him ..... wasting much money on buying useless things.  
a) stops      b) to stop      c) stop      d) stopping
- 5 I don't allow my guests ..... in my flat.  
a) smoking      b) smoke      c) to smoke      d) to smoking
- 6 I can let you ..... another 10 pounds, but no more.  
a) to have      b) have      c) having      d) be having
- 7 You should have your visa ..... before it expires.  
a) to extend      b) be extended      c) to be extended      d) extended
- 8 I ..... a plumber to fix the dripping tap yesterday.  
a) am having      b) got      c) had      d) made
- 9 My glasses are broken. I'm going to have a new pair ..... this evening.  
a) to make      b) will make      c) made      d) make
- 10 Some people seem to let their kids ..... whatever they like.  
a) have done      b) doing      c) to do      d) do
- 11 We must allow young people ..... independence.  
a) develop      b) to develop      c) developing      d) developed
- 12 My parents always ..... me do my homework before I go out.  
a) get      b) allow      c) make      d) persuade
- 13 Would you approve if I had this article .....?  
a) to be copied      b) copied      c) been copied      d) to copy
- 14 The internet has stopped young people ..... to each other.  
a) talked      b) talk      c) to talking      d) from talking
- 15 If you ask nicely, mum will probably ..... a piece of cake.  
a) make you have      b) let you have      c) get you to have      d) to let you have
- 16 Samy's parents should ..... him study because his grades are poor.  
a) get      b) make      c) allow      d) let
- 17 I have got a technician ..... my washing machine recently.  
a) to check      b) checked      c) check      d) checking
- 18 We had a maid ..... our house last Tuesday. It doesn't need doing today.  
a) to cleaning      b) cleans      c) clean      d) to clean



- 19 Let him ..... the calculator to finish the mathematics problem quickly.  
 a) to use                      b) using                      c) uses                      d) use
- 20 A 24-hour ceasefire وقف إطلاق النار allowed the two armies ..... an agreement.  
 a) to reaching                      b) to reach                      c) reaching                      d) reach
- 21 I ..... my house decorated last week and it looks wonderful.  
 a) had had                      b) got                      c) have                      d) was got
- 22 I'll have the clothes ..... and .....  
 a) wash / iron                      b) washed / ironed  
 c) to wash / to iron                      d) to be washed / ironed
- 23 Are you going to have your shoes polished? - No, I will ..... myself.  
 a) polish them                      b) polish it  
 c) have them polished                      d) get it polished
- 24 What makes him ..... and his eyes ..... all the time?  
 a) coughing/watering                      b) to cough/to water  
 c) cough/water                      d) coughs/water
- 25 The boss made the employees stay for another 3 hours after work. This means he ..... them.  
 a) begged                      b) asked                      c) persuaded                      d) forced
- 26 It is high time we ..... the car serviced.  
 a) had                      b) have                      c) having                      d) to have
- 27 Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a) I allowing myself to get distracted very easily.  
 b) I allow myself to get distracted very easily.  
 c) I allow to myself to get distracted very easily.  
 d) I allow myself getting distracted very easily.
- 28 My father had a barber cut his hair yesterday. This means that .....  
 a) He forced him to do it.                      b) He persuaded him to do it.  
 c) He advised him to do it.                      d) He asked him to do it.
- 29 My uncle trims the trees in his garden every 6 months. This means that .....  
 a) He doesn't trim them himself.                      b) He gets someone to trim them.  
 c) He trims the trees himself.                      d) He has the trees trimmed.
- 30 Ali had his car washed the other day. This means that .....  
 a) Ali washed his car himself.                      b) Someone washed Ali's car.  
 c) Ali's car is still dirty.                      d) Someone will wash Ali's car.
- 31 My mother usually lets my elder sister ..... lunch when she is away. (Longman)  
 a) to make                      b) making                      c) makes                      d) make
- 32 Am I ..... to use this dictionary? (Longman)  
 a) allowed                      b) making                      c) aimed                      d) allowing
- 33 At first, he insisted on his opinion, but I managed to ..... him to change his mind. (Longman)  
 a) allow                      b) get                      c) make                      d) let





## A

## Vocabulary



لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك



## Vocabulary on Reading &amp; Listening Texts

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	impact (n)	تأثير/ اصطدام
alarm (n)	إنذار/ منبه	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده	logic (n)	منطق
anxiety (n)	قلق	manage (v) (d)	ينجح/ يتمكن/ يدير/ يتحكم في
area (n)	منطقة/ مساحة	mean (v)	يقصد/ يعنى
beliefs (n)	معتقدات	naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي
brainstorming (n)	عصف ذهني	option (n)	اختيار
burned out (adj)	منهك/ محترق الأعصاب	overall (adj) (adv)	إجمالي/ شامل/ بصورة شاملة
carry on (v) (yied)	يستمر في	performance (n)	أداء
chaos (n)	فوضى	point (n)	رأي
commuter (n)	مسافر يوميًا إلى العمل	priority (n)	أولوية
cortisol (n)	هرمون الكورتيزول	process (n)	عملية
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ ينتج	quality (n)	نوعية/ جودة
decision (n)	قرار	reflect (v) (ed)	يتأمل/ يفكر مليًا
definition (n)	تعريف	reflection (n)	تفكير/ تأمل
detail (n)	تفصيل	revise (v) (d)	يراجع
discussion (n)	مناقشة	session (n)	جلسة
disturb (v) (ed)	يزعج	stressful (adj)	مجهد
drawback (n)	عيب	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
evaluate (v) (d)	يقيم	take part (v)	يشارك
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	task (n)	مهمة
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/ تجربة/ يجرب	tough (adj)	قاسٍ/ عنيف
forward (adj)	متقدم	unpleasant (adj)	غير سار
habit (n)	عادة	valuable (adj)	قيم/ نفيس
hormone (n)	هرمون	workplace (n)	مكان العمل



## Workbook Vocabulary

absolutely (adv)	بالتأكيد/تماماً	focus (v) (ed)	يركز/تركيز
alternative (n)	بديل	grade (n)	تقدير (اختبار)/صف دراسي
blog (n) (v) (ged)	مدونة/يقوم بالتدوين	massive (adj)	ضخم/شاسع
coach (n)	مدرب	mentally (adv)	عقلياً/نفسياً
copy (v) (y) (ied) (n)	ينسخ/نسخة	Olympic (adj)	أولمبي
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات	Olympics (n)	الدورة الأولمبية
cyclist (n)	راكب الدراجة	performance (n)	أداء
diet (n)	حمية/نظام غذائي	pillow (n)	وسادة/مخدة
ear plug (n)	سدادة الأذن	practice (n)	ممارسة/تدريب
evidence (n)	دليل	refreshed (adj)	مسترخٍ/منتعش
fan (n)	معجب/مشجع	strategy (n)	استراتيجية

## Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The director usually asks interviewees to perform a few simple ..... on the computer just to test their computer skills.  
a) tasks      b) professions      c) positions      d) works
- The new photo ..... of the famous actress was seen by millions of her followers on Twitter.  
a) access      b) session      c) recession      d) recreation
- With the new agricultural project, the government aims at reclaiming a ..... area of desert land.  
a) useless      b) tiny      c) massive      d) strange
- By 7:30, the Cairo metro is jammed with the usual morning ..... going to work and students going to school.  
a) opponents      b) enemies      c) scorers      d) commuters
- The new secretary ..... to type the letter so quickly before the manager left the office.  
a) directed      b) managed      c) passed      d) accepted
- Planning your study well helps you get the best ..... in exams.  
a) grades      b) ranks      c) degrees      d) courses



- 7 A healthy ..... helps build the body's natural defences against diseases.  
a) plight b) right c) fight d) diet
- 8 I couldn't work with the kids around, ..... my concentration.  
a) assisting b) conveying c) disturbing d) riddling
- 9 The fans were so unhappy with the ..... of their team that they left before the match ended.  
a) activation b) performance c) acting d) interference
- 10 My father always says that ..... planning is important to get good exam results.  
a) forward b) backward c) middle d) restarted

### Phrases & Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions

a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	make sure	يتأكد
add to options	يضيف إلى الاختيارات	pros and cons of	مميزات وعيوب
at least	على الأقل	put ... into practice	يضع موضع التنفيذ
come up with ideas	يستنبط/يخرج بأفكار	set world records	يحقق أرقاماً قياسية عالمية
feel comfortable	يشعر بالراحة	share ideas	يشارك أفكاراً
feel my best	أشعر بأفضل حالة	take action	يتخذ إجراء
make a difference	يحدث فرقاً	take/ have break	يأخذ فترة راحة
add to	يضيف إلى	feel about	يشعر بشأن
dislike about	يكره/يمقت بخصوص	focused on	مركز على

### Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition	إضافة	additional	إضافي
evaluate	يقيم	evaluation	تقييم	evaluative	تقييمي
focus	يركز	focus	تركيز	focused focal	مركز مركزي
manage	يدير/يتحكم في	management	إدارة	managerial	إداري
mean	يعني/يقصد	meaning	معنى	meaningful	ذو مغزى/ذو معنى
perform	يؤدي	performance	أداء	performing performative	مؤد أدائي
practise	يمارس/يتمرن	practice	ممارسة/تدريب	practised practical	ممارس عملي
refresh	يسترخي/ينتعش	refreshment	انتعاش	refreshed	منتعش/مسترخ



## Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
alarm	إنذار	alert/warning	quietness هدوء
discussion	مناقشة	argument/debate	agreement/silence اتفاق/صمت
drawback	عيب	disadvantage/demerit	advantage ميزة
evaluate	يقيم	judge/assess	neglect يهمل
focus	يركز	concentrate/aim attention	ignore يتجاهل
manage	يدير	handle/control	mismanage/fail يفشل
overall	شامل	comprehensive	specific محدد
practice	ممارسة/تدريب	training	idleness كسل
priority	أولوية	preference	inferiority دونية

### Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I heard his alarm clock bleeping this morning. The noun "alarm" is similar in meaning to .....  
a) quietness      b) alert      c) bomb      d) space
- I will repair my old bike as the new one will cost at .....1000 pounds.  
a) last      b) least      c) price      d) all
- If you want to reach success, you should stay focused ..... your goals and achievements.  
a) with      b) at      c) in      d) on
- The new architect ..... up with ideas about the design of the new office building.  
a) came      b) went      c) made      d) took
- Doctors should evaluate the patient's condition regularly. The noun of the verb "evaluate" is .....  
a) evaluates      b) evaluated      c) evaluative      d) evaluation
- I can't manage all this work on my own. The antonym of the verb "manage" is .....  
a) handle      b) control      c) fail      d) pass
- I know it's noisy in here, but I'll try to focus. The synonym of the verb "focus" is .....  
a) concentrate      b) ignore      c) relieve      d) repair
- The new project gave him the chance to ..... his ideas into practice.  
a) put      b) do      c) fly      d) design



## Notes on Vocabulary

<p><b>method</b> طريقة (لفعل شيء خاصة المعروفة أو المستخدمة)</p>	<p>You can choose whichever <b>method</b> of payment you prefer.</p>
<p><b>strategy</b> استراتيجية (مجموعة مخططة بعناية من الطرق لتحقيق شيء صعب أو يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً)</p>	<p>The firm is considering a change in its marketing <b>strategy</b>.</p>
<p><b>tactics</b> تكتيكات (طرق مستخدمة لتحقيق ما تريده في لعبة أو مسابقة أو معركة)</p>	<p>The team was discussing <b>tactics</b> for the game.</p>
<p><b>copy</b> ينسخ (يصنع أو ينتج شيئاً مثل شيء آخر)</p>	<p>Many people have tried to <b>copy</b> his paintings.</p>
<p><b>photocopy</b> يصور (مستنداً أو ورقة مكتوبة أو يصور باستخدام آلة)</p>	<p>I'll <b>photocopy</b> the letter and give it to you.</p>
<p><b>forge</b> يزور (ينسخ شيئاً مكتوباً أو مطبوعاً بطريقة غير قانونية)</p>	<p>He <b>forged</b> my signature on the contract.</p>
<p><b>pirate</b> يقرصن (ينسخ شيئاً ويبيعه بطريقة غير قانونية مثل الكتب والأسطوانات وبرامج الكمبيوتر)</p>	<p>A survey suggests that 27% of software in the UK has been <b>pirated</b>.</p>
<p><b>practice</b> ممارسة/اعتياد (على شيء كجزء من العمل أو الحياة اليومية)</p>	<p>The hotel has ended the <b>practice</b> of leaving chocolates in guests' rooms.</p>
<p><b>habit</b> عادة شخصية (شيء تفعله عادة بدون تفكير)</p>	<p>- Biting your nails is a bad <b>habit</b>. - I always go to the same supermarket, out of <b>habit</b>.</p>
<p><b>custom</b> عادة مجتمعية (شيء يفعله الناس كتقليد مقبول في المجتمع)</p>	<p>In Japan, it is the <b>custom</b> to take off your shoes when you enter a house.</p>
<p><b>manage</b> ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضمير أو المصدر + to)</p>	<p>- I don't think I can <b>manage</b> a long walk today. - We <b>managed</b> to persuade him to come with us.</p>
<p><b>succeed (in)</b> ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها noun أو verb + ing)</p>	<p>- Many women were able to <b>succeed</b> in politics. - My brother <b>succeeded</b> in passing his final tests.</p>



### Vocabulary Check point 3

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The test was so hard that only half of the students could ..... in it.

a) manage                                      b) succeed

c) feel    d) pass
- 2 Many families still keep the ancient Egyptian ..... of eating salted fish in Sham El-Nessim.

a) habit                                        b) practice

c) custom                                     d) training
- 3 The criminal ..... to escape by diving into the river and the police couldn't find him.

a) managed                                    b) succeeded

c) failed                                        d) passed
- 4 It is standard medical ..... in Egypt not to tell the patient about potentially fatal illnesses, especially cancer.

a) habit                                        b) practice

c) custom                                     d) training
- 5 The young programmer was accused of ..... games on CDs.

a) preparing                                    b) printing

c) pirating                                      d) forging
- 6 World countries need to devise an effective long-term ..... to deal with climate change.

a) method                                      b) strategy

c) tactic                                         d) play

## تطبيق الأضواء



**تابع مستواك الدراسي من خلال تقارير تقييم الأداء** شاملة جميع المواد.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
www.aladwaa.com



### قناة العباقرة ٣ث

**على تطبيق Telegram**

رابطہ القناة @taneasnawe





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 A fire ..... went off and the supermarket had to be evacuated at once.  
a) arm                      b) weapon                      c) force                      d) alarm
- 2 I think improving public transport is one of the most difficult ..... we face in Egypt, but we are doing better.  
a) tasks                      b) works                      c) professions                      d) expeditions
- 3 The book would look a lot more attractive if the publisher ..... a few colour pictures to the pages.  
a) added                      b) took                      c) removed                      d) developed
- 4 The professor promised us that after the lecture there will be an opportunity for informal .....  
a) right                      b) fight                      c) discussion                      d) dispute
- 5 The total ..... of Egypt is a bit more than one million square kilometres.  
a) region                      b) district                      c) part                      d) area
- 6 There is no difference between the two cars. They look ..... the same.  
a) effectively                      b) awfully                      c) terribly                      d) exactly
- 7 The secretary always keeps a ..... of any official or important documents that she sends off.  
a) part                      b) letter                      c) copy                      d) kind
- 8 Despite the noise made by some journalists, the spokeswoman ..... on her statement as if nothing had happened.  
a) lifted                      b) carried                      c) gave                      d) lasted
- 9 It can be difficult to ..... the effectiveness of a new drug in a pandemic.  
a) evaluate                      b) neglect                      c) defy                      d) doubt
- 10 I sometimes don't understand the ..... of my teenage son's actions.  
a) science                      b) logic                      c) search                      d) art
- 11 Doctors always advise mothers that a balanced ..... is important for a child's development.  
a) right                      b) diet                      c) fight                      d) insight
- 12 The essay is equivalent to 180 words and counts for nearly 10 percent of the ..... marks of the test.  
a) doubtful                      b) flexible                      c) overall                      d) effectible
- 13 Education is a top ..... in the government's policy, so a lot of money is spent on it.  
a) priority                      b) inferiority                      c) ability                      d) possibility
- 14 The band gave a great ..... at the opening ceremony with their songs.  
a) race                      b) performance                      c) affection                      d) reflection
- 15 I felt very ..... after taking a short trip to the great beaches of Sharm El-Sheikh.  
a) refreshed                      b) concerned                      c) depressed                      d) gloomy



- 16 Our football team has changed the ..... after losing four matches and hired a more efficient one.  
a) trainee      b) owner      c) pitch      d) coach
- 17 An ..... is a piece of soft material that you put into your ear to keep out noise or water.  
a) earring      b) ear plug      c) earphone      d) eardrop
- 18 Fish is really the food which makes me feel my ....., so I eat it twice a week.  
a) health      b) best      c) bad      d) better
- 19 Experts say that chlorine الكلور can be added ..... the water to kill bacteria.  
a) for      b) of      c) to      d) at
- 20 The only big drawback with the plan was its high cost. The antonym of the noun "drawback" is .....  
a) plight      b) error      c) disadvantage      d) advantage
- 21 Having a good teacher has made a/an ..... to my daughter's progress at school.  
a) reply      b) effect      c) way      d) difference
- 22 The restaurant is now under new ..... and is making great profits.  
a) manager      b) management      c) managerial      d) managed
- 23 You must get as much practice as possible before the competition.  
The synonym of the word "practice" is .....  
a) training      b) habit      c) custom      d) reply
- 24 The young weightlifting champion ..... a world record in the last championship.  
a) won      b) set      c) saved      d) reflected
- 25 After graduation, all my brother's efforts were focused ..... getting a suitable job.  
a) by      b) of      c) with      d) on
- 26 How do you usually ..... ideas amongst a group of friends to get more information about something?  
a) rise      b) mind      c) brainstorm      d) storm (Longman)
- 27 "You are doing well," my coach said, "I'm sure you will carry ..... achieving more success!"  
a) in      b) on      c) of      d) at (Longman)
- 28 When you make a change to the way you work, you need to ..... its advantages and disadvantages first.  
a) concentrate      b) fabricate      c) evaluate      d) regulate (Longman)
- 29 What are the pros and ..... of social networking websites?  
a) canes      b) cans      c) coins      d) cons (Longman)
- 30 Pollution has a serious impact on the weather. "Impact" here is similar in meaning to .....  
a) importance      b) influence      c) affect      d) cause (Longman)



## Causative (Extra points)

١ السببية في السؤال (نستخدم **do/does** للمضارع البسيط و **did** للماضي البسيط).

٢ السببية في النفي (نستخدم **don't/doesn't** للمضارع البسيط و **didn't** للماضي البسيط).

► **Did** you have your meal **prepared**?

- No, I **didn't** (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

وبالنسبة لباقي الأزمنة فعند النفي أو السؤال نستخدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص الذي تم استخدامه في تكوين الجملة المثبتة.

► **Are** you **going to have** your tooth pulled out by the dentist?

► **Have** you **had** your car checked at the garage?

► **Will** you **have** your house painted?

٣ نستخدم **get** بدلاً من **have** ليفيد الصعوبة أحياناً.

► He finally **got** the seats **booked**.

٤ يمكن القول إن **have** تعامل مثلها مثل أي فعل في الجملة فلو جاءت مكان فعل مضاف إليه **ing** فإننا نستخدم **having** وإن جاءت مكان فعل في المصدر نستخدم **have** وإن كان الفعل مسبقاً بـ **to** فإننا نستخدم **to have** مثل:

► She **likes cleaning** her house.

► She likes **having** her house **cleaned**.

► She'd **like (likes) to clean** her house.

► She'd like (likes) **to have** her house **cleaned**.

٥ هناك استخدام غير رسمي للفعل **have + object + v + ing** وهو يعبر عن تجربة معينة و كان الفعل مستمراً في الحدوث وليس بسيطاً مثل:

► It's lovely to **have the children playing** in the garden again.

► I looked up and found we **had water dripping** through the ceiling.

٦ ليس دائماً استخدام غير العاقل بعد **have/get** في المجهول ولكن يمكن استخدام العاقل أيضاً إذا وافق المعنى مثل:

► If you don't get out of my house, I'll **have you arrested**.

٧ هناك تعبيرات مثل **have difficulty / a hard time / a trouble** مع وجود **have** قبلها، إلا أنه يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافاً إليه **ing** وليس لها علاقة بالسببية.

► I **have difficulty finding** a flat nowadays.

٨ إذا حول الفعل **make** (الذي يأتي بعده المصدر) إلى المجهول فإننا نستخدم **to** قبل المصدر.

► He **made me clean** the flat on my own.

► I was **made to clean** the flat.

٩ يمكن استخدام الفعل **stop** بدون **from** بنفس المعنى وهو يوقف شخصاً عن عمل شيء.

► I couldn't **stop** her crying.

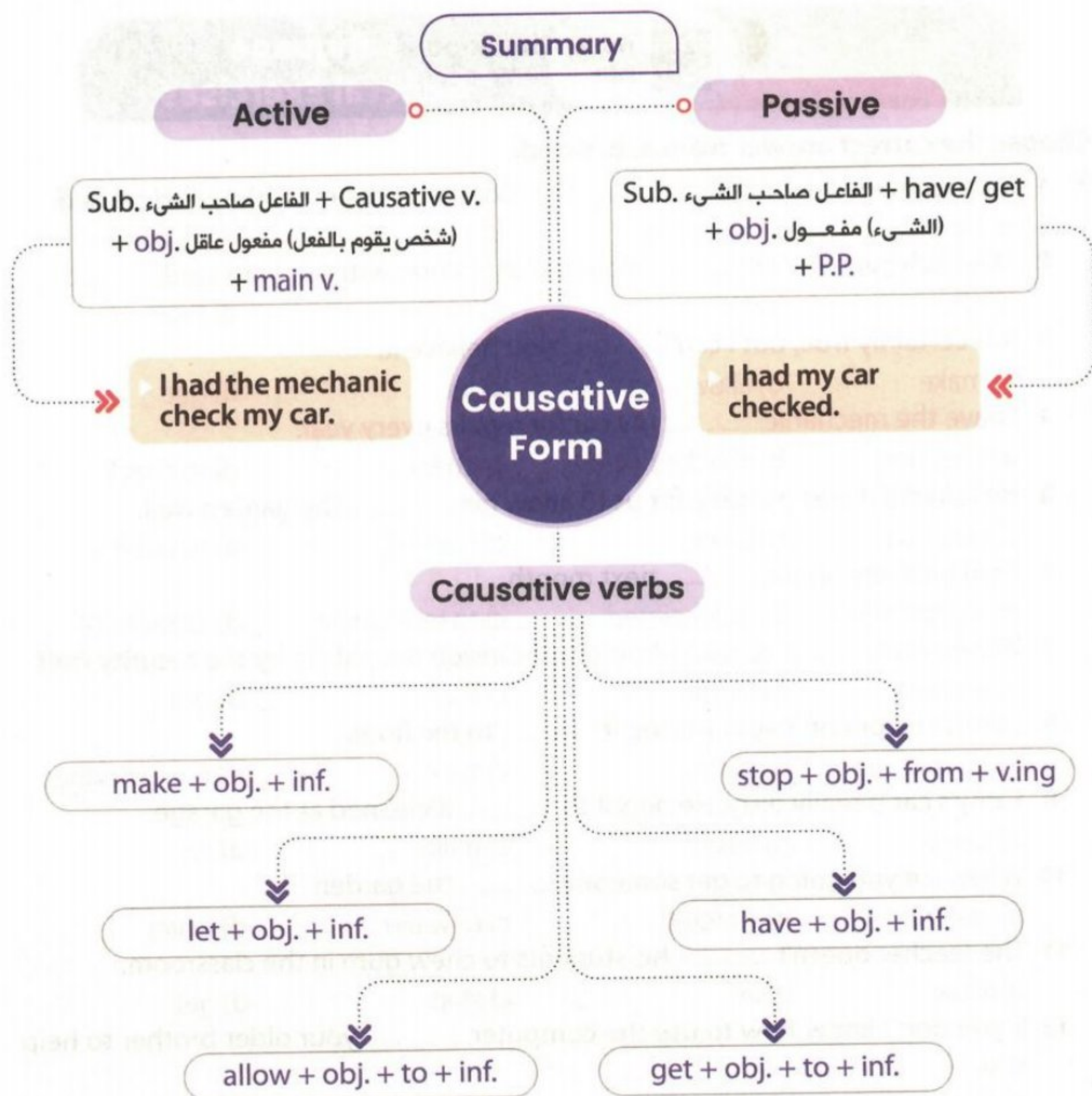
١٠ يمكن استخدام السببية في جملة الأمر.

► **Have** your car **serviced** by tomorrow.









### Examples

- ▶ Our teacher **made** us **check** our writing before we finished the exam.
- ▶ Our teacher **let** us **check** our writing before we finished the exam.
- ▶ Our teacher **allowed** us **to check** our writing before we finished the exam.
- ▶ Our teacher **got** us **to check** our writing before we finished the exam.
- ▶ Our teacher **had** us **check** our writing before we finished the exam.
- ▶ Our teacher didn't **stop** us **from checking** our writing before we finished the exam.





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Mother made her children ..... the room after the mess they had caused.  
a) clean                      b) cleaning                      c) to clean                      d) cleaned
- 2 The bodyguard won't ..... you into the centre without your card.  
a) get                      b) let                      c) make                      d) have
- 3 It is certainly true, but I can't ..... you believe it.  
a) make                      b) allow                      c) let                      d) get
- 4 I have the mechanic ..... my car for repairs every year.  
a) checking                      b) checked                      c) check                      d) to check
- 5 He asked if it was possible for us to allow him ..... the garden wall.  
a) painting                      b) paint                      c) painted                      d) to paint
- 6 I will have my house ..... next month.  
a) redecorating                      b) redecorated                      c) to redecorate                      d) redecorate
- 7 We weren't ..... to take photographs inside the palace by the security staff.  
a) allowed                      b) made                      c) had                      d) got
- 8 Lay the carpet on paper to stop it ..... to the floor.  
a) to stick                      b) stuck                      c) stick                      d) from sticking
- 9 Fathy's car is really dirty. He ought to ..... it cleaned at the garage.  
a) cause                      b) have                      c) make                      d) let
- 10 When are you going to get someone ..... the garden?  
a) watering                      b) watered                      c) to water                      d) water
- 11 The teacher doesn't ..... his students to chew gum in the classroom.  
a) allow                      b) let                      c) stop                      d) get
- 12 If you don't know how to use the computer, ..... your older brother to help you.  
a) stop                      b) have                      c) let                      d) get
- 13 Mona ..... her older sister ..... her clothes yesterday.  
a) got / to iron                      b) have / iron                      c) lets / iron                      d) made / to iron
- 14 The boss ..... him ..... a suit, though he wanted to wear sportswear.  
a) got / wearing                      b) makes / wear                      c) made / wear                      d) had / worn
- 15 Ali ..... his credit card ..... two days ago.  
a) made / to change                      b) get / to change  
c) has / change                      d) had / changed
- 16 The manager ..... his secretary ..... the documents.  
a) made / typed                      b) had / type                      c) got / type                      d) had / typed



- 17 It is a very profitable business, but I couldn't ..... him ..... up his mind to start it.  
 a) let/to make      b) get/to make      c) want/to make      d) made/make
- 18 We were made ..... still with our arms folded.  
 a) sat      b) to sitting      c) sitting      d) to sit
- 19 Dad ..... me use his car all weekends. It was great.  
 a) let      b) got      c) lets      d) makes
- 20 I couldn't stop myself .....  
 a) from laugh      b) to laugh      c) laughing      d) laugh
- 21 Teachers at my school don't allow ..... during exams.  
 a) cheating      b) to cheat      c) to cheating      d) cheated
- 22 Mum does not ..... me ..... sweets very often.  
 a) get / have      b) make / to have      c) get / to have      d) let / have
- 23 He ..... his leg broken when he fell off his horse.  
 a) had      b) was having      c) was getting      d) had had
- 24 Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a) He let me use his computer now.  
 b) He was allowed me to use his computer yesterday.  
 c) I was allowed to use his computer yesterday.  
 d) I was allowing to use his computer yesterday.
- 25 Which of the following isn't correctly structured?  
 a) He prevented me from interfering in his personal affairs.  
 b) He stopped me from interfering in his personal affairs.  
 c) He stopped me interfering in his personal affairs.  
 d) He stopped me of interfering in his personal affairs.
- 26 Children need to be taught not to talk back to their parents. This means that children ..... (Longman)  
 a) weren't allowed to discuss issues.      b) weren't allowed to say anything.  
 c) shouldn't be allowed to reply rudely.      d) were asked to stop making noise.
- 27 I was too busy, so I ..... my sister ..... my room. (Longman)  
 a) had / to tidy      b) allowed / tidy      c) made / to tidy      d) got / to tidy
- 28 I let my friend use my mobile phone. This means that I ..... them to use it. (Longman)  
 a) made      b) allowed      c) forced      d) suggested
- 29 My mother was busy, so she got lunch ..... by my brother. (Longman)  
 a) made      b) be made      c) making      d) to make
- 30 Cruel managers usually ..... less work done. (Longman)  
 a) prevent      b) get      c) let      d) allow





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

## Vocabulary

- 1 Mother complains that we leave the kitchen in a state of ..... whenever we wanted to cook something.  
a) relaxation      b) peace      c) fight      d) chaos
- 2 If the ..... light in the car goes on, you should fasten your seat belt.  
a) alarm      b) arm      c) disarm      d) armour
- 3 The police officer hasn't found any ..... that links the young criminal to the murder.  
a) remark      b) signal      c) evidence      d) note
- 4 Some food factories add special chemicals to their food to give taste and colour. The adjective of the verb "add" is .....  
a) adds      b) adding      c) addition      d) additional
- 5 One of the most important ways to ..... the symptoms أعراض of diabetes is leading a healthy lifestyle.  
a) direct      b) manage      c) vanish      d) display
- 6 The writer's work as a diplomat gave him ..... which he used in his novels.  
a) experiments      b) experts      c) experiences      d) excuses
- 7 After this long and tiring day, I'll be asleep as soon as my head hits the .....  
a) pillow      b) chair      c) case      d) safe
- 8 The ..... was about to win the race when his bicycle broke down.  
a) driver      b) cyclist      c) motorist      d) assistant
- 9 The government has developed a successful ..... for dealing with regional unemployment.  
a) step      b) foundation      c) strategy      d) style
- 10 The new computer company was accused of ..... some software and selling them under different names.  
a) deploying      b) photocopying      c) forging      d) pirating
- 11 Josef returned from a vacation on the North Coast feeling relaxed and .....  
a) refresh      b) refreshment      c) refreshed      d) refreshes
- 12 Some animals give off a/an ..... smell that keeps attackers away.  
a) inflected      b) cured      c) pleasant      d) unpleasant
- 13 ..... medicine can cure many problems, but not diseases like cancer.  
a) Nuclear      b) Radiology      c) Alternative      d) Excessive



- 14 The police have arrested a number of people who took ..... in the criminal attacks.  
a) part                      b) place                      c) piece                      d) apart
- 15 Ferial Ashraf became a/an ..... champion after winning the gold medal in Tokyo 2020.  
a) inventive                      b) reflective                      c) defective                      d) Olympic

### Language

- 16 You should ..... him explain why he made such a mistake.  
a) allow                      b) get                      c) have                      d) have got
- 17 My parents have the flat ..... every two months.  
a) been cleaned                      b) to clean                      c) clean                      d) cleaned
- 18 My father blamed me for not letting the gardener ..... the trees.  
a) trim                      b) not trim                      c) to trim                      d) trimming
- 19 Students should be allowed ..... their own decisions.  
a) making                      b) to make                      c) making                      d) to be made
- 20 The father has got his children ..... a company of their own.  
a) find                      b) to find                      c) to found                      d) founding
- 21 I liked him because he made me ..... a lot.  
a) laughed                      b) to laugh                      c) laughing                      d) laugh
- 22 Ramy was absent this morning because he had his tooth .....  
a) filled                      b) to be filled                      c) to fill                      d) filling
- 23 When he reached the hotel, he had his luggage ..... to his room by the porter.  
a) to take                      b) taken                      c) take                      d) been taken
- 24 When I was young, I used to have all my clothes ..... by my mother.  
a) ironed                      b) ironing                      c) to iron                      d) iron
- 25 We had someone ..... our new flat last year and it still looks like new.  
a) painted                      b) to paint                      c) paint                      d) painting
- 26 The grass in my garden is too long. I should get a gardener ..... it.  
a) to cutting                      b) cutting                      c) cut                      d) to cut
- 27 Mohamed's house is very hot. He needs to get a technician ..... an air conditioner.  
a) to install                      b) install                      c) installed                      d) installing
- 28 My boss let me leave early. This means that he ..... to leave early.  
a) forced me                      b) gave me permission                      c) persuaded me                      d) asked me
- 29 She tries hard to finish her homework on time, but she can never ..... it all done.  
a) has                      b) gets                      c) let                      d) get
- 30 Someone stole my bike last night. Have you ever .....?  
a) had stolen your bike                      b) stolen your bike  
c) had your bike stolen                      d) been stolen your bike





## Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات  
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

## Writing tips

Plan a text about your experiences using the two study tips from Lesson 3. Include the following:

- What you did.
- How you feel about the experiences from your position now.
- The positive effects of using each study tips (if any).
- The negative effects of using each study tips (if any).
- How helpful you found using the study tips overall.
- Plan a text about your experiences of using two study tips from experts.

## Model comment

I had a problem raising my productivity and studying harder than before. My friends had three study tips for doing so. However, I decided to choose two of them to try. The first one was having a study plan. The second was revising with a friend before exams.

Firstly, I made a perfect study plan for my school subjects. I decided to study only two subjects after school. I also set a definite time for each subject. This really had a fantastic effect on my study and marks. My teachers were pleased with my progress at school.

Secondly, I decided to revise with my close friend before exams. We studied together at my house as I had my own room whereas he shared his room with his younger brother. Although we did well on the first day, we started wasting a lot of time chatting and surfing the internet on the second and third days. That's why we both decided to stop it and I began to revise alone.

In conclusion, I got a lot of benefits from these study tips. They really boosted my progress at school. I got full marks in three exams and better marks in the others. I am really grateful to my friends who gave me this useful advice and I suggest that every student try these study tips to increase their productivity and change their studies for the better.





1 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

People thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming. Since the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, **physicians**<sup>(1)</sup>, **psychologists**<sup>(2)</sup> and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer **granted**<sup>(3)</sup>, or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are **wish-fulfilling**<sup>(4)</sup> dreams; They occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called **nightmares**<sup>(5)</sup>. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something.

Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably **related to**<sup>(6)</sup> dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the persons or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or **disappointment**<sup>(7)</sup> which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All that dream does is to give them an **outlet**<sup>(8)</sup>.

- 1 Changes in the brain take place ..... .  
a) by day                      b) at night                      c) during sleep                      d) during meals
- 2 ..... is a terrible dream.  
a) A day-dream                      b) A nightmare  
c) A dreamer                      d) Dreamland
- 3 The underlined word "**them**" refers to ..... .  
a) feelings                      b) dreams                      c) nightmares                      d) dreamers
- 4 Who have been studying dreams since the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century?  
a) Scientists.                      b) Psychologists.  
c) Physicians.                      d) All of these.



(7) خيبة أمل  
(8) متنفس

(5) كوابيس  
(6) متعلقة بـ

(3) منح  
(4) تحقيق

(1) طبيب  
(2) طبيب نفسي



- 5 When do people usually have nightmares?
- a) When they are disappointed and sad about something.
  - b) When they are happy and delighted about something.
  - c) When they are about to die.
  - d) When they are cold and hungry.

- 6 The antonym of the word "disappointment" is ".....".
- a) displeasure
  - b) frustration
  - c) satisfaction
  - d) distress

- 7 The brain changes in dreaming are .....
- a) still a mystery
  - b) known by all
  - c) known by physicians-psychologists and other scientists
  - d) easy to understand

- 8 While dreaming, people are .....
- a) the same
  - b) different
  - c) alike
  - d) similar

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
- a) My pin number has two 5's. It's easy to remember.
  - b) My pin number has two 5s. It's easy to remember.
  - c) My pin number has two 5s'. It's easy to remember.
  - d) My pin number has two 5s!. It's easy to remember.

- 2 The ..... is a great achievement. It was nationalised during .....

- a) Suez canal, Nasser's Reign
- b) Suez Canal, nasser's Reign
- c) Suez Canal, Nasser's reign
- d) suez Canal, Nasser's reign

- 3 Choose the essay topic that best suits this statement.

"It's important that we always follow traffic rules to reduce the chances of accidents, keep pedestrians safe, and prevent traffic jams."

- a) How to prevent highway traffic jams.
- b) How to ensure pedestrian safety.
- c) Ways to prevent traffic accidents.
- d) Advantages of following traffic rules.



4 On the one hand, technology has rendered us great services, but on the other hand, it has caused us some problems. The underlined expressions show .....

- a) relation of time
- b) comparing two different facts
- c) expressing condition
- d) forming compound sentence

5 Pollution damages the environment. Moreover, it causes many serious health problems. The underlined word shows .....

- a) similarity between two different facts
- b) comparing two different facts
- c) expressing addition
- d) expressing cause and result

6 Which of these is not a type of essay?

- a) A narrative essay.
- b) A descriptive essay.
- c) A persuasive essay.
- d) A personal essay.

3 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Having a lot of work to do can lead to procrastination and stop all productivity. Therefore, students should learn how to prioritise tasks they should be working on.

- (a) قد يؤدي القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المماطلة وإيقاف الإنتاجية بالكامل؛ لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التي يجب أن يعملوا عليها.
- (b) قد يؤدي القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المعالجة وإيقاف الإنتاجية بالكامل؛ لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التي يجب أن يعملوا عليها.
- (c) قد يؤدي القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المماطلة وإيقاف الإنتاج بالكامل؛ لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التي يجب أن يعملوا عليها.
- (d) قد يؤدي القيام بالكثير من العمل إلى المماطلة وزيادة الإنتاجية بالكامل؛ لذلك يجب أن يتعلم الطلاب كيفية تحديد أولويات المهام التي يجب أن يعملوا عليها.

2 Motivation is what energizes, and controls behaviour. Motivated employees will retain a high level of innovation while producing higher-quality work at a higher level of efficiency.

- (a) الدافع هو ما يثبط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المحبطون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالي الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.
- (b) الدافع هو ما ينشط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المتحمسون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالي الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.
- (c) الدافع هو ما ينشط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالي الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.
- (d) الدافع هو ما يثبط ويسيطر على السلوك حيث سيحتفظ الموظفون المتحمسون بمستوى عالٍ من الابتكار مع إنتاج عمل عالي الجودة بمستوى أعلى من الكفاءة.



3 Worrying about exams is normal. You need some level of worry or stress to motivate you to study. However, too much stress can limit your motivation and stop you from performing at your best.

- (a) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر مميّز فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتحفيزك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يزيد من دوافعك ويمنعك من الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.
- (b) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر غير طبيعي فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتعويدك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يحد من دوافعك ويمنعك من الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.
- (c) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر طبيعي فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتحفيزك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يزيد من دوافعك ويدفعك إلى الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.
- (d) القلق بشأن الامتحانات أمر طبيعي فأنت بحاجة إلى مستوى معين من القلق أو التوتر لتحفيزك على الدراسة ومع ذلك، فإن الكثير من التوتر يمكن أن يحد من دوافعك ويمنعك من الأداء بأفضل ما لديك.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

4 إن التعليم الفني هو مستقبل مصر في الفترة القادمة في ظل التنمية التي تشهدها الدولة المصرية؛ لذا تقوم وزارة التربية والتعليم بإنشاء عدد من المدارس التكنولوجية في جميع المجالات.

- a) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the coming period in shade of the development witnessed by the Egyptian state. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.
- b) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the coming period in light of the development witnessed by the Egyptian state. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.
- c) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the coming period in light of the development driven by the Egyptian state. Therefore, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.
- d) Technical education is the future of Egypt in the past period in shadow of the development witnessed by the Egyptian state. In addition, the Ministry of Education is establishing a number of technology schools in all fields.

5 تؤدي الرياضة إلى تقوية العلاقات بين أفراد المجتمع، فمن يمارسون الرياضة يعتادون على الالتقاء بشكل منتظم مما يوطد العلاقات بينهم.

- a) Sports strengthen relations between organs of society. Those who practise sports are accustomed to meeting regularly, that strengthens the relationship between them.
- b) Sports strengthen relations between members of society. Those who practise sports are accustomed to meeting gradually, that strengthens the relationship between them.
- c) Sports strengthen relations between members of society. Those who practise sports are accustomed to meeting regularly, which strengthens the relationship between them.
- d) Sports strengthen relations between organs of society. Those who practise sports are obliged to meeting regularly, which strengthens the relationship between them.



6 تختلف أسباب السعادة من شخص لآخر، فالبعض يجدها في جمع المال، وآخرون يجدونها في مساعدة الآخرين والتغلب على لحظات الفشل.

- a) The reasons of happiness different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.
- b) The reasons for happiness different from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.
- c) The causes for happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in saving money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.
- d) The causes of happiness differ from one person to another, some find it in collecting money and others find it in helping others and overcoming moments of failure.

4 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:

"The ways the society can fight bullying"

قناة العباقرة ٣

علي تطبيق Telegram

رابط القناة @taneasnawe



I used more than 4 new vocabulary.

I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence.

I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation.





► Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 There is a growing ..... at the increase in internet crimes such as phishing in Egypt.  
a) arm                      b) relief                      c) alarm                      d) excitement
- 2 The judge told the lawyers that all the evidence should be carefully .....  
a) duplicated              b) dictated                      c) ignored                      d) evaluated
- 3 The film's central ..... is the relationship between poverty and crime.  
a) ignorance              b) focus                      c) project                      d) reference
- 4 One of the drawbacks of some vaccines is that they must be stored at a very low temperature. The synonym of "drawback" is ".....".  
a) disadvantage              b) advantage                      c) relaxation                      d) benefit
- 5 If you want to stay in this job, you'll need to get your ..... up.  
a) reality                      b) productivity                      c) similarity                      d) possibility
- 6 The water samples will be ..... for the presence of polluting chemicals.  
a) conducted              b) infected                      c) delayed                      d) analysed
- 7 I told my daughter to stop ..... and start studying quickly.  
a) deleting                      b) procrastinating                      c) analysing                      d) inspection
- 8 According to the latest reports, car sales have ..... sharply due to the great rise in prices.  
a) inclined                      b) retried                      c) declined                      d) respired
- 9 The security guard doesn't let anyone ..... the building without an invitation.  
a) entering                      b) to enter                      c) enter                      d) entered
- 10 Hala always ..... her brothers tidy their beds.  
a) gets                      b) makes                      c) got                      d) allows
- 11 We ..... the painter ..... our house every year.  
a) have / paint                      b) make / to paint  
c) let / paint                      d) get / to painted
- 12 He'll stop his brother ..... TV because he wastes a lot of time.  
a) watching                      b) to watch  
c) watch                      d) from watching
- 13 Pop music ..... her nervous.  
a) lets                      b) has                      c) makes                      d) allows



14 The words 'despite' and 'conversely' are both words that can be used .....

- a) as the first word when you begin an article
- b) as the last word to end an article
- c) in a paragraph only once
- d) in a paragraph to show contrast

► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

When we are young, we learn that tigers and sharks are dangerous animals. We might be scared of them because they are big and powerful. As we get older, however, we learn that sometimes the most dangerous animals are also the smallest animals. In fact, the animal that kills the most people every year is one that you have probably killed yourself many times: the **mosquito**<sup>(1)</sup>.

While it may seem that all mosquitoes are **biters**<sup>(2)</sup>, this is not actually the case. Male mosquitoes eat plant **nectar**<sup>(3)</sup>. On the other hand, female mosquitoes feed on animal blood. They need this blood to live and produce eggs. When a female mosquito bites a human being, it **transmits**<sup>(4)</sup> a small amount of **saliva**<sup>(5)</sup> into the blood. This saliva may or may not contain a deadly disease. The result of the bite can be as **minor**<sup>(6)</sup> as an **itchy bump**<sup>(7)</sup> or as serious as death.

Because a mosquito can bite many people in the course of its life, it can carry diseases from one person to another very easily. Two of the most deadly diseases carried by mosquitoes are malaria and yellow fever.

Many scientists are working on safer and better ways to kill mosquitoes, but so far, there is no sure way to protect everyone in the world from their deadly bites. Mosquito nets can be placed over beds to protect people against being bitten. Mosquitoes have many natural enemies like bats, birds, **dragonflies**<sup>(8)</sup>, and certain kinds of fish. Mosquitoes can be killed with poisons or sprays. Even though these sprays kill mosquitoes, they may also harm other plants or animals.

Although mosquitoes may not seem as **scary**<sup>(9)</sup> as larger, more powerful animals, they are far more dangerous to human beings. But things are changing. It is highly likely that one day scientists will find a way to keep everyone safe from mosquitoes and the diseases they carry.

15 Male mosquitoes and female mosquitoes have .....

- a) the same eating habits
- b) different eating habits
- c) a large family
- d) nothing to bite with



(9) مخيف

(7) حكة  
(8) اليعسوب

(5) لعاب  
(6) أقل أهمية

(3) رحيق  
(4) تنقل

(1) بعوضة  
(2) لادغات



- 16 To cut down the numbers of mosquitoes in any area, we may .....
- a) have cats and dogs
  - b) wear masks in order not to be bitten
  - c) bring bats, birds, dragonflies, and certain kinds of fish
  - d) have poisons at all places
- 17 "This saliva may or may not contain a deadly disease." This means .....
- a) the bite is completely safe
  - b) the bite is completely dangerous
  - c) there is no danger in the bite
  - d) the bite can cause death
- 18 "Minor" most nearly means .....
- a) insignificant      b) deadly
  - c) frustrating      d) dangerous
- 19 If you get sick with malaria or yellow fever, your chances of survival are .....
- a) ordinary      b) terrible
  - c) good      d) excellent
- 20 Dragonflies might reduce the number of flies in a given area because dragonflies .....
- a) cannot be killed by poisons or sprays
  - b) work together with mosquitoes
  - c) kill mosquitoes
  - d) attract bats
- 21 Which of the following isn't true?
- a) Mosquito nets can protect from deadly mosquitoes.
  - b) Poisons and sprays can protect from deadly mosquitoes.
  - c) The mosquito's natural enemies can protect from deadly mosquitoes.
  - d) There is a perfect solution to the mosquito problem.
- 22 The best title to the passage is ".....".
- a) Although it's very small, the mosquito is very scary
  - b) The mosquito isn't very dangerous
  - c) The dangers of tigers and sharks
  - d) How to kill mosquitoes



► Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Amr was waiting for his father. His father was **supposed**<sup>(1)</sup> to be there at 11 o'clock **promptly**<sup>(2)</sup> but it was already half past 11 and yet there was still no sign of him. Amr was getting worried and impatient. He was supposed to arrive at his piano teacher's house at half past eleven. He paced the ground while looking at his watch time and again. To worsen things, he had forgotten to bring along his mobile phone today so there was no way for him to contact his father as well. Finally, after another fifteen minutes, Amr's father arrived. He looked all **flustered**<sup>(3)</sup> and upset.

"What happened, Dad? Why are you late today?"

Amr's father started telling him about the car accident that he was in. On his way to pick Amr up, a car had carelessly driven into his **lane**<sup>(4)</sup> and knocked into his car. It was a good thing that his father was not driving at a high speed, otherwise the **consequences**<sup>(5)</sup> would have been far worse than the **scratched**<sup>(6)</sup> paintwork that his car had suffered. His father had to spend some time getting down the other driver's license details and taking photographs of the damage as evidence. However, the accident had put his father in a bad mood because his car was **relatively**<sup>(7)</sup> new.

By the time Amr arrived at his piano teacher's house, he was already half an hour late for his lesson. His mother had called up his teacher earlier to explain the situation so she was not angry with him for being late.

A week after the accident, Amr's father told the family that the driver of the other car offered to pay for the damages of his car. Amr's father was **relieved**<sup>(8)</sup> that the matter was resolved so easily.

23 The best title to the passage is ".....".

- a) The car accident delayed Amr's piano lesson.
- b) Amr's piano lesson
- c) Amr's father's accident
- d) The piano teacher's forgiveness

24 According to paragraph one, why did Amr pace the ground?

- a) He was looking at his watch.
- b) He was getting impatient.
- c) He was going for his piano lesson.
- d) He had forgotten to bring his mobile phone.



(7) نسبياً  
(8) مرتاح

(5) نتائج  
(6) مخدوش

(3) مرتبك  
(4) حارة مرورية

(1) مفترض  
(2) فوراً



- 25 Which one of the following pieces of information is true?
- a) Amr's father was upset because he was late.
  - b) Amr was worried because he had lost his mobile phone.
  - c) Amr waited 45 minutes for his father.
  - d) Amr was impatient because his father had been in an accident.
- 26 The car was ..... as a result of the accident.
- a) dented
  - b) injured
  - c) knocked
  - d) scratched
- 27 Amr's father was especially upset with the accident because .....
- a) his car was new
  - b) his car looked ugly now
  - c) the other driver had been careless
  - d) the other driver had not been injured
- 28 How was the matter resolved?
- a) Amr's father painted the car himself.
  - b) Amr's father repaired the car himself.
  - c) The other driver repaired the damaged car.
  - d) The other driver paid for the repairs of the damaged car.
- 29 The piano teacher was not angry with Amr for being late because .....
- a) she was so patient and kind
  - b) Amr's father phoned and calmed her
  - c) Amr's mother explained the situation to her
  - d) Amr was always late so she was accustomed to it
- 30 The antonym of the word "flustered" is ".....".
- a) agitated
  - b) nervous
  - c) disturbed
  - d) calm

► Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 31 There is a lack of modern facilities in rural areas, but the clean air and the peace of mind are beneficial for the health. However, many people leave them for many reasons such as finding jobs.
- (a) هناك نقص في التسهيلات الحديثة في المناطق القروية، لكن الهواء النظيف والسلام مفيدان للصحة ولذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.
  - (b) هناك عجز في التسهيلات المعاصرة في الريف، لكن الهواء النقي وسلامة العقل مفيدان للصحة ومع ذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.
  - (c) هناك حرمان في المرافق الجديدة في مناطق الفلاحين، لكن الهواء النظيف وسلامة المخ مفيدان للصحة ومع ذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.
  - (d) هناك نقص في المرافق الحديثة في المناطق الريفية، لكن الهواء النقي وراحة البال مفيدان للصحة ومع ذلك، يتركها كثير من الناس لأسباب عديدة مثل العثور على وظائف.



32 Egypt has a rich history and culture dating back thousands of years, starting with the Pharaonic culture, then Christianity and Islam. Egypt is among the earliest civilisations.

- (a) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية مستمرة إلى آلاف السنين، بدءاً بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.
- (b) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة غنية يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءاً بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.
- (c) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وثقافة مميزة يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءاً بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أبكر الحضارات.
- (d) تتمتع مصر بتاريخ وتقدم غنى يعود تاريخهما إلى آلاف السنين، بدءاً بالثقافة الفرعونية ثم المسيحية والإسلام فمصر من أقدم الحضارات.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

33 ينتج عن الأمية انتشار البطالة والجهل والمرض لذلك تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لمحو هذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

- (a) Illiteracy results in the spread of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to eliminate this serious problem.
- (b) Illiteracy comes from the spread of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to promote this serious problem.
- (c) Illiteracy results in the spread of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to decrease this serious problem.
- (d) Illiteracy brings back the publication of unemployment, ignorance and disease. Therefore, the government is making great efforts to debate this serious problem.

34 الأعمال الدرامية ليست مجرد وسيلة للترفيه، ولكن لها دوراً مهماً في تشكيل وعي المجتمع، وحفظ قيمه وأهمها حب الوطن.

- (a) Dramatic actions are just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in shaping the deforming of society, and preserving its values, the most important of which is patriotism.
- (b) Dramas are not just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in shaping the awareness of society, and rescuing its values, the most important of which is patriotism.
- (c) Dramas are not just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in shaping the awareness of society, and preserving its values, the most important of which is patriotism.
- (d) Dramatic actions are not just a means of entertainment, but they have an important role in figuring the awareness of society, and preserving its values, the most important of which is patriotism.



**Answer the following questions: (Great Expectations)**

35 Why do you think Joe called Pip 'Sir'?

```
*****
*****
*****
*****
*****
```

**36** Do you think that Mr Jaggers is someone who Pip can trust? Why?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**37 Write six (6) lines on the following topic:**

"An embarrassing experience that you had at school."

[illegible]

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين  
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 403



### Assess your progress

★★★★★

**< 50%**

**Study again**

50 : 64%

**Practise more**

65 : 84%

**Take more exams**

85 : 100%

**Well done!**



### Key Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة/مقدرة	level (n)	مستوى
actually (adj)	بالفعل	option (n)	اختيار
alternatively (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	solution (n)	حل
avoid (v) (d)	يتجنب	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
blame (v) (d) (n)	يلوم/لوم	task (n)	مهمة
brain (n)	مخ	tough (adj)	قاسٍ/عنيف
conflict (n)	صراع	unrealistic (adj)	غير واقعي
efficiency (n)	كفاءة	virtual (adj)	افتراضي
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	whereas (conj)	بينما
inevitable (adj)	محتوم/لا مفر منه		

### Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

for a short period	لفترة قصيرة	make changes to	يجري تغييرات على
get better at	يتحسن في	miss school	يفوته الحضور للمدرسة
in the first place	في المقام الأول	take part in	يشارك في
compared to	مقارنة بـ	react to	يقوم برد فعل لـ
concentrate on	يركز على	talk about	يتحدث عن



## 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

## Vocabulary &amp; Language

- 1 We should not take ..... on those who harm us. We should respect the law.  
a) revenge      b) average      c) care      d) advantage
- 2 Have you ..... spending the weekend in the country?  
a) considered      b) thought      c) decided      d) agreed
- 3 Be careful, you must ..... making such mistakes.  
a) enjoy      b) avoid      c) refuse      d) intend
- 4 We really need to increase our ..... if we want to meet our objectives.  
a) identity      b) facility      c) equality      d) productivity
- 5 Let's look ..... new ways of working.  
a) on      b) into      c) to      d) back
- 6 Can you ..... your screen so I can see what the problem is, please?  
a) share      b) mute      c) install      d) join
- 7 If I want to catch ..... with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend.  
a) on      b) up      c) into      d) in
- 8 Nowadays, employers are more interested in ..... than experience.  
a) sufficiency      b) efficiency      c) fluency      d) transparency
- 9 I completely ..... him; he seems to be offensive and his behaviour is very strange.  
a) suspect      b) respect      c) connect      d) inspect
- 10 I felt really .....; I got low marks although I studied hard.  
a) amused      b) fascinated      c) frustrated      d) educated
- 11 Police work is physically demanding and stressful. "Stressful" is an antonym for ".....".  
a) depressing      b) interested      c) tiring      d) relaxing
- 12 Some people get ..... easily and lose concentration in noisy places.  
a) distracted      b) attracted      c) connected      d) rejected
- 13 Some people find it strange to ..... a virtual meeting; they prefer face-to-face contact.  
a) leave      b) go      c) join      d) enroll
- 14 We have achieved ..... progress in the field of communication, which we are proud of.  
a) debatable      b) forgettable      c) removable      d) remarkable
- 15 The lecturer spoke about the ..... effects of mental health problems.  
a) negative      b) positive      c) talkative      d) possessive



- 16 The generous businessman has ..... a lot of money for charitable organisations.  
a) risen      b) arisen      c) raised      d) aroused
- 17 The journalist's ..... made the athlete so angry that he left the press conference.  
a) production      b) interruption      c) infection      d) injection
- 18 The police investigator still has no ..... that the young man is the killer; he needs to find clear evidence.  
a) proof      b) roof      c) doubt      d) refusal
- 19 You have enabled me to solve the problem. Thanks a lot ..... your help!  
a) to      b) about      c) for      d) with
- 20 Computer games have a bad ..... on children's health.  
a) increase      b) impact      c) reason      d) level
- 21 She is wasteful; she spent her big ..... of money on unimportant items.  
a) share      b) chair      c) cheer      d) check
- 22 The meeting is in .....; it hasn't finished yet.  
a) advance      b) addition      c) progress      d) short
- 23 In your opinion, what ..... to an increase in students' productivity levels?  
a) hopes      b) leads      c) wants      d) results
- 24 Our ..... of students' surveys resulted in some interesting conclusions.  
a) analysis      b) analyses      c) analytic      d) analyst
- 25 Companies are keen to hold ..... the employees who have made more and more progress.  
a) down      b) back      c) on to      d) off
- 26 You shouldn't be ..... of others' success and should try to emulate them instead.  
a) hopeless      b) careless      c) envious      d) jealous
- 27 Unfortunately, they stopped .....; it is clear that they can't hear us.  
a) to responding      b) respond      c) to respond      d) responding
- 28 This winter is terribly cold; we need to have an AC .....  
a) appeared      b) invented      c) installed      d) instilled
- 29 My parents ..... me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV.  
a) stop      b) get      c) tell      d) make
- 30 We ..... our project done last night so now we can relax.  
a) get      b) got      c) allow      d) make
- 31 I hope ..... the biology exam; I'm so worried.  
a) will pass      b) pass      c) to pass      d) passing
- 32 I remember ..... this man in the club a year ago.  
a) seeing      b) to see      c) had seen      d) to seeing
- 33 Don't forget ..... off the computer when you've finished with it.  
a) switching      b) switch      c) to switch      d) to switching



- 34 I am going to have a new washing machine .....  
 a) made                      b) installed                      c) instilled                      d) done
- 35 Turn the camera ..... I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum.  
 a) down                      b) off                      c) on                      d) up
- 36 I really regret ..... to smoke when I was young; my lungs are in terrible condition.  
 a) I will start                      b) to start                      c) starting                      d) to starting
- 37 I stopped ..... the news and looked at my friend in surprise; he had unexpectedly returned from abroad.  
 a) to read                      b) from reading                      c) reading                      d) read
- 38 We should look up to old people. The phrasal verb "look up to" means to .....  
 a) ignore                      b) help                      c) detest                      d) respect
- 39 How can we bring about a change in the bad behaviour of some young people who abuse the internet? "Bring about" here means ".....".  
 a) disappear                      b) cause                      c) delete                      d) appear
- 40 My car broke down again. I will ..... a mechanic to repair it.  
 a) have                      b) let                      c) get                      d) make
- 41 You frustrated me; you let me .....  
 a) down                      b) off                      c) on                      d) at
- 42 ..... spending the summer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh?  
 a) I suggest                      b) Let's  
 c) Have you considered                      d) Why don't you
- 43 I recommend she ..... that report for further information.  
 a) has read                      b) read                      c) reading                      d) to reading
- 44 Why don't you go to the theatre with us today? This shows .....  
 a) inquiry                      b) blame                      c) regret                      d) suggestion
- 45 I blame you for making noise; you ..... that.  
 a) ought to have done                      b) shouldn't have done  
 c) should do                      d) mustn't have done
- 46 I ..... reading adventure stories; they appeal to me so much!  
 a) decide                      b) plan                      c) consider                      d) dislike
- 47 Would you like ..... in collecting money for the new hospital?  
 a) share                      b) to share                      c) sharing                      d) to sharing
- 48 She hopes ..... an air hostess when she grows up.  
 a) she was                      b) she would be                      c) will be                      d) to be
- 49 My father usually ..... us ..... video games in our spare time so we don't harm our eyes.  
 a) discourages / from playing                      b) discourages / to play  
 c) encourages / to play                      d) instructs / to play
- 50 I am looking ..... a dictionary to look ..... the difficult word.  
 a) out / up                      b) after / for                      c) up / for                      d) for / up



- 51 I thought my friend would back me ....., but he ..... me down.  
 a) up / break      b) in / let      c) up / let      d) after / shut
- 52 My car ..... out of oil and ..... down on Cairo-Alexandria desert road.  
 a) looked / broke      b) ran / broke      c) found / fell      d) ran / break
- 53 I plan ..... the summer holidays in Alexandria. I enjoy ..... a nice time with my friends there.  
 a) to spend / having      b) will spend / having  
 c) spend / to have      d) spending / have

### Writing

- 54 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?  
 a) Mona, who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.  
 b) Mona who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.  
 c) Mona; who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.  
 d) Mona; who was the first to offer help was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
- 55 Which of the following sentences is correct to end the following paragraph?  
 We all agree that money is very important in our life. It enables us to lead a better life. We can buy most of what we need and pay for all the services we enjoy. Yet, money can be the root of evil in life if it is used badly. In addition, we can't buy all things with money; for example, money can't bring happiness. ....  
 a) To sum up, money is the best way to achieve your goals as well as having a more comfortable life.  
 b) Totally, we can say that money is the cause of our happiness.  
 c) First of all, we need to know why we need money and how to spend it on doing useful things in life.  
 d) In conclusion, money is important, but it is not everything in our life. It can't be a means to get all that you want.
- 56 Which of these transitions is used to show the result of something?  
 a) Personally,      b) Whilst      c) Due to      d) Consequently,
- 57 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?  
 a) "Look out behind you Tamer!" Amani yelled.  
 b) Look out behind you, Tamer!" Amani yelled.  
 c) "Look out behind you, Tamer?" Amani yelled.  
 d) "Look out behind you, tamer!" amani yelled.
- 58 On the one hand, I'd like a job that pays more, but on the other hand, I enjoy the work I'm doing at the moment because it's in the field I like most. The underlined expressions .....  
 a) show a comparison of two different facts  
 b) show a similarity between two different facts  
 c) express addition  
 d) express purpose



59 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?

- a) Kamal, don't forget to bring your activity book next time please
- b) What you're doing is really strange?
- c) "I'm going to take a five-day holiday to prepare for my sister's wedding next Thursday," said Amin.
- d) As soon as she s finished doing her homework, she'll watch television.

60 In an informal email, you can conclude it with .....

- a) Bye
- b) See you later
- c) a and b
- d) Yours sincerely

2 Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (WB)

Productivity: Tips from business leaders. The country's top business people have to make big decisions and juggle several priorities every day. We interviewed some of them to discover what tricks they use to increase their productivity.

The number one strategy that was mentioned by all of them was the ability to prioritise tasks according to what is most important. This involves a continuous process of deciding what is and isn't essential as you add new things to your 'to-do' list. The more you practise prioritising tasks, the easier it becomes and the more efficient it will make you.

Another time-consuming thing for business leaders is decision-making. Making decisions takes a lot of mental effort and this can lead to 'decision fatigue', which can cause burnout. It increases your productivity if you can save your mental energy for the bigger decisions by reducing the smaller ones.

Many of the most productive people realise how easy it is to get distracted. In order to stay focused, they keep a 'distraction list'. When a new thought or idea comes into their heads, they write it down and continue with what they were doing. When they have finished the task, they revisit the list.

The final trick from our interviewees is simple but highly effective. In order to raise your productivity levels, you should exercise your mind and your body. It has been suggested that physical activity can improve our levels of concentration and creativity. So, if you are trying to find a solution to something, identify the problem and then go for a walk or do some sport. You may discover the solution!

There are lots of strategies to choose from to increase your productivity. Our advice would be to experiment with different ones to find out what works best for you.

61 You should reduce the decisions you make to .....

- a) juggle several priorities
- b) exercise your mind and body
- c) avoid bearing responsibilities
- d) keep mental health and avoid burnout



- 62 According to the passage, there are a lot of strategies to ..... .  
 a) enjoy free time b) decrease consumption  
 c) raise productivity d) imitate successful people
- 63 It's essential to prioritise tasks. The antonym of "essential" is ".....".  
 a) significant b) unimportant  
 c) urgent d) reliable
- 64 The main idea of the passage is how to ..... .  
 a) avoid distraction b) increase productivity  
 c) identify a problem d) prioritise tasks
- 65 The most popular strategy mentioned in the article is ..... .  
 a) prioritising tasks according to their importance  
 b) having a "to-do list"  
 c) avoiding distraction  
 d) making big decisions
- 66 According to the article, what is meant by decision fatigue?  
 a) The state of being unable to make simple decisions.  
 b) Difficulty in making a good decision because of the number of decisions one needs to take.  
 c) Difficulty in making a good decision because of lack of efficiency.  
 d) The state of being unable to bear responsibility.
- 67 If you are trying to find a solution to a problem, ..... .  
 a) prioritise tasks  
 b) postpone dealing with that problem  
 c) identify the problem and refresh yourself  
 d) go for a walk and do some sport
- 68 The underlined word "This" in the second paragraph refers to ..... .  
 a) carrying out tasks b) acting upon useful tips  
 c) the ability to prioritise tasks d) practising sport

### 3 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- 1 A lot of people worked from home during the COVID-19 pandemic. Many employees say this has increased their efficiency and saved time and effort.
- (a) عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول العديد من العلماء إن هذا زاد من رفاهيتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.  
 (b) عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول العديد من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.  
 (c) عمل الكثير من الناس من المنزل بعد جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول العديد من أصحاب العمل إن هذا زاد من نشاط الموظفين ووفر الوقت والجهد.  
 (d) أقام الكثير من الناس في المنزل خلال جائحة كوفيد - ١٩، ويقول القليل من الموظفين إن هذا زاد من كفاءتهم ووفر الوقت والجهد.



- 2 Productivity is one of the most necessary qualities useful citizens should have. It enables them to share effectively in development projects as well as in most fields of work.

- (a) تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.
- (b) تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم المؤهلات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفعالية في خطط التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.
- (c) تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها أي مواطن، فهي تمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات الاستثمار وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.
- (d) تعتبر جودة الإنتاج من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطن المصري، فهي تمكنه من المشاركة بفعالية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

**Choose the correct English translation:**

- 3 في رأيي، يجب على المعلمين والوالدين الاهتمام بالصحة العقلية ومهارات إدارة الوقت، وهذه المهارات ضرورية لتعزيز تحصيل الطلاب ومساعدتهم على تحقيق كل طموحاتهم في الحياة.

- (a) In general, teachers and parents should draw people's attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them fulfill all their aspirations in life.
- (b) In conclusion, teachers and parents should pay attention to healthy food and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them attain all their ambitions in life.
- (c) In my opinion, teachers and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management skills. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them fulfill all their aspirations in life.
- (d) In my opinion, scientists and parents should pay attention to mental health and time-management scales. These skills are necessary to enhance students' achievement and help them attain all their ambitions in life.

- 4 تولى الحكومة المصرية اهتمامًا عظيمًا لتحسين معيشة المواطنين في كل أنحاء مصر وخاصة الريف والعشوائيات، وتعتبر مبادرة حياة كريمة خير دليل على ذلك.

- (a) The Egyptian organisations pay great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all cities of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
- (b) The Egyptian government pays great intention to improving the lives of employees in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the experiment for a Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
- (c) The Egyptian government pays great attention to moving the lives of citizens in upper Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.
- (d) The Egyptian government pays great attention to improving the lives of citizens in all parts of Egypt, especially the countryside and slums, and the Decent Life Initiative is the best proof of that.





# Great Expectations

**Novel**



## Introduction

### (A) The Writer

Dickens was born on February 7, 1812 in Portsmouth, on the southern coast of England. His father, John Dickens, was a **clerk** موظف who dreamed of becoming rich. But the family's financial situation had grown worse because John Dickens used to spend money **wastefully** بإسراف. Consequently, John was sent to prison for debt in 1824, when Charles was just 12 years old.

After his father's imprisonment, Charles Dickens left school to work in a factory. After a few months Dickens's father was **released** أطلق سراحه from prison and Charles was allowed to go back to school. At fifteen his formal education ended and he found employment as an office boy. From 1830 he worked as a clerk in the **courts** المحاكم and afterwards as a newspaper reporter.

Despite his lack of formal education, he edited a weekly journal for 20 years, wrote 15 novels, hundreds of short stories and non-fiction articles. He usually argued for children's rights, education, and other social reforms. Charles Dickens died on June 9, 1870.

### (B) The Novel (Great Expectations)

**Great Expectations** was first published serially in All the Year Round in 1860–61 and issued in book form in 1861. The classic novel was one of its author's greatest critical and popular successes. It tells the coming of age of the orphan Pip while also addressing such issues as **social class** الطبقة الاجتماعية and **human worth** قيمة الإنسان.

### (C) Summary of the Plot

Pip (Philip Pirrip) **narrates** يحكي the tale from an **unspecified** غير محدد time in the future. He grows up in a village, where he lives with his sister and her husband, the blacksmith Joe Gargery. While visiting his family members' **graves** قبور, the young Pip **encounters** يقابل Abel Magwitch, an escaped **convict** مدان. Pip brings him food and a file, but the fugitive and another criminal are soon caught. Later Pip is requested to pay visits to Miss Havisham, a woman driven half-mad years earlier by her lover's departure on their wedding day. Living with Miss Havisham is her adopted daughter, Estella, whom she is teaching to **torment** يعذب men with her beauty. Pip later falls in love with Estella,



who does not return his affection. He grows increasingly ashamed of his **humble** متواضع background and hopes to become a gentleman, in part to win over Estella. However, he is disappointed when he instead becomes Joe's **apprentice** متدرب/ صبي حرفة.

Several years later, a lawyer named Mr Jaggers appears and informs Pip that an unknown **benefactor** فاعل خير has made it possible for him to go to London for an education; Pip believes that the money is from Miss Havisham. Once in London, Pip is taught to be a gentleman by Matthew Pocket and his son Herbert, the latter of whom Pip met years earlier at Miss Havisham's house. Also receiving instruction is the **slow-witted** متبلد العقل and unlikable Bentley Drummle.

The increasingly **snobbish** مغرور Pip is later horrified to discover that his mysterious benefactor is Magwitch. Not only is Magwitch in danger of being arrested, Pip's **social standing** موقف اجتماعي is also threatened. Pip reveals the situation to Herbert, and it is decided that Magwitch and Pip should leave England. Before departing, Pip visits Miss Havisham's house, where he **confronts** يواجه Miss Havisham for letting him believe she was his **patron** راع. He also **confesses** يعترف his love to Estella, who rejects him. Knowing that Drummle is pursuing her, Pip warns her about him, but she announces that she plans to marry him. Pip makes several startling discoveries, notably that Magwitch is Estella's father and that Compeyson was Miss Havisham's lover. He also grows close to Magwitch, whom he comes to **respect** يحترم.

As Pip and Magwitch attempt to leave London by a boat, the police and Compeyson arrive. The two convicts end up fighting in the Thames, and only Magwitch **surfaces** يظهر على السطح. The injured Magwitch is arrested, convicted, and Pip falls seriously ill. Joe arrives and nurses Pip back to health. Joe also informs him that Miss Havisham has died. After Joe leaves, Pip discovers that Joe has paid all of his **bills** فواتير. Pip later accepts a job offer at the Cairo branch of Herbert's firm, and he enjoys a simple but content life. After more than 11 years, he returns to England and visits the place where Miss Havisham's house once stood. There he encounters Estella, who is now a **widow** أرملة. As they leave, Pip takes her hand, believing that they will not **part** يفترق again.



# Characters





## Key Vocabulary

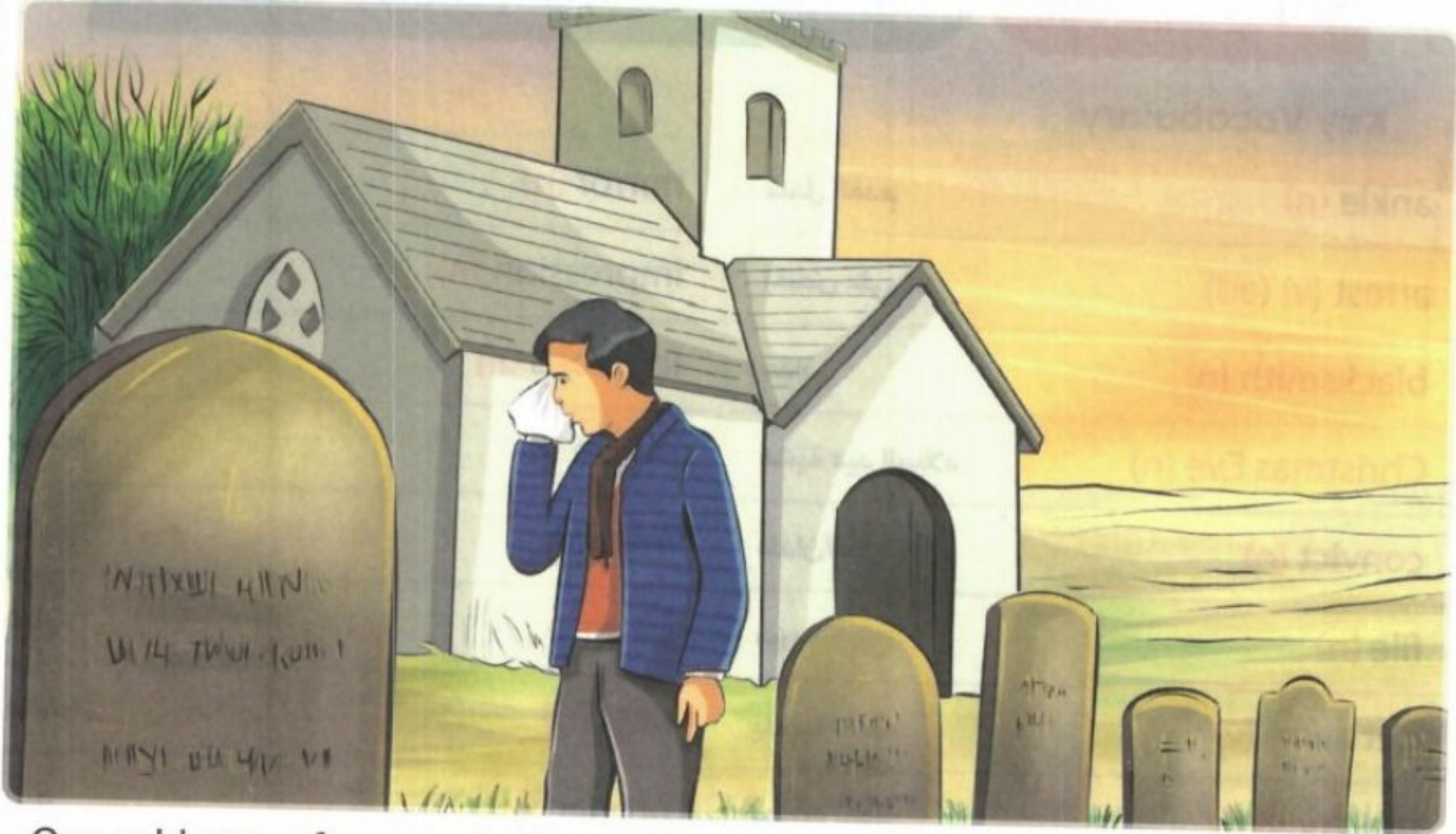
ankle (n)	كاحل القدم	horror (n)	رعب/فزع
arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	impression (n)	انطباع
blacksmith (n)	حداد	leg-irons (n)	أغلال قدم
Christmas Eve (n)	عشية عيد الميلاد	marsh (n)	مستنقع
convict (n)	مُدان/سجين	missing	مفقود
file (n)	مبرد	mist (n)	ضباب
get away (v)	يهرب	nuts (n)	مكسرات
grab (v) (ed)	يمسك بقوة	orphan (n)	يتيم
graveyard (n)	مقبرة	pie (n)	فطيرة
grumpy (adj)	شديد الغضب	set off (v)	يبدأ رحلة/يتجه إلى
guilty (adj)	مذنب	take off (v)	يخلع
handcuffs (n)	أغلال/قيود	warning (n)	تحذير

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

as usual	كالمعتاد	got my breath back	استعدت أنفاسي (هدأت)
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	I could run no more	لم أتمكن من الركض أكثر من ذلك
feel guilty about	يشعر بالذنب بشأن	jumped out of my skin	خرجت من جلدي (تعبير يدل على الخوف الكبير)
complain about	يشكو من	sorry for	حزين من أجل
point to	يشير إلى	walk towards	يمشي في اتجاه



## Reading Text



One cold, grey afternoon in the middle of winter, a small boy sat alone near the **marshes**<sup>(1)</sup>.

He was crying.

That small boy was me, Philip Pirrip. As my name was difficult to say when I was small, my name became Pip. I was crying because it was **Christmas Eve**<sup>(2)</sup>, and I was an **orphan**<sup>(3)</sup> – my parents were dead, and so were five of my brothers and sisters. This happened when I was very young, so I did not remember them.

I had lived with my sister and her husband, Joe Gargery, for most of my life. Joe was the village **blacksmith**<sup>(4)</sup> and Mrs Joe was twenty years older than me. She was tall and thin and liked to complain about me; she was often angry, but Joe was my friend.

On this grey afternoon, when I was about seven years old, I had walked down to the **graveyard**<sup>(5)</sup> at the edge of the village. I sat by my parents' grave as the afternoon light slowly disappeared. The marshes nearby became dark and frightening.

I was going to leave and go home when a terrible voice shouted 'Quiet!'

Then a man appeared from behind a grave. I nearly **jumped out of my skin**<sup>(6)</sup>!

'What's your name, boy?' he shouted, walking slowly towards me.

'Pip, sir.'

'Show me where you live!' said the man.



(5) مقبرة  
(6) خرجت من جلدي

(3) يتيم  
(4) حداد

(1) مستنقعات  
(2) عشية عيد الميلاد



I pointed to my village, not far away.

'Who do you live with?'

'My sister, sir – Mrs Joe Gargery – she's the wife of Joe Gargery, the blacksmith, sir.'

'A blacksmith!'

The man looked down and I saw his **leg-irons**<sup>(1)</sup>. Then I noticed his old grey clothes and his thin dirty face. He was shaking.

'Do you know what a blacksmith's **file**<sup>(2)</sup> is?' he asked.

'Yes, sir.'

He suddenly **grabbed**<sup>(3)</sup> my shoulders and shook me.

'I want you to bring me that file early tomorrow morning. And some food, too. Then I will let you live! What do you say?'

I was frightened, so I promised to bring the file and the food to him the next day.

'Now go home!' he shouted.

I ran until I could run no more. When I looked back, I saw the man far out on the marshes, a black shape against the angry red sky. Once I **got my breath back**<sup>(4)</sup> I hurried home as fast as I could.

When I ran into the kitchen, feeling happy to be home safely, Mrs Joe angrily asked me where I had been.

'Only to the graveyard,' I cried.

'Graveyard!' she shouted. 'You're lucky not to have been put in the graveyard long ago! It's because of me that you're still here. But I didn't want to look after you! It's bad enough being a blacksmith's wife. I never asked to be your mother!'

That evening, I had work to do in the kitchen as usual. It was almost bedtime and I was helping to prepare lunch for the next day, when I heard a loud noise.

'Listen! What is that?' I said.

'A **convict**<sup>(5)</sup> escaped last night,' Joe explained.

'That noise was a warning to everyone in our village that another convict has **got away**<sup>(6)</sup>!'

'From the prison ships,' Mrs Joe added.

'What are they?' I asked.

'They're ships where they put people because they have **committed a crime**<sup>(7)</sup>,' replied my sister. 'Now go to bed!' she shouted.

I remembered that I had seen a broken old ship, far out on the marshes that day. Perhaps it was a prison ship.



(7) ارتكب جريمة

(5) مدان / سجين

(6) هرب

(3) أمسك بقوة

(4) استعادت أنفاسي

(1) أغلال قدم

(2) مبرد



As I fell asleep, I realised that the man I had met that day was one of the escaped convicts. He wanted a blacksmith's file so that he could take off his leg-irons and get away from the marshes quickly. He scared me, but I also felt sorry for him.

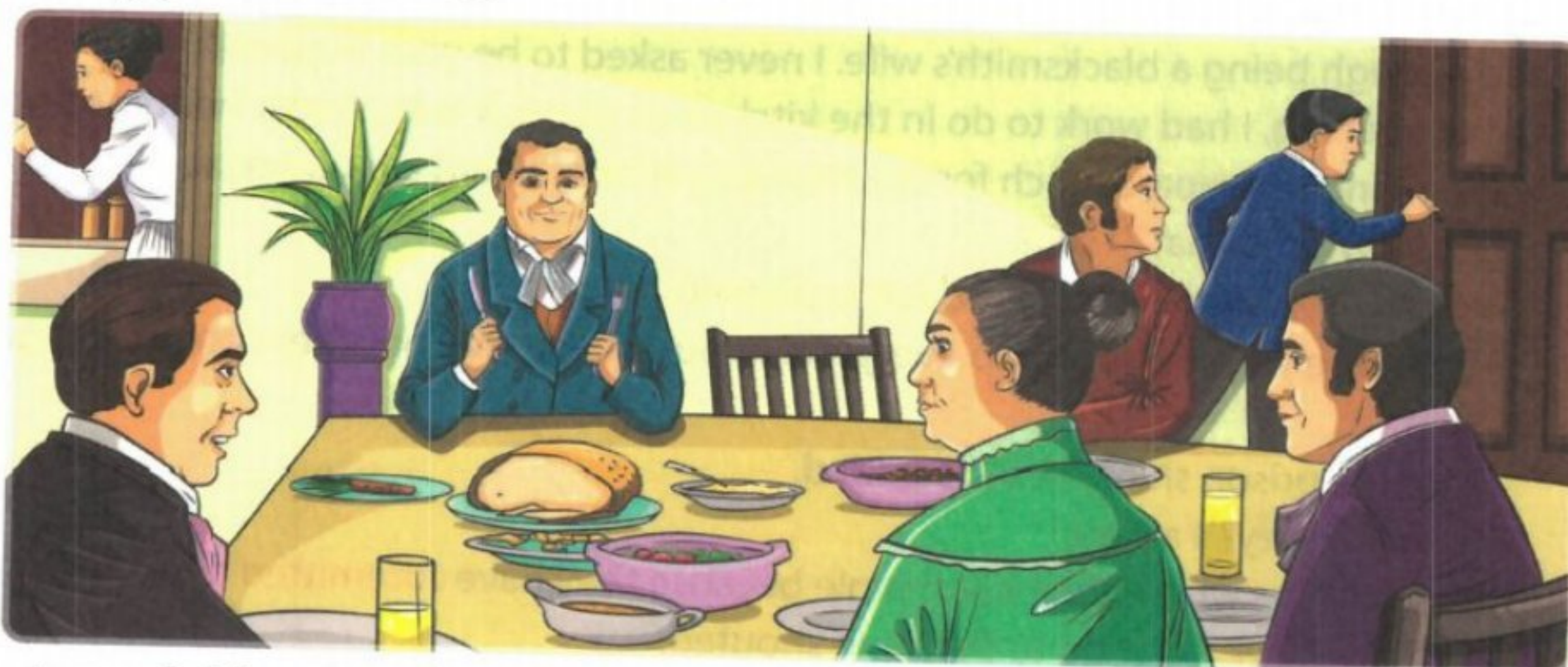
Early the next morning, I got up and went into the kitchen. It was Christmas Day, and guests were invited to dinner. There was some delicious cheese in the kitchen, as well as nuts, apples and oranges, and a cold meat **pie**<sup>(1)</sup>. I took them all. Then I went into Joe's workroom and found a blacksmith's file.

Closing the front door quietly behind me and holding all the food carefully, I **set off**<sup>(2)</sup>. I ran to the graveyard and then out into the mist and over the wet marshes.

Suddenly, quite by surprise, I saw a man in grey who seemed to be asleep. He wore leg-irons and stood up when he saw me. At first, I thought he was the man that I knew, but then I realised that his face was different.

He looked at me for a moment before disappearing into the mist. I wondered who he could be and what he was doing out here.

Soon afterwards, I found the man I was looking for. I gave him the food at once, and he ate it quickly as I told him about the other man that I had just seen. He wanted to know who he was and where he had gone, but I could not tell him. Then, as soon as he had eaten, he took the file from me and started trying to remove his leg-irons with an angry look on his face.



I was afraid again, so I ran home as fast as I could. As I ran back across the marshes, I could hear the sound of the file on the leg-irons through the **mist**<sup>(3)</sup>.



(3) شجيرة/ضباب

(1) فطيرة

(2) يتجه إلى



Mrs Joe was busy preparing the house for guests, so Joe and I were alone together. I began to feel **guilty**<sup>(1)</sup> about the food and the **file**<sup>(2)</sup> which I had stolen that morning, and I wanted to tell Joe what I had done. But then I thought he might not want to be my friend if I did, so I said nothing.

It was not long before the guests arrived and we sat down to Christmas dinner.

At first, nobody noticed that anything was missing. But then, to my **horror**<sup>(3)</sup>, Mrs Joe invited everyone to try the delicious meat pie that Joe's uncle, Mr Pumblechook, had given us. The guests happily agreed and she went to find it. Joe told me I could have some, and I felt very bad. At any moment, Mrs Joe was going to discover that the meat pie had disappeared from the kitchen.

Unable to stay at the table with all the guests any longer, I got up from my chair and ran to the front door. But when I opened it, a group of soldiers entered, just as Mrs Joe came back into the room shouting, 'The pie has gone!'

The appearance of a group of soldiers made the guests forget about the pie and they all stood up from the table. Everyone wondered why the soldiers had come, and we all felt nervous.

'We need a blacksmith to mend some **handcuffs**<sup>(4)</sup>, please,' the first soldier said. 'We're looking for two convicts who broke their handcuffs and escaped. We think they are hiding out on the marshes, although they probably won't try to get away until tonight.'

When he asked if we had seen them, everybody else said no. I did not speak.

Joe mended the handcuffs for the soldiers, and they waited with us as he worked. When they were finished, Joe and I followed the soldiers out of the village and onto the marshes.

'I hope we don't find the convicts, Joe,' I said quietly.

'Me too, Pip,' Joe replied.

Day became night as we walked over the marshes. It was raining and the wind blew the rain into our faces.

Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen.



(3) رعب/فزع  
(4) أغلال/قيود

(1) مذنب  
(2) مبرد



## Questions & Answers

### (A) Factual questions:

1. How did Pip get his name?

(WB)

كيف حصل بيب على اسمه؟

He found it difficult to say Philip Pirrip, his real name.

2. Why did Pip live with his sister Mrs Joe?

(WB)

لماذا كان بيب يعيش مع أخته السيدة جو؟

His parents and other brothers and sisters died.

3. What was Joe Gargery's job?

ماذا كانت وظيفة جو جارجيري؟

He was the village's blacksmith.

4. Where did Pip meet the strange man?

أين التقى بيب بالرجل الغريب؟

He met him at the graveyard when he went to visit his parents' grave.

5. What did the man ask Pip about?

ماذا سأل الرجل بيب عنه؟

He asked him about his name and where he lived.

6. What did the man ask Pip to bring? Why?

ماذا طلب الرجل من بيب أن يجلبه؟ لماذا؟

He asked him to bring some food and a blacksmith's file. He wanted to use it to cut his leg-irons.

7. What did Pip think of the man in the graveyard?

(WB)

ما رأى بيب في الرجل في المقبرة؟

He scared him, but he also felt sorry for him.

8. Who did Pip find in the kitchen when he returned home?

من الذي وجدته بيب في المطبخ عندما عاد إلى المنزل؟

He found his sister, Mrs Joe, there.

9. How did Mrs Joe treat Pip?

كيف عاملت السيدة جو بيب؟

She treated him unkindly.

10. What did Joe tell Pip and Mrs Joe when he came into the kitchen?

ماذا قال جو لبيب والسيدة جو عندما دخل المطبخ؟

He told them that a convict had escaped from the prison ships near the marshes.



11. Why was there a lot of food in Mrs Joe's kitchen on Christmas day? (WB)

لماذا كان هناك الكثير من الطعام في مطبخ السيدة جو في يوم عيد الميلاد؟

It was Christmas Day, and guests were invited to dinner.

12. What kinds of food did Pip take from the kitchen?

ما أنواع الطعام التي أخذها بيب من المطبخ؟

He took some delicious cheese from the kitchen, as well as nuts, apples and oranges, and a cold meat pie.

13. Who did Pip first meet when he got to the marshes?

من الذى التقى بيب أولاً عندما وصل إلى المستنقعات؟

He met a man who also had leg-irons.

14. What was the convict's reaction when Pip gave him the food and the file?

ماذا كان رد فعل المحكوم عليه عندما قدم له بيب الطعام والمبرد؟

He ate quickly and started trying to remove his leg-irons with an angry look on his face.

15. Did Pip tell anyone about what he did? Why?

هل أخبر بيب أى شخص بما فعله؟ لماذا؟

No, he didn't. He was afraid to tell anyone especially Joe as he might not want to be his friend.

16. What did Pip do when Mrs Joe went into the kitchen to bring the pie?

ماذا فعل بيب عندما دخلت السيدة جو المطبخ لإحضار الفطيرة؟

He got up from his chair and ran to the front door.

17. Why do the soldiers visit Joe's house on Christmas day? (WB)

لماذا يزور الجنود منزل جو في يوم عيد الميلاد؟

To find a blacksmith to mend some handcuffs.

18. What did Joe and Pip do after mending the handcuffs?

ماذا فعل جو وبيب بعد إصلاح الأصفاد؟

They went to the marshes with the soldiers.

## (B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. On Christmas Eve, Pip went to his parents' grave. What does this show about him?

عشية عيد الميلاد، ذهب بيب إلى قبر والديه. ماذا يظهر هذا عنه؟

I think it shows that he felt really unhappy and lonely.

2. What is your impression of the man that Pip meets in the graveyard? Clarify your answer. (SB)

ما هو انطباعك عن الرجل الذى قابله بيب فى المقبرة؟ وضح إجابتك.

I think he appeared to be a violent criminal who scared people and asked violently for help.



3. If you were Pip, would you obey the convict so easily? Why?

إذا كنت بيب، فهل ستطيع المحكوم عليه بهذه السهولة؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. The convict is a criminal and should be sent back to prison.

4. In your opinion, should Pip have told his family about the convict? Why?

برأيك، هل كان يجب أن يخبر بيب أهله عن المحكوم عليه؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think he should. The convict is a dangerous criminal who could have hurt him.

5. What do you think of Mrs Joe's treatment of Pip?

ما رأيك في معاملة السيدة جو لبيب؟

I think it is unkind and unfair that she treated him so badly.

6. Was it right that Pip stole the food and the file for the convict? Why?

هل كان صحيحًا أن بيب سرق الطعام والمبرد للمحكوم عليه؟ لماذا؟

No, I think it wasn't right. He stole these things to help the criminal.

7. In your opinion, what would Mrs Joe have done if she had known that Pip stole the food?

برأيك، ماذا كانت ستفعل السيدة جو لو كانت تعلم أن بيب سرق الطعام؟

I think she would have punished Pip so hard.

8. Do you think that Pip's being an orphan affected his life? Why? Give your answer in three sentences at most.

(Longman)

هل تعتقد أن كون بيب يتيماً أثر على حياته؟ لماذا؟ مهملاً إجابتك في ثلاث جمل على الأكثر.

Yes, I think so. He lived with his sister who treated him so badly. He also felt lonely and unhappy.

9. What do you think would have happened if Pip had told his sister about his behaviour with the convict?

(Longman)

ما الذي تعتقد أنه كان سيحدث لو أخبر بيب أخته عن سلوكه مع المحكوم عليه؟

I think she would have punished him so hard.

10. "Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen." What do you think was about to happen?

(Longman)

«فجأة سمعنا صرخات غاضبة في مكان قريب. كنت خائفاً مما كان على وشك الحدوث». ما رأيك فيما كان سيحدث؟

I think the convicts who escaped were about to be arrested again.

11. Should Pip have told the soldiers about the convict? Why?

(Longman)

هل كان يجب أن يخبر بيب الجنود عن المحكوم عليه؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think he should. He is a criminal that should be taken back to prison.



(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The ground near the river is very soft and wet because there's a ..... there.  
a) mass                      b) marsh                      c) maze                      d) march
- 2 The war has left thousands of children as ..... with terrible memories.  
a) fighters                      b) clients                      c) orphans                      d) judges
- 3 The two ..... men were ordered to pay a lot of money to their victims.  
a) cheerful                      b) innocent                      c) guilty                      d) honest
- 4 A ..... is a baked dish of fruit or meat and/or vegetables with pastry on the bottom, sides and top.  
a) pie                      b) salad                      c) curry                      d) Sochi
- 5 I reached out a hand to steady myself against the house while I got my ..... back.  
a) breathe                      b) hearth                      c) breath                      d) breeze
- 6 He jumped up from the table, ..... his hat, and ran to the bus stop  
a) stabbed                      b) grabbed                      c) rubbed                      d) robbed
- 7 The police reported that two thieves managed to get .....  
a) by                      b) around                      c) ahead                      d) away
- 8 On the way to the jail السجن, the ..... overpowered his guard, and escaped.  
a) convict                      b) conviction                      c) verdict                      d) convert
- 9 The police put ..... around the prisoner's ankles to stop him from escaping.  
a) handcuffs                      b) bracelets                      c) leg-irons                      d) wires
- 10 People cried out in ..... as they watched the building burn.  
a) delight                      b) horror                      c) flight                      d) dispute
- 11 Please drive carefully, it is hard to make out the path in the .....  
a) mist                      b) avenue                      c) air                      d) breeze
- 12 The metal was sharp and hard, so we used a ..... to make it smooth. (Longman)  
a) file                      b) film                      c) foil                      d) fly
- 13 When I saw a huge animal in the dark, I jumped out of my skin. This means I was ..... (Longman)  
a) amazed                      b) bold                      c) terrified                      d) brave
- 14 A/An ..... is a person who makes and repairs things in iron by hand. (Longman)  
a) blacksmith                      b) carpenter                      c) mechanic                      d) electrician
- 15 The police are looking for the criminal who has ..... that horrible crime. (Longman)  
a) made                      b) committed                      c) competed                      d) corrected



16 Once I got my breath back, I hurried home as fast as I could. I got my breath back, which means I ..... . (Longman)

- a) found difficulty breathing easily      b) shouted madly for help  
c) faced the situation bravely      d) started breathing normally again

17 The robber grabbed the lady's handbag and ..... quickly so he could escape. (Longman)

- a) coped up      b) sat down      c) broke into      d) set off

18 The police arrested the man and put on ..... to stop him moving his hands. (WB)

- a) handcuffs      b) leg-irons      c) sleeve      d) necklace

19 Very dangerous ..... were put in leg-irons in the past to stop them from running away. (WB)

- a) convicts      b) lawyers      c) employees      d) clerks

20 A/An ..... is an area of land where people are buried. (WB)

- a) monument      b) graveyard      c) tower      d) valley

**(B) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Pip spent Christmas Eve in the graveyard?  
2. If you were in Pip's place, would you bring the file and food to the stranger? Why? (Longman)  
3. Was it right that Pip felt sorry for the convict? Why?  
4. Do you think that Pip's older sister led a happy life with her husband? Why? (Longman)  
5. If you were Mrs Joe, would you blame Pip for the unhappy life you suffered? Why?  
6. In your opinion, would the police arrest Pip if they knew that he helped the convict?  
7. How was Pip lucky in the marshes?  
8. Do you think that Joe would be angry if Pip told him about helping the convict?  
9. What might have happened if Pip hadn't helped the convict?  
10. Why do you think Pip went back to the marshes with Joe and the soldiers?



### Key Vocabulary

inn (n)	حانة	inn (n)	حانة
lamb (n)	حمل/خروف صغير	lamb (n)	حمل/خروف صغير
nearby (adj)	مجاور	nearby (adj)	مجاور
position (n)	موقف/مركز	position (n)	موقف/مركز
practise (v) (d)	يمارس	practise (v) (d)	يمارس
shake (v)	يهز	shake (v)	يهز
stir (v) (red)	يقرب	stir (v) (red)	يقرب
tears (n)	دموع	tears (n)	دموع
turn away	يبتعد	turn away	يبتعد
ugly (adj)	قبيح	ugly (adj)	قبيح
veil (n)	حجاب/طرحة	veil (n)	حجاب/طرحة
bride (n)	عروس	bride (n)	عروس
candle (n)	شمعة	candle (n)	شمعة
common (adj)	غير مهذب/عامي	common (adj)	غير مهذب/عامي
curtains (n)	ستائر	curtains (n)	ستائر
daylight (n)	ضوء النهار	daylight (n)	ضوء النهار
dressng room (n)	غرفة الملابس	dressng room (n)	غرفة الملابس
eagle (n)	نسر	eagle (n)	نسر
education (n)	تعليم	education (n)	تعليم
fortune (n)	ثروة	fortune (n)	ثروة
gate (n)	بوابة	gate (n)	بوابة
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممنون	grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممنون

### Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

A broken heart	قلب محطم حزنا	In the distance	على البعد
had a better education	حصلوا على تعليم أفضل	shake my head	أهز رأسي
had a good heart	كان طيب القلب	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
ashamed of	خجلان من	grateful to	ممتن لـ
go out	ينطفئ (مصباح)	hear of	يسمع عن



## Reading Text

The soldiers ran into the marshes and we saw two men. They were fighting and covered in mud. The soldiers pulled them away from each other.

In the light of the soldiers' torches, I saw the man that I had helped. I wanted to say, 'I didn't tell the soldiers where to find you,' but all I could do was **shake**<sup>(1)</sup> my head. He gave me a long, strange look which I will never forget.



'I have something to say,' he said. 'It was me. I stole the food from the blacksmith's house this morning.' He looked at Joe and added, 'I'm sorry that I ate your meat pie.'

'You're welcome. We don't want you to be hungry,' Joe replied kindly.

The man turned away. Then he was taken to a boat nearby which took him to the black prison ship, far out on the marshes. We watched as he climbed back onto the ship in the distance and disappeared.

At that moment, the torches went out.

A year passed. I worked every day, helping neighbours with small jobs, but in the evening I went to the village school. The old lady who taught me often fell asleep, leaving her grand-daughter, Biddy, to show me how to read and write.

One night, Joe saw me sitting by the fire, as I was practising my writing.

'You know, Pip, you are very clever!' he said.

'Did you never go to school, Joe?' I asked.

'No, Pip,' he replied. 'My father didn't let me go, but he **had a good heart**<sup>(2)</sup>. He taught me to be a blacksmith. And after he died, I met your sister. She's a fine woman.'

I looked into the fire.

'I'm glad you think so, Joe,' I said at last.

'I wish she wouldn't hit you, though,' Joe said. 'I would rather she hit me than you! We'll always be best friends, won't we, Pip?'

Just then Mrs Joe came in.

'If this boy isn't **grateful**<sup>(3)</sup> to me now, he never will be!' she said.

I tried to look grateful, but I didn't understand what Mrs Joe meant.

'Miss Havisham wants Pip to go to her house,' she said. 'And he must go, or I will make him work hard here!'



(3) شاكر/ممنون

(1) يهز

(2) كان طيب القلب



Everyone in the village had heard of Miss Havisham; she was a very rich lady who lived in the nearest town. However, most people had never seen her because she never left her large, old house.

'So how does she know Pip?' Joe asked.

'She doesn't know Pip. Uncle Pumblechook visited her, and she asked him if he knew a boy who would go there to play with a child who lives there,' Mrs Joe replied. 'The boy will make his **fortune**<sup>(1)</sup> by going to Miss Havisham's house, and he's going there tomorrow!'

Then she jumped on me, like an **eagle**<sup>(2)</sup> on a lamb. I was washed very well that night. Uncle Pumblechook took me to Miss Havisham's house in my best clothes, the next day.

We waited at the gate until a very pretty, but proud, young girl appeared.

'This is Pip,' said Mr Pumblechook.

'Come in, Pip,' she said, opening the gate.

Uncle Pumblechook was not invited in so I left him at the gate. I followed the girl through an untidy garden.

The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside, and we went upstairs with a **candle**<sup>(3)</sup>.

The girl left me at a door, telling me to enter.

Inside was a dressing room lit by candles; the **curtains**<sup>(4)</sup> were closed, so no daylight could enter. And then I saw her: the strangest lady I had ever seen, or would ever see.

She was dressed completely in white, with a long white **veil**<sup>(5)</sup> and flowers in her hair. But her hair was white, the flowers were dead, and the white dress was now yellow with age. I saw a **bride**<sup>(6)</sup> in a wedding dress, but everything about her was old and sad.

'Let me look at you,' she said.

As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at twenty to nine.

'Do you know what I have here?' the lady continued, her hands on her heart.

'Yes, madam,' I replied. 'It's your heart.'

'A **broken heart**<sup>(7)</sup>' she said. Then after a moment, she added, 'I am tired, and I am bored. Play!'

I wondered what game I could play, so I replied that I could not play alone 'Call Estella!' the old lady said.



(7) قلب محطم حزناً

(5) حجاب/طرحة  
(6) عروس

(3) شمعة  
(4) ستائر

(1) ثروة  
(2) نسر



When Estella entered, I saw that she was the girl who had let me in. Now she was told to play with me.

'But he is just a poor working boy!' she complained.

Miss Havisham said something to her. I could not hear clearly, but I thought she said, 'Well? You can break his heart.'

And so Estella and I played games while Miss Havisham watched silently.

'What dirty hands you have!' Estella said, unkindly. 'And what ugly boots!'



I was ashamed. Finally, Miss Havisham called me to her side.

'What do you think of her?' she asked, looking at Estella.

'I think she is very proud. And very pretty. And very rude,' I said. 'I would like to go now, please.'

Miss Havisham made me promise to come back in six days. Then Estella led me back through the dark house and out into the garden.

Before I left, Estella gave me some food and drink, but did not hand it to me. Instead, she put it on the ground. Tears came to my eyes. When she saw that I was crying, she smiled.

I returned home, hurt and ashamed of my simple life. In the kitchen, Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook were waiting for me. They wanted to know what had happened, but I didn't want to tell them the truth. Later, when I was alone with Joe, I told him everything. I said that the beautiful girl at Miss Havisham's house had said I was **common**<sup>(1)</sup>, and that I felt ashamed.



(1) غير مهذب/عامي





Joe told me to be happy with my position in life, but I could not forget what had happened. I knew that this was the beginning of something that would change the rest of my life. I decided to learn as much as I could at the village school. If I had a better education, perhaps Estella would be kinder.

Two days later, I asked Biddy if she would help me more with my lessons, and she happily agreed. The village school was very busy and noisy, but when I left it that evening I hoped that with hard work, I would one day leave my simple life behind and become a fine gentleman.

On my way home, I met Joe at the village inn. He was sitting with a man I had not met before. He looked at me strangely.

'It's bad weather tonight,' Joe said. 'The mist is so thick, you wouldn't know there was a prison ship out there on the marshes!'

'Oh, is there?' asked the man. 'I don't know this area. It seems very lonely out on those marshes.'

'Marshes are always lonely,' replied Joe.

'Perhaps you're right,' said the man.

The man then asked if any escaped convicts had been found recently, and I began to feel uncomfortable.

Then the man **stirred**<sup>(1)</sup> his cup of tea, and I saw that he was using a blacksmith's file. It was the same file that I had taken from Joe's workshop a year ago! But Joe did not notice.



(1) قلب



## Questions & Answers

### (A) Factual questions:

1. What were the two convicts doing when they were discovered?

ماذا كان يفعل المتهمان عندما تم اكتشافهما؟

They were fighting and covered in mud.

2. What did the convict who Pip helped confess to the soldiers?

بماذا اعترف المُدان الذي ساعده بيب للجنود؟

He said that he stole the food from the blacksmith's house. He even apologized to Joe.

3. How was Pip a hard-working boy?

كيف كان بيب صبيًا يعمل بجد؟

He helped neighbours with small jobs, but in the evening he went to the village school to learn.

4. Why didn't Joe go to school?

(SB)

لماذا لم يذهب جو إلى المدرسة؟

Because his father didn't allow him to.

5. Who was Miss Havisham?

من كانت الأنسة هافيشام؟

She was a very rich lady who lived in the nearest town.

6. Why had most people never seen Miss Havisham?

(WB)

لماذا لم يرى معظم الناس الأنسة هافيشام؟

Because she never left her house.

7. What does Mrs Joe think Pip should be grateful for?

(SB)

ما الذي تعتقد السيدة جو أن بيب يجب أن يكون ممتنًا له؟

That he is going to a rich lady's house, and he might be given some money.

8. Why did Mrs Joe want Pip to go to Miss Havisham's house?

(WB)

لماذا كانت السيدة جو تريد بيب أن يذهب إلى منزل الأنسة هافيشام؟

She thought he would make a fortune by going there.

9. Why did Miss Havisham want Pip to come to her house?

لماذا أرادت الأنسة هافيشام أن يأتي بيب إلى منزلها؟

She said he would go there to play with a child who lives there.

10. Who took Pip to Miss Havisham's house?

من أخذ بيب لمنزل الأنسة هافيشام؟

Uncle Pumblechook took him there in his best clothes.



11. What did Pip notice about Miss Havisham's house?

ماذا لاحظ بيب بخصوص منزل الأنسة هافيشام؟

The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed.

12. Where did Pip meet Miss Havisham? What did he notice about her?

أين التقى بيب الأنسة هافيشام؟ ماذا لاحظ عليها؟

He met her in her dressing room. She was dressed completely in white, with a long white veil and flowers in her hair. But her hair was white, the flowers were dead, and the white dress was now yellow with age.

13. Why were all the rooms in Miss Havisham's house lit by candles?

(WB)

لماذا كانت كل الغرف في منزل الأنسة هافيشام مضاءة بالشموع؟

All the curtains were closed so no daylight could enter.

14. Why did Pip feel ashamed on playing with Estella for the first time?

(WB)

لماذا شعر بيب بالخجل من اللعب مع إستيلا لأول مرة؟

Because Estella said he had dirty hands and ugly boots.

15. At the end of his visit, what did Estella give Pip?

في نهاية زيارته، ماذا قدمت إستيلا لبيب؟

Estella gave him some food and drink, but did not hand it to him. Instead, she put it on the ground.

16. Why didn't Pip want to tell anyone about what happened at Miss Havisham's house?

لماذا لم يرغب بيب في إخبار أى شخص بما حدث في منزل الأنسة هافيشام؟

He felt ashamed at the way he was treated there.

17. What was Joe's advice to Pip when he told him about his first day in Miss Havisham's house?

(WB)

ماذا كانت نصيحة جو لبيب عندما أخبره عن أول يوم له في منزل الأنسة هافيشام؟

He told Pip to be happy with his position in life.

18. Why did Pip decide to work harder at school?

(SB)

لماذا قرر بيب العمل بجدية أكبر في المدرسة؟

Because he wanted to change his position in life so he's not ashamed, and make Estella be nice to him.

19. Where did Pip meet Joe on his way from school one evening?

أين التقى بيب بجو وهو في طريقه من المدرسة ذات مساء؟

He met him at the village inn sitting with a man he hadn't seen before.

20. What did Pip notice about the man?

ماذا لاحظ بيب على الرجل؟

He was stirring his cup of tea with the same file Pip had given to the convict.



## (B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. In your opinion, why did the convict admit that he stole the food from Joe's house?

في رأيك، لماذا اعترف المحكوم عليه بسرقة الطعام من منزل جو؟

I think he wanted to repay Pip for his help.

2. Although Joe's father didn't allow him to go to school, he wasn't angry with him. What does this show about him?

على الرغم من أن والد جو لم يسمح له بالذهاب إلى المدرسة، إلا أنه لم يكن غاضباً منه. ماذا يظهر عنه هذا؟

It shows that he is a kind and tolerant man.

3. Mrs Joe was keen on Pip's going to Miss Havisham. What does this show about her?

كانت السيدة جو حريصة على الذهاب بيبي إلى الأنسة هافيشام. ماذا يظهر عنها هذا؟

I think it shows that she is a greedy person as she thought that Pip will get money by going there.

4. "Then she jumped on me like an eagle on a lamb," said Pip. What did these words reflect about the relationship between Pip and his sister? (Longman)

قال بيبي «ثم قفزت على مثل نسر على حمل». ماذا عكست هذه الكلمات عن العلاقة بين بيبي وشقيقته؟

This shows that she was an unkind person who treated her orphan brother very badly.

5. If you were Pip, would you agree to go to Miss Havisham's house? Why?

إذا كنت مكان بيبي، هل توافق على الذهاب إلى منزل الأنسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. I would be in a bad situation as the people living there would see me as a poor young man who came only to get money.

6. When Pip first saw Miss Havisham, he said she was the strangest lady he had ever seen, or would ever see. Was he right to say so? Why?

عندما رأى بيبي الأنسة هافيشام لأول مرة، قال إنها أغرب سيدة رآها أو سيرها على الإطلاق. هل كان محقاً في قول ذلك؟ لماذا؟

Yes, he was right. She was still dressed in her wedding dress which was many years ago. Even the flowers she had were dead.

7. The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside. Do you think this atmosphere reflected the circumstances Miss Havisham had lived in? Why? (Longman)

بدا المنزل غير مستخدم ومعظم الأبواب مغلقة. كان كل شيء مظلماً في الداخل. هل تعتقد أن هذا الجو يعكس الظروف التي عاشت فيها الأنسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

Yes, it reflects the despair and sadness she used to live in.



8. Why do you think Estella didn't hand Pip the food but instead put it on the ground?

(Longman)

لماذا تعتقد أن إستيلا لم تسلم الطعام بييب بل وضعتة على الأرض؟

I think she didn't respect him because he was poor and common.

9. If you were Pip, would you feel ashamed of being poor or common? Why? (Longman)

إذا كنت مكان بييب، فهل ستشعر بالخجل من كونك فقيرًا أو عاميًا؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. Being poor and common wasn't his fault and he could grow better than any rich man in the future.

10. Why do you think Miss Havisham was always asking Pip about his opinion of Estella?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن الأنسة هافيشام كانت تسأل بييب دائمًا عن رأيه في إستيلا؟

She wanted him to like Estella so she can break his heart.

11. Why do you think Estella refused to speak to Pip when Miss Havisham asked them to play?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن إستيلا رفضت التحدث إلى بييب عندما طلبت منهم الأنسة هافيشام اللعب؟

Because she thinks he is just a poor working boy and is not good enough for her.

12. What's your opinion of Joe's advice to Pip when he felt ashamed of Estella's bad treatment of him?

ما هو رأيك في نصيحة جو لبييب عندما شعر بالخجل من سوء معاملة إستيلا له؟

Joe told Pip to be happy with his position in life. This is good advice, but everyone must try to improve his/her position in life.

13. Why do you think the man in the inn had Joe's file?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن الرجل في النزل لديه مبرد جو؟

I think he had a relation with the convict.

## تطبيق الأضواء



ذاكر أكثر وتصدر قائمة الأوائل

على تطبيق الأضواء واحصل على جوائز مميزة.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
www.aladwaa.com





## (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 On her wedding day, the ..... looked truly beautiful. All people admired her very much.  
a) groom                      b) bridegroom                      c) bride                      d) pride
- 2 I am very grateful ..... my parents for supporting me while I studied English in America.  
a) with                      b) for                      c) to                      d) at
- 3 Yasser just ..... his head when I asked him if he was sick.  
a) stirred                      b) caught                      c) waved                      d) shook
- 4 The old man's eyes filled with ..... as he recalled his wife's death.  
a) meditation                      b) pleasure                      c) tears                      d) hope
- 5 My father always tells me that it's better to ..... the truth.  
a) tell                      b) ask                      c) hide                      d) prevail
- 6 Salim's main aim is to improve his social ..... through education and hard work.  
a) location                      b) position                      c) account                      d) balance
- 7 The ..... which my daughter chose in her wedding day covered her face.  
a) tail                      b) vain                      c) veil                      d) vein
- 8 She has a ..... heart because she has lost her only son.  
a) break                      b) broke                      c) breaking                      d) broken
- 9 Our boss thought the new secretary was very ..... and uneducated because of the way she talked.  
a) disappointed                      b) common                      c) popular                      d) arrogant
- 10 My grandmother ..... a good heart. She always offered us valuable presents.  
a) missed                      b) had                      c) helped                      d) broke
- 11 When I returned home, I saw my wife standing on a ladder hanging some new .....  
a) curtains                      b) carpets                      c) pipes                      d) slides
- 12 The worker had a poor ....., and left school without qualifications.  
a) sight                      b) education                      c) thought                      d) view
- 13 I'll never forget the day my daughter put on her wedding dress and became a .....  
a) groom                      b) bridegroom                      c) pride                      d) bride (Longman)
- 14 You must ..... the bottle before taking this medicine.  
a) chock                      b) shock                      c) leak                      d) shake (Longman)



- 15 The guide told us the Pharaoh spent a ..... building his palace. (SB)  
 a) mess                      b) fortune                      c) sum                      d) quantity
- 16 The storm cut off the electricity so we had to use ..... (SB)  
 a) surprises                      b) stations                      c) machines                      d) candles
- 17 The man was ..... to Pip for bringing him something to eat. (SB)  
 a) grumpy                      b) gloomy                      c) grateful                      d) disappointed
- 18 If you don't ..... the sauce, it won't be smooth. (SB)  
 a) cool                      b) stir                      c) freeze                      d) drop
- 19 He was ..... that he had lied. (SB)  
 a) ashamed                      b) cheerful                      c) grateful                      d) deceived
- 20 The bride wore a long ..... on her head that matched her wedding dress. (SB)  
 a) shawl                      b) curtain                      c) veil                      d) necklace

**(B) Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Pip, would you still be afraid of the convict after the soldiers arrested him?
2. Why do you think the man at the inn talk about the prison ship and the marshes?
3. If you were Mrs Joe, would you insist on Pip's going to Miss Havisham's house? Why?
4. 'I wish she wouldn't hit you, though,' Joe said. 'I would rather she hit me than you! What does this show about Joe and his relationship with Pip?
5. In your opinion, why didn't the girl invite Mr Pumblechook in?
6. Why do you think Miss Havisham still wore her old wedding dress and veil?
7. If you were Pip, would you tell Mrs Joe and all the family about Estella's bad treatment? Why?
8. What do you think might have happened if Joe had gone to school? (Longman)
9. If you were in Pip's place, would you make friends with Joe? Why? (Longman)
10. "As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at twenty to nine." What do you think the stoppage of the clock indicates? (Longman)
11. Do you think Miss Havisham was right to let Estella break Pip's heart? Why? (Longman)
12. Should Pip have been on good terms with Mrs Joe? Why? (Longman)
13. Would you try to get a better education if you were Pip, just to make Estella change her attitude towards you? Why? (Longman)
14. Why do you think the man at the inn wanted to show Pip the file?



## Key Vocabulary

apprentice (n)	صبي متمرن فى حرفة	note (n)	ملاحظة/يلاحظ
apprenticeship (n)	فترة التدريب فى المهنة	pale (adj)	شاحب
argument (n)	جدال	pretty (adj)	جميلة
boss (n)	رئيس	relatives (n)	الأقارب
celebration (n)	احتفال	reward (n)	مكافأة
coin (n)	عملة معدنية	spiders' webs (n)	شبهكات العنكب
dusty (adj)	مترب	wedding (n)	زفاف
fair hair (n)	شعر فاتح اللون	workman (n)	عامل
gloomy (adj)	كئيب	wrap (v) (ped)	يلف

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms &amp; Prepositions

behave yourself	كن مؤدباً	send away	يرسل بعيداً/ينفى
could not put my finger on	لم أستطع وضع إصبعى على	thanks to	بفضل
in a few days	فى غضون أيام قليلة	that's your lot	هذا هو نصيبك
pay for	يدفع مقابل	wrap ... in	يلف ... فى

## تطبيق الأضواء



جفع نقاطك واستبدلها الآن بمجموعة  
من العروض الرائعة من خلال شركاء الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
www.aladwaa.com





## Reading Text



When I realised that the man in the inn had met the convict I helped on the marshes, I wanted to take Joe away. Before we could go, however, the man took out a new **coin**<sup>(1)</sup>. He **wrapped**<sup>(2)</sup> it in some paper and gave it to me.

'This is yours,' he said, 'but be careful!'

Feeling frightened, I took the coin and left with Joe. When we got home, we realised that the paper wrapped around the coin was a pound **note**<sup>(3)</sup>. Joe went back to the inn immediately to try to find the man and return his note to him. However, the man had left. Mrs Joe put the pound note on a shelf where it would be safe and there it remained.

On my next visit to Miss Havisham's house, Estella took me into a **gloomy**<sup>(4)</sup> room where three ladies and a gentleman were waiting. They were Miss Havisham's relatives, Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond Pocket, and they had also come to see her that day.

A bell rang far away. Miss Havisham was ready to see me. Holding up her candle, Estella led me through the dark house.

'Well, boy!' She asked. 'Am I pretty?'

'Yes, you are very pretty.'



(3) عملة ورقية

(4) كئيب

(1) عملة معدنية

(2) ملفوف



'Why don't you cry?' She asked, looking unkindly at me.  
'I'll never cry again,' I said.  
Just then, we met a large, dark-haired man on the stairs.  
'Ah, you are a neighbour, I think?' He asked.  
'Yes, sir,' I replied.  
'Why are you here, boy?'  
'Miss Havisham asked for me,' I explained.  
'Well, **behave yourself**<sup>(1)</sup>! This is not a place for children to play,' he said, before walking away.

I thought that he might be a doctor, and I continued walking up the stairs. I soon found myself in Miss Havisham's room again. Everything was the same as before.

'So! Are you ready to play?' She asked.

'I don't think I am, madam,' I replied.

'Well, do you want to work then?'

I said that I did, and she told me to wait for her in the dining room opposite.

When I entered the dark room, I could see a long table laid with a **table-cloth**<sup>(2)</sup> and plates, prepared for a wedding **celebration**<sup>(3)</sup>, but now covered with **spiders' webs**<sup>(4)</sup>. The room looked like it had been exactly the same for many years. There were spiders and mice everywhere. I was looking around the room and watching the spiders when Miss Havisham came quietly into the room behind me.

'What do you think that is?' asked Miss Havisham, pointing at a tall shape in the centre of the table.

I went closer.

'It's a cake, Pip. A wedding cake! Mine!' She went on. 'And now, walk with me.'

She asked me to walk with her around the room, which we did for some minutes until Estella and the Pockets came in. They asked about Miss Havisham's health and wished her a happy birthday, but she sent them away.

'That wedding cake was brought here, a long time before you were born,' Miss Havisham told me. 'And everything is still here.'

She stood for a long time, looking at the table.

Then we returned to her dressing room and Miss Havisham told Estella and me to play. So we sat down to play games in her dressing room but this time Estella refused to speak to me. Finally, Miss Havisham asked me to return in a few days and allowed me to leave. Estella led me out of the house, again put my food and drink on the ground and shut the door.



(3) احتفال  
(4) شبكات العنكب

(1) كن مؤدباً  
(2) مفرش المنضدة



Alone in the garden, I was surprised to see another boy looking at me out of a window. He disappeared into the house, and then came out into the garden to speak to me. He had very **pale**<sup>(1)</sup> skin and short fair hair, so in my mind, I called him 'the pale young gentleman'.

'Hello, who let you in?' he asked.

'Estella,' I replied.

'Come and fight, then!' he said, preparing to hit me.

The boy was my age, but much taller than me. I ran at him hard and he fell over. He jumped up, prepared to fight again, so I ran at him again. This time he got a black eye. He did not seem to be strong and never hit me hard.

The fight continued for several minutes until the boy was on his knees, saying, 'You have won!'



He was so **brave**<sup>(2)</sup> that I felt sorry for him.

'Can I help?' I asked.

'No, thank you. Goodbye,' he answered.

I knew that it was time to leave.

I did not see the pale young gentleman at Miss Havisham's again, although my visits continued.



(2) شجاع

(1) شاحب



Nothing ever changed. Miss Havisham sat in her wedding dress, in her **dusty**<sup>(1)</sup> dressing room; Estella and I played games as she watched; and Miss Havisham asked if I thought Estella was **pretty**<sup>(2)</sup>. I always said yes, and Miss Havisham seemed happy with this answer.

'What will you be when you grow up, Pip?' she asked one day.

Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook had been talking about the same thing ever since I had started to visit Miss Havisham. They were sure that she wanted to give me all her money, and they wanted my visits to continue.

'I am going to become Joe's **apprentice**<sup>(3)</sup> and learn to be a blacksmith,' I said.

'Then tell Joe to come here at once,' she replied.

When Joe came with me on my next visit, Miss Havisham gave him a large bag of money.

'Pip will become your apprentice now,' she said. 'He is a good boy and this is his reward. The money is to pay for his **apprenticeship**<sup>(4)</sup>. But **that's your lot!**<sup>(5)</sup> This is all you will get from me, Mr Gargery!'

'Shall I visit you again, Miss Havisham?' I asked.

'No,' she replied, 'Joe is your boss now. Estella, show them out!'

And so my apprenticeship with Joe began.

But I had changed. I no longer wanted to be a blacksmith; now, I was ashamed of my home and my family.

Estella was often in my thoughts, although I did not see her anymore. I was sure that she did not like my position in life, so I continued my education and worked hard. This was largely thanks to Biddy, who gave me lessons and taught me as much as she knew. Although she was older than me, Biddy was my friend.

About a year after my apprenticeship with Joe had begun, I asked Joe for an afternoon's holiday, so that I could visit Miss Havisham and thank her for helping me. When Orlick, Joe's workman, heard that I was going, he was very angry. He did not think it was right that I should have an afternoon's holiday, but he could not. I did not like Orlick; he was large and slow, and he often tried to make my life difficult at work. An **argument**<sup>(6)</sup> began between Orlick and Mrs Joe, who wanted me to see Miss Havisham again. In the end, Joe had to stop them. But there was something strange about Orlick, but I **could not put my finger**<sup>(7)</sup> on what it was.'



(7) لم أستطع وضع إصبعي على

(5) هذا هو نصيبك

(6) جدال

(3) صبي متمرن في حرفة

(4) فترة التدريب في المهنة

(1) مترب

(2) جميلة



## Questions & Answers

### (A) Factual questions:

1. What did the man at the inn give Pip before leaving with Joe?

ماذا أعطى الرجل فى الحانة بيب قبل مغادرته مع جو؟

He gave him a new coin wrapped in some paper which was a pound note.

2. Where did Miss Havisham take Pip in his second visit?

أين اصطحبت الأنسة هافيشام بيب فى زيارته الثانية؟

She took him to the dining room.

3. What strange things did Pip see in the dining room?

ما الأشياء الغريبة التى رآها بيب فى غرفة الطعام؟

He saw a long table laid with a table-cloth and plates, prepared for a wedding celebration, but now covered with spiders' webs. There was also a wedding cake and spiders and mice everywhere.

4. Why had Miss Havisham's relatives come to visit her?

(SB)

لماذا جاء أقارب الأنسة هافيشام لزيارتها؟

Because it was her birthday.

5. How did the fight between Pip and the pale young boy start and end?

(SB)

كيف بدأ القتال بين بيب والصبي الصغير الشاحب وانتهى؟

When the young pale gentleman discovered that Estella let Pip in, he challenged him to a fight. Pip gave him a black eye and won the fight.

6. Why did Pip feel sorry for the pale young boy?

(SB)

لماذا شعر بيب بالأسف للصبي الصغير الشاحب؟

Because he was brave and didn't give up.

7. What did Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook think Miss Havisham wanted to give Pip?

(WB)

ماذا اعتقدت السيدة جو والعم بومبلشوك أن الأنسة هافيشام أرادت أن تعطيه لبيب؟

They thought she wanted to give him a fortune.

8. What was Pip's answer when Miss Havisham asked him about the job he would like?

ماذا كانت إجابة بيب عندما سألته الأنسة هافيشام عن الوظيفة التى يريد؟

He said that he would become Joe's apprentice and learn to be a blacksmith.

9. Why did Miss Havisham ask to see Joe?

لماذا طلبت الأنسة هافيشام رؤية جو؟

She wanted to give him some money for Pip's apprenticeship.



10. Why does Pip stop visiting Miss Havisham's house?

(SB)

لماذا يتوقف بيب عن زيارة منزل الأنسة هافيشام؟

Because Miss Havisham tells Pip not to come back because Joe is now his boss.

11. Who helped Pip in his education?

من الذى ساعد بيب فى تعليمه؟

Biddy helped him and she was his friend.

12. When did Pip want to visit Miss Havisham again?

متى أراد بيب زيارة الأنسة هافيشام مرة أخرى؟

He wanted to visit her a year after his apprenticeship started.

13. Who was Orlick?

من كان أورليك؟

He was Joe's workman.

14. Why was there an argument between Orlick and Mrs Joe?

لماذا كان هناك جدال بين أورليك والسيدة جو؟

He didn't want Pip to have a holiday to visit Miss Havisham.

15. Why did Orlick object to Pip's afternoon holiday?

لماذا اعترض أورليك على إجازة بيب بعد الظهر؟

He didn't want to be alone in the workshop. He also tried to make Pip's life difficult at work.

### (B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Should Pip have taken Joe away from the mysterious man in the inn? Why? (Longman)

هل كان يجب أن يأخذ بيب جو بعيداً عن الرجل الغامض فى النزل؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think he should. If Joe had noticed the stolen file, Pip would have been in trouble.

2. Why do you think Joe took the pound note and put it on the shelf?

لماذا تعتقد أن جو أخذ الجنيه ووضعها على الرف؟

I think he wanted to keep it and return it to the man at the inn on finding him.

3. Why do you think Miss Havisham wanted to take Pip to the dining room?

لماذا تعتقد أن الأنسة هافيشام أرادت أن تأخذ بيب إلى غرفة الطعام؟

I think she wanted to tell Pip about her uncompleted wedding so that he could understand why she behaved strangely.

4. Why do you think Miss Havisham still kept the wedding cake?

(SB)

لماذا تعتقد أن الأنسة هافيشام ما زالت تحتفظ بكعكة الزفاف؟

To remind her of her wedding day/because time stopped for her on her wedding day.

5. Why do you think the dining room had not changed for many years?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن غرفة الطعام لم تتغير منذ سنوات عديدة؟

It was prepared for Miss Havisham's wedding, but the wedding did not take place.



6. Why do you think there were spiders and mice everywhere in the dining room?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن هناك عنكبوت وفئران في كل مكان في غرفة الطعام؟

People did not use the room anymore. They were free to live there.

7. What do you think of Miss Havisham's treatment of her relatives who visited her?

ما رأيك في معاملة الأنسة هافيشام لأقاربها الذين زاروها؟

I think she treated them badly. Although they came for her birthday, she quickly sent them away.

8. If you were Estella, would you try to break Pip's heart? Why?

(Longman)

إذا كنت مكان إستيلا، فهل ستحاول كسر قلب بيب؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. It is cruel to do so. Besides, Pip seemed to be a kind and harmless young man.

9. If you were in Miss Havisham's place, would you continue wearing the wedding dress for such a long time? Why?

(Longman)

إذا كنت في مكان الأنسة هافيشام، فهل ستستمر في ارتداء فستان الزفاف لفترة طويلة؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. I would continue my life and make a new start.

10. If you were Pip, would you fight with the pale young gentleman?

إذا كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستتشاجر مع الرجل الشاب الشاحب؟

No, I wouldn't. The young gentleman looked kind and weak.

11. Why do you think Pip continued to visit Miss Havisham although Estella treated him badly?

لماذا تعتقد أن بيب استمر في زيارة الأنسة هافيشام على الرغم من أن إستيلا عاملته بشدة؟

I think he was in love with Estella and couldn't help wishing to see her again.

12. Why do you think Pip wanted to visit Miss Havisham a year after his apprenticeship started?

لماذا تعتقد أن بيب أراد زيارة الأنسة هافيشام بعد عام من بدء التدريب المهني؟

I think he wanted to see Estella as she was always in his thoughts.

13. If you were Pip, would you be on good terms with Orlick? Why?

(Longman)

إذا كنت مكان بيب، هل ستكون على وفاق مع أورليك؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. He was apparently jealous of Pip and wanted to make his life difficult at work.

14. In your opinion, did Orlick have the right to argue with Mrs Joe? Why?

في رأيك، هل يحق لأورليك الجدل مع السيدة جو؟ لماذا؟

No, I think he didn't. She was his employer's wife and he should have respected her more.



(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Our headmaster at primary school was a ..... man who never smiled.  
a) delighted      b) glad      c) cheerful      d) gloomy
- 2 I knew something she had said wasn't true, but I couldn't quite put my ..... on it.  
a) leg      b) finger      c) toe      d) heart
- 3 He ..... the present gently before going to the birthday party.  
a) wrapped      b) revealed      c) uncovered      d) grabbed
- 4 Are you feeling well? You look .....  
a) lovely      b) wealthy      c) healthy      d) pale
- 5 They couldn't afford a big ..... in a famous hotel as their daughter, the bride, wanted.  
a) divorce      b) ceremony      c) wedding      d) funeral
- 6 We're having a small ..... for dad's birthday.  
a) quarrel      b) celebration      c) funeral      d) speech
- 7 A ..... is someone who does physical work such as building, repairing things.  
a) workman      b) boss      c) specialist      d) clerk
- 8 I inherited a small piece of land from a distant .....  
a) opponent      b) enemy      c) relative      d) rival
- 9 Thanks ..... the efforts of the whole team, the project was completed on time.  
a) of      b) at      c) in      d) to
- 10 The referee flipped a ..... into the air to decide which side would bat first.  
a) coin      b) note      c) cheque      d) paper
- 11 The bank only exchanges ..... and traveller's cheques; coins can't be exchanged.  
a) wills      b) notes      c) shares      d) divisions
- 12 There were wild street ..... when France won the World Cup in 2018.  
a) laments      b) sorrows      c) celebrations      d) regrets
- 13 The girl looked ..... in her simple cotton dress which all her friends liked.  
a) ugly      b) common      c) strange      d) pretty
- 14 The old man gave the servant a twenty-pound note saying "that's your .....".  
a) toast      b) lot      c) coat      d) pot



- 15 The poor child is serving a/an ..... as a carpenter. (Longman)  
 a) scholarship    b) apprenticeship    c) hardship    d) membership
- 16 This ..... place isn't suitable for me; I have an allergy, especially in spring. (Longman)  
 a) airy    b) rainy    c) dusty    d) sunny
- 17 My mother said, "..... yourself" when I ran in playing a game and knocked over a chair. (SB)  
 a) Believe    b) Behave    c) Apply    d) Reform
- 18 I felt a spider's ..... brush against my face as I walked through the doorway. (SB)  
 a) web    b) net    c) basket    d) screen
- 19 He worked for a year as a builder's ..... . (SB)  
 a) boss    b) apprentice    c) trainer    d) coach
- 20 The children had an ..... about what game to play. (SB)  
 a) argument    b) assignment    c) attainment    d) attachment

**(B) Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think that Joe was right to take the pound note from Pip?
2. Why do you think the mysterious man in the inn gave Pip a coin wrapped in a banknote? (Longman)
3. Why do you think Pip felt frightened when the mysterious man in the inn gave him a coin? (Longman)
4. If you were Pip, would you continue to visit Miss Havisham despite Estella's bad treatment? Why?
5. Miss Havisham's life seemed to have stopped on the day of her uncompleted marriage. Do you agree with her? Why?
6. Do you think that Miss Havisham really wanted Pip to come and play with Estella? Why? (Longman)
7. Do you think that Miss Havisham's suffering is an excuse for making Estella break Pip's heart? Why?
8. Is it psychologically accepted that Miss Havisham wanted Estella to break Pip's heart? Why? (Longman)
9. Do you pity Pip for his situation with Miss Havisham and Estella? Why? (Longman)
10. Should Estella have been cruel to Pip? Why? (Longman)
11. Can you think of a reason why the pale young gentleman wanted to fight with Pip?
12. Pip continued to work hard with his education despite starting his apprenticeship. What does this show about him?
13. What do you think of Biddy's role in Pip's life?
14. What do you think of Orlick's character?



## Key Vocabulary

act (v) (ed)	يتصرف	injure (v) (d)	يؤذي/يجرح
admire (v) (d)	يعجب بـ	lawyer (n)	محام
attack (n)/ (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهاجم	marry (v) (ied)	يتزوج
benefactor (n)	متبرع/فاعل خير	object (v) (ed)	يعترض
condition (n)	شرط	privately (adv)	على انفراد
congratulate (v) (d)	يهنئ	proof (n)	دليل
crowd (n)	حشد	property (n)	ملكية/ممتلكات
expectations (n)	توقعات/آمال	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
feelings (n)	مشاعر	stairs (n)	سلالم
guest (n)	ضيف	sum (n)	مبلغ من المال
hammer (n)	مطرقة	suspect (v) (ed)	يشك في
household (n)	أفراد العائلة/أهل البيت	upset (v)	يزعج/يضايق

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms &amp; Prepositions

come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقياً	lead a different life	يعيش حياة مختلفة
find his fortune	يبحث عن حظه	make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
from now on	من الآن فصاعداً	my heart was set on	كان قلبي موجهاً نحو
in truth	في الواقع	worth the effort	يستحق الجهد
break into	يقتحم	care for/about	يهتم بـ



## Reading Text



When I visited Miss Havisham the next day, I was sorry that Estella was not there. Miss Sarah Pocket opened the door for me.

'What do you want?' Miss Havisham said angrily. 'I hope you don't want anything from me, because you will get nothing!'

'I don't want anything. I have come to say thank you – for my apprenticeship,' I explained.

'Well,' Miss Havisham replied, '**from now on**<sup>(1)</sup>, come to see me once a year, on your birthday!'

I promised that I would.

'You are looking for Estella, aren't you?' Miss Havisham continued. 'She has gone away for her education and she will become a lady. Do you feel that you have lost her, Pip?'

She laughed, and I did not know what to say. Then she asked me to leave, so I set off for home.

On the way, I met Mr Wopsle, one of the guests from that Christmas dinner a few years ago, and we walked together. It was getting darker now. In the mist, a man came slowly towards us, and we realised it was Orlick. He told us that some more convicts had escaped from the prison ship, and he seemed to act strangely as he walked with us along the road back.

On my return to the house, I was surprised to find a crowd of people in the kitchen. While Joe had been out that evening, someone had broken into our house and they had hit Mrs Joe on the head, injuring her badly. Nothing had been taken, but a convict's leg-irons lay on the floor.



(1) من الآن فصاعدًا



I immediately remembered the convict who I had helped two years before in the graveyard. However, I felt sure that the person who committed the crime was not him. I **suspected**<sup>(1)</sup> Orlick because he had been so angry with my sister. However, I had no **proof**<sup>(2)</sup>.

Mrs Joe was unable to speak or walk again after the attack, but she could draw, and one day, she drew a **hammer**<sup>(3)</sup>. Biddy and I knew at once that the hammer meant the blacksmith's hammer, which meant Orlick! When Mrs Joe was able to sit in the kitchen again, we could see that she was **scared**<sup>(4)</sup> of him.

Mrs Joe could not hurt me now and because Joe needed help in the house, Biddy came to cook and clean for us. At last, my life was improving.

Some years passed, and I continued my apprenticeship at the blacksmith's. My visits to Miss Havisham's house continued once a year. It seemed as though time, like her old clocks, had stopped there. I did not see Estella again during that time, although I often thought of her. And when it was time to leave, Miss Havisham always gave me a coin and told me to come back on my next birthday.

Biddy soon became an important member in our **household**<sup>(5)</sup>. She looked after everything well, and also cared for my sister. Mrs Joe could no longer walk or speak, and now I felt sorry for her. As the weeks became months, and the months became years, I also saw how kind and good Biddy was.

One day, I said to her. 'Biddy, I want to become a fine gentleman.'

'But don't you think you are happier as you are, Pip?' She asked, surprised.

'No, Biddy,' I explained. 'I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now.'

She looked down and was quiet.

'I don't want to be just a blacksmith,' I continued. 'Ever since I met Estella at Miss Havisham's, I have wanted to improve myself. She is so beautiful and clever, and I admire her very much!'

After a moment, Biddy asked quietly, 'Do you want to become a gentleman to **upset**<sup>(6)</sup> her, or to marry her? If you want to upset her, then you shouldn't care what she thinks; if you want to marry her, she probably isn't **worth the effort**<sup>(7)</sup>!'



(7) يستحق الجهد

(5) أفراد العائلة

(6) يزعج/يضايق

(3) مطرقة

(4) مذعور

(1) يشك في

(2) دليل



'That may be true,' I replied, 'but I still admire Estella so much!'

I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings. Biddy told me then that she was glad I could talk to her, and said she would never tell anyone else. 'I will always tell you everything, Biddy!' I said. 'Until you're a fine gentleman,' she replied, in a strange, sad voice.

It seemed impossible that my wish to become a gentleman would come true. But one evening, while Joe and I were at the village inn, listening to Mr Wopsle reading aloud from a newspaper, I noticed that a stranger was looking at us. Then I remembered him. He was the gentleman I had met on the stairs at Miss Havisham's house, years before.



'Is your apprentice, Pip, here?' The dark man asked us, looking at Joe. 'I need to speak **privately**<sup>(1)</sup> to you both.'

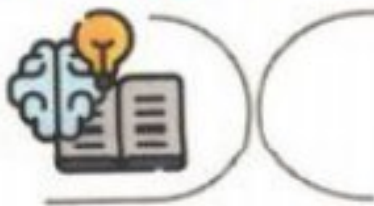
He sounded like an important man, so we invited him to come back to the workshop with us. Once there, he said he was Mr Jaggers, a lawyer from London.

'I am working for someone but I cannot tell you their name,' he explained. 'I have to tell you that Pip has great **expectations**<sup>(2)</sup>. He will receive a large amount of **property**<sup>(3)</sup> in future, so now he must have an education. The only **condition**<sup>(4)</sup> is that he does not ask who his **benefactor**<sup>(5)</sup> is.'

I immediately agreed. Joe was so surprised that he did not object at all when Mr Jaggers asked him if he could end my apprenticeship immediately.

'I have a large sum of money for you,' Mr Jaggers continued, turning to me, 'and your education will begin soon in London, with Mr Matthew Pocket. He will be your teacher and he will make a gentleman of you! But first, take these twenty pounds to buy some new clothes.'

When Joe was asked if he needed any money for losing me at the blacksmith's, he replied, 'Pip is welcome to go and find his fortune. Money makes no difference to my **feelings**<sup>(6)</sup> for him. We will always be best friends.'



(5) متبرع/فاعل خير  
(6) مشاعر

(3) ملكية/ممتلكات  
(4) شرط

(1) على انفراد  
(2) توقعات/آمال



Joe was so good and kind, and really cared about me. When he and Bidy realised that I was to leave them in just a week, they both congratulated me, but they did not say much more than that. I knew that they were sad that I was leaving. My sister did not understand what was happening, although Bidy tried to explain everything to her.

I decided that when I had bought my new clothes, I would put them on at Uncle Pumblechook's house.

'I don't want all the poor people in this village to see me in my fine clothes,' I explained to Joe and Bidy.

They were both **silent**<sup>(1)</sup>. Uncle Pumblechook, however, was delighted.

'I will never forget you, Joe,' I said, as I left the blacksmith's a week later. However, **in truth**<sup>(2)</sup>, I had begun to feel more and more ashamed of Joe's poor education. When I said goodbye to Bidy, I asked if she could teach Joe to speak better, but to my surprise she refused. Suddenly, I felt lonelier than ever before.



(2) في الواقع

(1) صامت



## Questions & Answers

### (A) Factual questions:

1. What was Miss Havisham's response when Pip went to visit her again?

ماذا كان رد الأنسة هافيشام عندما ذهب بيب لزيارتها مرة أخرى؟

She wasn't happy to see him and asked him what he wanted.

2. What did Miss Havisham tell Pip about Estella?

ماذا قالت الأنسة هافيشام لبيب عن إستيلا؟

She said that Estella had gone away for her education and she would become a lady.

3. What did Orlick tell Pip and Mr Wopsle?

ماذا قال أورليك لبيب والسيد ووبسل؟

He told them that some more convicts had escaped from the prison ship.

4. What bad news waited Pip when he returned home?

ما الأخبار السيئة التي كانت في انتظار بيب عندما عاد إلى المنزل؟

Someone had broken into Joe's house and they had hit Mrs Joe on the head, injuring her badly.

5. Who did Pip and Bidy suspect had attacked Mrs Joe? Why?

من الذى اشتبه بيب وبيدى فى هجومه على السيدة جو؟ لماذا؟

They suspected Orlick as he was angry with Mrs Joe. Besides Mrs Joe drew a hammer although she couldn't speak.

6. How often did Pip visit Miss Havisham?

كم مرة كان يزور بيب الأنسة هافيشام؟

He visited her once a year on his birthday as she had asked him.

7. Bidy became a member of Pip's household after Mrs Joe was hurt. Discuss.

أصبحت بيدي أحد أفراد أسرة بيب بعد إصابة السيدة جو. ناقش.

She looked after everything well, and also cared for Mrs Joe who could no longer walk or speak.

8. Why did Pip start to feel ashamed of his home and family?

(WB)

لماذا بدأ بيب يشعر بالخجل من منزله وعائلته؟

He did not want to be a blacksmith and was ashamed of his poor and simple life.

He wanted to become a gentleman.

9. Where did Pip and Joe meet Mr Jaggers? Where did they take him?

أين التقى بيب وجو بالسيد جاجرز؟ إلى أين أخذوه؟

They met him at the village inn and they took him to Joe's workshop as he said he wanted to speak to them privately.



10. What did Pip remember about him?

ماذا تذكر بيب عنه؟

He remembered that he had met him on the stairs at Miss Havisham's house, years before.

11. What did Mr Jaggers offer Pip?

ماذا قدم السيد جاجرز لبيب؟

He said that Pip would receive a large amount of property in future, so now he must have an education.

12. What was the only condition of the offer?

ماذا كان الشرط الوحيد للعرض؟

The only condition was that he did not ask who his benefactor was.

13. What was Pip's response to Mr Jaggers' offer?

ماذا كان رد بيب على عرض السيد جاجرز؟

Pip agreed immediately to Mr Jaggers' offer.

14. Why did Mr Jaggers offer Joe money?

(WB)

لماذا عرض السيد جاجرز على جو المال؟

To compensate Joe for losing Pip as an apprentice.

15. What was Joe's reply to Mr Jaggers' offer?

ماذا كان رد جو على عرض السيد جاجرز؟

Although Joe was surprised, he said that Pip was welcome to go and find his fortune.

16. Who would be Pip's teacher? Where?

من سيكون معلم بيب؟ أين؟

Mr Matthew Pocket would be his teacher in London.

17. How much money did Mr Jaggers immediately give Pip? Why?

ما مقدار المال الذي منحه السيد جاجرز على الفور لبيب؟ لماذا؟

He gave him twenty pounds to buy new clothes.

18. Where did Pip intend to keep the new clothes, he bought with Mr Jaggers' money? Why?

أين كان ينوي بيب الاحتفاظ بالملابس الجديدة التي اشتراها بأموال السيد جاجرز؟ لماذا؟

He intended to keep them at Uncle Pumblechook's house. He didn't want all the poor people in the village to see him in his fine clothes.

19. How did Joe and Biddy feel when they knew Pip would be leaving soon?

كيف شعر جو وبيدي عندما علموا أن بيب سيغادر قريباً؟

Although they were sad, they congratulated him.

20. Why does Pip ask Biddy to help Joe to speak better?

(WB)

لماذا يطلب بيب من بيدي مساعدة جو على التحدث بشكل أفضل؟

Pip felt ashamed of Joe's poor education and wanted Biddy to help Joe improve.



## (B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think Miss Havisham was angry when Pip visited her?

لماذا تعتقد أن الأنسة هافيشام كانت غاضبة عندما زارها بيب؟

I think she thought that he became greedy and came to ask for money.

2. Why do you think Orlick mentioned that more convicts had escaped from the prison ship?

(WB)

لماذا برأيك ذكر أورليك أن المزيد من المدانين قد هربوا من سفينة السجن؟

To give others the idea that it was a convict who had attacked Mrs Joe.

3. Do you agree with Pip and Biddy when they suspected Orlick of attacking Mrs Joe?

هل تتفق مع بيب وبيدي عندما اشتبهوا في أورليك لمهاجمته السيدة جو؟

Yes, I agree. He seemed a bad man and he usually argued with her.

4. Should Pip have pitied Mrs Joe although she was cruel to him? Why?

(Longman)

هل كان يجب على بيب أن يشفق على السيدة جو رغم أنها كانت قاسية معه؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think he should. After all, she is his sister who cared for him after his parents died.

5. After Mrs Joe was hurt, Biddy helped Joe's family a lot. What does this show about her?

بعد إصابة السيدة جو، ساعدت بيدي عائلة جو كثيرًا. ماذا يظهر هذا عنها؟

It shows that she is a kind and helpful young woman.

6. Why do you think Pip continued to visit Miss Havisham once a year?

لماذا تعتقد أن بيب استمر في زيارة الأنسة هافيشام مرة في السنة؟

I think he always hoped that Estella would come back one day. He also was grateful for Miss Havisham who paid for his apprenticeship.

7. In your opinion, why did Miss Havisham ask Pip to visit her on his birthday?

في رأيك، لماذا طلبت الأنسة هافيشام من بيب زيارتها في عيد ميلاده؟

Perhaps she wanted to see him grow up. She may have felt guilty and wanted to make up for making Estella break his heart.

8. What does Pip say he needs to do to be happy?

(WB)

ماذا يقول بيب إنه يحتاج أن يفعله ليكون سعيدًا؟

Pip says he needs to lead a different life to the one he lives now to be happy.

9. Pip said to Biddy, "I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings". If you were Pip, would you change your feelings towards Estella? Why?

(Longman)

قال بيب لبيدي، «علمت أنني ارتكبت خطأ، لكنني لم أستطع تغيير مشاعري». إذا كنت مكان بيب، هل ستغير مشاعرك تجاه إستيلا؟ لماذا؟

Of course, I would. Pip was making a mistake in hoping for the impossible. I think he should have tried to give up loving Estella.



10. When Pip told Biddy that he would always talk to her, she said, 'Until you're a fine gentleman'. What do you think she meant?

عندما أخبر بيبي بيدي أنه سيتحدث معها دائماً، قالت «حتى تصبح رجلاً نبيلًا». ماذا تعتقد أنها قصدت؟

I think she meant that Pip would change his attitude towards her when he became a gentleman.

11. If you were Pip, would you accept Mr Jaggers' offer so easily? Why?

إذا كنت مكان بيبي، فهل تقبل عرض السيد جاجرز بهذه السهولة؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. Although it is a good offer, Pip should have thought much before accepting money from a person he didn't know.

12. Shouldn't Pip have asked who that benefactor was? Why?

(Longman)

ألم يكن يجب أن يسأل بيبي من كان ذلك فاعل الخير؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think he should. The mysterious benefactor might be a criminal who would cause Pip some trouble.

13. What do you think of Joe's position on Mr Jaggers' offer?

ما رأيك في موقف جو من عرض السيد جاجرز؟

I think it was very kind and thoughtful of Joe to accept the offer. He only wanted the best for Joe.

14. Was Pip right not to want all the poor people in the village to see him in his fine clothes? Why?

(Longman)

هل كان بيبي محقاً في عدم رغبته في أن يراه كل فقراء القرية بملابسه الجميلة؟ لماذا؟

No, I think he wasn't. He shouldn't be so cruel to the people who he lived with for a long time.

15. If you were Pip, would you leave your friends and family behind to move to a big city to get a better education? Why?

(Longman)

إذا كنت مكان بيبي، فهل ستترك أصدقاءك وعائلتك خلفك للانتقال إلى مدينة كبيرة للحصول على تعليم أفضل؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. He only paid attention to his love for Estella ignoring everyone else.

## تطبيق الأضواء



النماذج الشهرية: تقدر تستعد لاختبارات  
الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل ملف  
الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
www.aladwaa.com





(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I think you ..... very wisely when you told the police about that.  
a) rehearsed      b) acted      c) trained      d) believed
- 2 The immune system is the body's defence against ..... by germs.  
a) attach      b) relief      c) attack      d) treatment
- 3 The karate player ..... herself during training and she couldn't take part in the tournament.  
a) puzzled      b) inspected      c) trained      d) injured
- 4 After 40 years, my uncle's dream of owning a home ..... true.  
a) went      b) came      c) made      d) travelled
- 5 Someone broke ..... my car and stole the radio and the mobile I left there.  
a) into      b) at      c) of      d) up
- 6 The students were asked to remain ..... while their names are called before the test.  
a) moving      b) silent      c) shy      d) ashamed
- 7 Our parents will give us the money on one ..... that we pay it back within six months.  
a) state      b) test      c) condition      d) position
- 8 The nursery school teacher asked to talk to the boy's parents .....  
a) sadly      b) vainly      c) publically      d) privately
- 9 The young actress laughed and chatted but was, ..... truth, not having much fun.  
a) at      b) about      c) in      d) on
- 10 The young man wasn't set free since he had no ..... that he was innocent. (Longman)  
a) removal      b) disapproval      c) roof      d) proof
- 11 An anonymous ..... donated 10 thousand pounds for our local charity. (Longman)  
a) factor      b) benefactor      c) malefactor      d) tractor
- 12 Our hearts were all ..... on spending the weekend in the country until my brother broke his leg and we had to postpone the trip. (Longman)  
a) left      b) prepared      c) set      d) sat
- 13 As I had ..... all along, he was not a real businessman; he turned out to be a crook! (Longman)  
a) pretended      b) invented      c) respected      d) suspected
- 14 A growing number of households have at least one computer. Households here means ..... (Longman)  
a) the big buildings in a certain city  
b) the people who live together in one house.  
c) the offices in a company  
d) the desks inside one room



- 15 My grandparents bought ..... in Cairo when they were younger. (SB)  
 a) availability      b) equality      c) ability      d) property
- 16 We need to use this ..... to hit the nails into the wood. (SB)  
 a) saw      b) hammer      c) drill      d) file
- 17 My dad said that from now ....., I must do my homework as soon as I get home. (SB)  
 a) in      b) on      c) about      d) to
- 18 My brother has worked very hard on his art project, but he thinks the hard work will be ..... the effort. (SB)  
 a) equal      b) worth      c) worse      d) clear
- 19 I have ..... that good things are going to come my way this year. (SB)  
 a) implications      b) fights      c) fears      d) expectations
- 20 My mum was ..... that I'd forgotten her birthday. (SB)  
 a) upset      b) pleased      c) joyful      d) excited

**(B) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Miss Havisham laughed when she told him that Estella had gone away?
2. If you were Pip, would you continue loving Estella? Why?
3. Do you agree with Pip's opinion that he wouldn't be happy until he became a gentleman?
4. If you were Joe, would you refuse Mr Jaggers' offer? Why?
5. Although Joe advised Pip to be happy with his position, Pip seemed to ignore his advice. Do you agree with him? Why?
6. Why do you think Biddy helped and advised Pip so much?
7. Why do you think Pip didn't ask who his benefactor was?
8. If you were Pip, would you hurt Orlick to take revenge for Mrs Joe? Why?
9. Was Pip right to put on the fine clothes he bought at Mr Pumblechook? Why?
10. "I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now." Do you think Pip was right to feel that way? Why? (Longman)
11. Do you agree that Joe had better morals than Pip? Why? (Longman)
12. Would Pip have paid more attention to Biddy if he hadn't known Estella? Why? (Longman)
13. In your opinion, did Pip want to have a better life just because he was ambitious? Why? (Longman)
14. Do you think that Pip's education alone could change his life? Why? (Longman)
15. "I have to tell you that Pip has great expectations. He will receive a large amount of property in future," said Mr Jaggers. If you were in Pip's place, would this large amount of property in future be your "great expectation"? Why? (Longman)



### Key Vocabulary

adopt (v) (ed)	يتبنى	fiancé (n)	خطيب
afterwards (adv)	بعد ذلك	footsteps (n)	خطوات أقدام
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	grumpy (adj)	سهل الغضب
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	half-brother (n)	أخ غير شقيق
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	handsome (adj)	وسيم
clerk (n)	موظف	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
coach (n)	وسيلة نقل عام	jealous (adj)	غيور
comfortable (adj)	مرتاح	lodgings (n)	مسكن
convince (v) (d)	يقنع	ordinary (adj)	عادي
cruel (adj)	قاسي	secret (n)/ (adj)	سر/سري
dare (v) (d)	يجرؤ	share (n)	نصيب
disappointed (adj)	محبط	suitable (adj)	مناسب
engaged (adj)	مخطوبة	unpleasant (adj)	غير سار

### Phrases, Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at once	في الحال	in a few days' time	في خلال سنوات قليلة
got engaged	تمت خطبتها	take revenge on	يثأر من
angry with	غاضب من	scared of	مرعوب من
jealous of	غيور من	speak to	يتحدث إلى



## Reading Text

I visited Miss Havisham, wearing my new clothes.

'I have been given a fortune since I last saw you, Miss Havisham,' I said. 'And I am so grateful!'

'I know,' she replied, 'and you have a good life ahead of you. But remember to follow Mr Jaggers' advice!'

She looked pleased as I said goodbye, and I felt sure that she was my secret benefactor. After all, Mr Jaggers had told me that I was to be educated in London by Mr Matthew Pocket, one of Miss Havisham's **relatives**<sup>(1)</sup>.

When I was sitting on the coach to London the next day, after a quick goodbye to Joe, my sister and Biddy, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me.

It was five long hours before I arrived at Mr Jaggers' office in London. His **clerk**<sup>(2)</sup>, Mr Wemmick, explained that because Mr Jaggers was still at work, I should wait for him in his office. It was an unpleasant place, and I was sad that I had left the blacksmith's.

When Mr Jaggers returned, he said that I should go to my **lodgings**<sup>(3)</sup> at Barnard's Inn, where I would share rooms with Mr Matthew Pocket's son. He wanted to take me to his father's house in a few days' time, so that I could meet my new teacher.

'Here is some money, Pip,' Mr Jaggers continued. 'It is a lot of money! But don't worry; I will know how much you spend, in case there are any difficulties.'

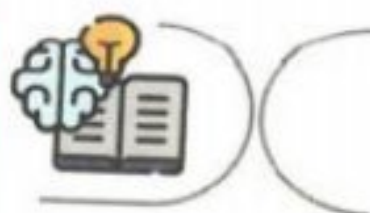
This was good news! I felt happier now, and I agreed to go to my lodgings with Mr Wemmick. He told me that Mr Matthew Pocket lived in Hammersmith, five miles away.

When we came to Barnard's Inn, I was disappointed. It looked dusty and gloomy. Mr Wemmick left me at the door, but no one answered it.

I thought that no one would come and let me in, but after about half an hour, I heard **footsteps**<sup>(4)</sup>. A tall, thin young man appeared.

'Mr Pip?' he asked. 'I am sorry! I went to buy some fruit at the market and I thought you would arrive later than this.'

He invited me in. It was only when he turned to speak to me, in the light of the window, that I saw who he was – the pale young gentleman!



(3) مسكن  
(4) خطوات أقدام

(1) أقارب  
(2) موظف



Herbert Pocket was the pale young man. He was not handsome<sup>(1)</sup>, but his face was cheerful, and I liked him at once. However, I had a strange feeling that he would never become rich.

We immediately began talking. I discovered that Miss Havisham had once thought she might adopt<sup>(2)</sup> Herbert, so she had invited him to visit her. That was on the day that I had met Herbert, and fought with him in the garden. After that visit, however, Herbert was not invited to Miss Havisham's again.

'She didn't think I was suitable,' Herbert told me. 'But if she had adopted me, I would probably be rich now. And if that had happened, then I might even be Estella's fiancé<sup>(3)</sup>, too!'

'You must be disappointed!' I said.

'No, not at all,' he replied. 'I think I have had a lucky escape! Estella is proud and cruel. Miss Havisham adopted her, you know. She wants to use her – to take revenge on<sup>(4)</sup> men!'

I was very surprised. Estella was adopted! Why did Miss Havisham want to use her in such a strange way?

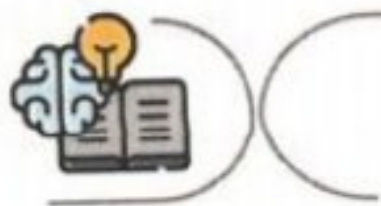
When we sat down to eat, Herbert continued to tell me about Miss Havisham. First, however, he told me how to behave at the dinner table, for which I was grateful.

I soon discovered from Herbert that Mr Jaggers was Miss Havisham's lawyer. Mr Jaggers had suggested that Herbert's father, Mr Matthew Pocket, should be my teacher in London. I was convinced now that Miss Havisham was my secret benefactor!

Herbert told me more about Miss Havisham. He explained that when she was a young woman, she and her half-brother had inherited<sup>(5)</sup> a fortune from their father.

It was not long, however, before her half-brother spent his share<sup>(6)</sup> of the money and became jealous of her. He wanted to have her money, and he started to think about how he could get it from her. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get it.

Soon afterwards, Miss Havisham got engaged<sup>(7)</sup>. During this time, she gave most of her fortune to her fiancé. This was against the advice of her cousin, Matthew Pocket, who warned her not to trust her future husband too much. Miss Havisham became very angry with Matthew Pocket and ordered him to leave her house. He has never been there since.



مخطوبة (7)

ورث (5)  
نصيب (6)

خطيب (3)  
يثار من (4)

وسيم (1)  
يتبنى (2)



'Is your father still angry with Miss Havisham for ordering him to leave?' I asked Herbert.

'No, he's not angry at all,' replied Herbert. 'But when Miss Havisham sent him away that day, she said that he wanted to get her money himself. If he visited now, it would look as if he still wanted her money.'



On the morning of the wedding, when everything was ready and the guests were expected, there was some bad news. Miss Havisham's fiancé had left her! She received the news at twenty to nine in the morning, while she was getting dressed. Ever since that time, more than twenty-five years ago, neither Miss Havisham, nor her house, had changed at all. Even the clocks in the house had been stopped.

'But why didn't Miss Havisham's fiancé marry her?' I asked. 'He would have had all her property then.'

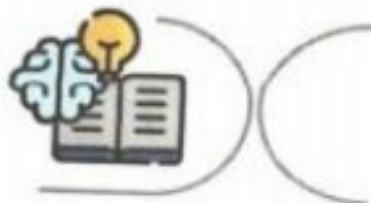
'Perhaps he was already married,' Herbert said.

It seemed that the fiancé had, in fact, planned everything with Miss Havisham's half-brother, hoping to take as much money from her as they could. Nobody knew if the two men were still **alive**<sup>(1)</sup>, or not.

The following day, I was taken to meet the Pocket family at their home in Hammersmith in West London. They lived by the river in an old house. When we arrived, we found Herbert's younger brothers and sisters playing noisily in the garden. Despite the place being very ordinary, it was a happy house, and I immediately felt comfortable there.

Mr Matthew Pocket and his wife were as cheerful as their son, and made me welcome. After they showed me my room, they introduced me to two other young men who were also staying there. We soon got to know each other very well. Startop was **good-natured**<sup>(2)</sup>, but Bentley Drummle was proud and **grumpy**<sup>(3)</sup>.

I was learning how to live like a young gentleman and improving my education because I would be very rich one day. Mr Jaggers gave me more money whenever I asked, which was quite often. I noticed, however, that he never laughed, and everyone seemed scared of him.



(3) سهل الغضب

(1) على قيد الحياة

(2) جيد الطبع



One day, while waiting in Mr Jaggers' office, I had a conversation with Mr Wemmick about Mr Jaggers' work. I noticed that Mr Wemmick was proudly wearing a **ring**<sup>(1)</sup>. He told me that it was a present from people he had worked with.

I was invited to Mr Wemmick's house. He lived with his father some distance from the centre of London, in a strange building that looked like a small wooden **castle**<sup>(2)</sup>.

Mr Wemmick told me that all of London's criminals were afraid of Mr Jaggers, so they left him alone. I learnt that Mr Jaggers did not even lock his house at night, and often said, 'I want to see the man who'll **dare**<sup>(3)</sup> to rob me!'



(3) يجرؤ

(1) خاتم

(2) قلعة



## Questions & Answers

### (A) Factual questions:

1. Why was Pip sure that Miss Havisham was his benefactor?

لماذا كان بيب متأكدًا من أن الأنسة هافيشام كانت فاعلة الخير له؟

She seemed glad to hear about Pip's news. Besides, he was to be educated in London by Mr Matthew Pocket, one of Miss Havisham's relatives.

2. How did Pip feel when he was on the couch to London?

كيف شعر بيب عندما كان على متن الحافلة إلى لندن؟

He felt so excited. He felt as though the whole world was waiting for him.

3. Why was Pip unhappy at first that he had left the blacksmith's?

(WB)

لماذا كان بيب غير سعيد في البداية لأنه ترك ورشة الحداد؟

He was unhappy because he had to wait in an unpleasant office for Mr Jaggers.

4. Who would Pip first live with?

مع من كان سيعيش بيب أولاً؟

He would share rooms with Herbert Pocket, Mr Mathew's son at Barnard's Inn.

5. Why did Mr Pocket's son take a long time to open the door to Pip?

(WB)

لماذا استغرق نجل السيد بوكيت وقتًا طويلًا لفتح الباب لبيب؟

He took a long time because he had gone to buy some fruit at the market.

6. What surprise did Pip have on seeing Herbert Pocket?

ماذا كانت مفاجأة بيب عندما رأى هربرت بوكيت؟

He remembered that Herbert was the pale young gentleman he fought with at Miss Havisham's house.

7. Why was Herbert Pocket in Miss Havisham's house on the day he fought with Pip?

لماذا كان هربرت بوكيت في منزل الأنسة هافيشام في اليوم الذي تشاجر فيه مع بيب؟

Miss Havisham wanted to see him as she thought that she would adopt him.

8. What was Pip's first impression of Herbert Pocket?

ماذا كان انطباع بيب الأول عن هربرت بوكيت؟

Pip thought that he was not handsome, but his face was cheerful, and he liked him at once. However, he had a strange feeling that he would never become rich.

9. Was Herbert sad about Miss Havisham's decision not to adopt him?

هل كان هربرت حزينًا على قرار الأنسة هافيشام بعدم تبنيه؟

No, he wasn't. Although he would have been rich, he thought he had a lucky escape.

10. What sort of person does Miss Havisham want Estella to become?

(WB)

أي نوع من الأشخاص تريد الأنسة هافيشام أن تصبح إستيلا؟

Miss Havisham wants Estella to be cruel and heartless to take her revenge on men.



11. What did Herbert tell Pip about Miss Havisham's past?

ماذا قال هربرت لبيب عن ماضي الأنسة هافيشام؟

He explained that when she was a young woman, she and her half-brother had inherited a fortune from their father. Her half-brother spent his share of the money and became jealous of her. He wanted to have her money, and he started to think about how he could get it from her.

12. Why was Miss Havisham angry with Herbert's father, Mathew Pocket?

لماذا كانت الأنسة هافيشام غاضبة من والد هربرت، ماثيو بوكيت؟

When Miss Havisham gave most of her fortune to her fiancé, Matthew Pocket, warned her not to trust her future husband too much. She thought he wanted the money for himself.

13. Why wasn't Miss Havisham's wedding complete?

لماذا لم يكتمل حفل زفاف الأنسة هافيشام؟

On the morning of the wedding, when everything was ready and the guests were expected, Miss Havisham's fiancé had left her.

14. What role did Miss Havisham's half-brother play in this?

It seemed that the fiancé had planned everything with Miss Havisham's half-brother, hoping to take as much money from her as they could.

15. Where was Mr Mathew Pocket's house? What did Pip notice about Mr Pocket's family?

أين كان منزل السيد ماثيو بوكيت؟ ماذا لاحظ بيب بخصوص عائلة السيد بوكيت؟

It was in Hammersmith in West London. Despite the place being very ordinary, it was a happy house, and Pip immediately felt comfortable there.

16. Who did Pip meet in Mr Mathew's house?

من التقى بيب في منزل السيد ماثيو؟

He met two young men who lived there, Startop and Bentley Drummle.

17. How did Pip describe his new colleagues at Mr Mathew's house?

كيف وصف بيب زملاءه الجدد في منزل السيد ماثيو؟

Startop was good-natured, but Bentley Drummle was proud and grumpy.

18. What was Pip learning in Mr Mathew Pocket's house?

ماذا كان بيب يتعلم في منزل السيد ماثيو بوكيت؟

He was learning how to live like a young gentleman and improving his education.

19. Who did Pip meet in Mr Jaggers' office?

من التقى بيب في مكتب السيد جاجرز؟

He met Mr Wemmick.

20. What did Mr Wemmick tell Pip about Mr Jaggers?

ماذا قال السيد ويميك لبيب عن السيد جاجرز؟

Mr Wemmick told him that all of London's criminals were afraid of Mr Jaggers, so they left him alone. Mr Jaggers did not even lock his house at night, and often said, 'I want to see the man who'll dare to rob me!'



## (B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Do you think that Miss Havisham was Pip's real benefactor?

هل تعتقد أن الأنسة هافيشام كانت المتبرعة الحقيقية لبيب؟

Yes, she apparently is. She told Pip that she had previously known about his fortune and she seemed happy.

2. Herbert Pocket treated Pip nicely although he had hurt him when they fought at Miss Havisham's house. What does this show about him?

عامل هربرت بوكيت بلبف على الرغم من أنه جرحه عندما تعاركوا في منزل الأنسة هافيشام. ماذا يظهر هذا عنه؟

It shows that he is a kind and tolerant person.

3. Do you agree with Herbert that he wasn't disappointed about not being adopted by Miss Havisham?

هل تتفق مع هربرت في أنه لم يشعر بخيبة أمل لعدم تبنيه من قبل الأنسة هافيشام؟

No, I don't agree with him. He would have been rich and lived a more comfortable life.

4. If you were Estella, would you agree to be a tool to harm others? Why? (Longman)

إذا كنت مكان إستيلا، فهل توافق على أن تكون أداة لإيذاء الآخرين؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. It is cruel to hurt people who hadn't done you any harm.

5. Do you think that Miss Havisham had an influential personality? Why? (Longman)

هل تعتقد أن السيدة هافيشام كانت لها شخصية مؤثرة؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think so. She influenced the adopted girl, Estella, so much that she made her heartless.

6. Do you think that Miss Havisham's half-brother was right to plan to take his sister's money by all means?

هل تعتقد أن الأخ غير الشقيق للأنسة هافيشام كان محقاً في التخطيط لأخذ أموال أخته بكل الوسائل؟

No, I don't think so. He should have been careful with his money and should have worked harder to gain more money.

7. Although Miss Havisham accused Mathew Pocket of wishing to take her money, he wasn't angry with her. What does this show about him?

على الرغم من أن الأنسة هافيشام اتهمت ماثيو بوكيت بأنها ترغب في أخذ نقودها، إلا أنه لم يكن غاضباً منها. ماذا يظهر عنه هذا؟

It shows that he is a tolerant and honest person who wanted to help others.

8. In your opinion, was Miss Havisham right to make her life stop at the day of her wedding twenty-five years before? Why?

برأيك، هل كانت الأنسة هافيشام محقة في جعل حياتها تتوقف في يوم زفافها قبل خمسة وعشرين عاماً؟

No, she wasn't right. She should have started a new life.

9. Do you think Mr Jaggers is a good person? Why? (WB)

هل تعتقد أن السيد جاجرز شخص جيد؟ لماذا؟

He appears to be a bad person as his servant is scared of him.

10. Do you think that Pip should really trust Mr Jaggers? Why?

هل تعتقد أن بيب يجب أن يثق حقاً بالسيد جاجرز؟

Yes, I think so. Although he appeared a tough person, he arranged everything about Pip well and provided him with money whenever he needed it.



(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We found a ..... for the night in a beautiful little bed and breakfast right off the bicycle trail.  
a) ledge                      b) ledger                      c) legging                      d) lodging
- 2 They have no children of their own, but they're hoping to ..... a child from the orphanage.  
a) adopt                      b) adapt                      c) adjust                      d) inherit
- 3 Hanan was so ..... of Leila's new dress that she went out and bought herself one.  
a) concerned                      b) jealous                      c) victimised                      d) cold
- 4 The rich man's son will ..... the factory when his father dies.  
a) intake                      b) inhale                      c) inhibit                      d) inherit
- 5 It can be beneficial to ..... your feelings with someone you trust.  
a) share                      b) divide                      c) split                      d) use
- 6 She got ..... last summer, and the wedding is set for next month.  
a) engage                      b) engaged                      c) engaging                      d) engagement
- 7 Most people don't like the new manager, but they don't ..... to say so.  
a) care                      b) share                      c) bare                      d) dare
- 8 The king took ..... on those who accused him of treason.  
a) revenge                      b) treaty                      c) bravery                      d) confidence
- 9 Someone's ..... is a boy or man who has either the same mother or the same father as they have.  
a) half-brother                      b) half-sister                      c) step-father                      d) step-mother
- 10 Please don't be angry ..... me for breaking the table. It wasn't my fault.  
a) for                      b) in                      c) with                      d) of
- 11 The old man was kept ..... on a life-support machine.  
a) injured                      b) fainted                      c) dead                      d) alive
- 12 I am completely ..... that working for that company is a good decision. (Longman)  
a) agreed                      b) disagreed                      c) convinced                      d) forced



- 13 The young man was arrested after the police discovered that he had been ..... in the crime. (Longman)  
 a) engaged      b) enjoyed      c) enlarged      d) entered
- 14 ..... revenge on those who harmed you will never give you a sense of peace. (Longman)  
 a) Letting      b) Making      c) Taking      d) Sitting
- 15 She is very rich; she has ..... a fortune from her late grandfather. (Longman)  
 a) robbed      b) inherited      c) left      d) done
- 16 Good teachers never ..... a single technique: they always use different strategies. (Longman)  
 a) appear      b) succeed      c) adopt      d) agree
- 17 The manager asked the ..... to type the letter on the computer. (WB)  
 a) servant      b) clerk      c) customer      d) producer
- 18 Manar came in last in the race, so she's feeling quite ..... (WB)  
 a) successful      b) cheerful      c) grumpy      d) optimistic
- 19 Rasha got engaged. Yesterday, she and her ..... Adam, plan to have a wedding reception in June. (WB)  
 a) assistant      b) classmate      c) colleague      d) fiancé
- 20 The Smiths are now very rich thanks to their grandfather's ..... (WB)  
 a) debts      b) inheritance      c) heritage      d) quality
- 21 The teacher asked the students to ..... their answers with the rest of the class. (WB)  
 a) hide      b) divide      c) share      d) prevent
- 22 Noha was ..... when she saw that her new shoes were broken. (WB)  
 a) impressive      b) delighted      c) vain      d) disappointed
- 23 My mum told me I look very ..... with my new haircut! (WB)  
 a) handsome      b) cheerful      c) virtual      d) affectionate
- 24 We live in an ..... house near the station. (WB)  
 a) inventive      b) innovative      c) ordinary      d) excited
- 25 My grandmother is always ..... She's always laughing! (WB)  
 a) disappointed      b) ashamed      c) depressed      d) cheerful



**(B) Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Pip, would you be so excited to leave the people who loved you behind? Why?
2. Should Herbert treat Pip so kindly after their fight at Miss Havisham's house? Why?
3. If you were Miss Havisham, would you give your half-brother more money after spending his share of their inheritance? Why?
4. Was Miss Havisham right to trust her fiancé so much?
5. Mr Pocket's happy family shows that you needn't be rich in order to be happy. Do you agree with this view? Why?
6. If you were Pip, would you trust Herbert Pocket so easily? Why?
7. If you were Pip, would you be pleased to have money or know your real benefactor? Why? (Longman)
8. Should Pip have continued staying at the blacksmith's instead of going for his new life in London? Why? (Longman)
9. "After a quick goodbye to Joe, my sister and Biddy, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me." What do you think Pip meant by these words? (Longman)
10. Do you think that Herbert Pocket would have been happier if Miss Havisham had adopted him? Why? (Longman)
11. If Miss Havisham had helped her brother financially, do you think that he wouldn't have plotted with her fiancé against her? Why? (Longman)
12. Which character do you pity more: Miss Havisham or Pip? Why? (Longman)

**تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً**

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)





## Key Vocabulary

affectionately (adv)	بمودة	housekeeper (n)	مديرة منزل
anxious (adj)	قلق	life sentence (n)	حكم مؤبد
attention (n)	اهتمام	plenty (n)	كثرة/وفرة
audience (n)	متفرجين	relief (n)	راحة
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	remarkable (adj)	رائع
boast (v) (ed)	يتباهى	scars (n)	ندبات
competition (n)	منافسة	shiny (adj)	لامع
cough (v) (ed)	يسعل/يكح	skill (n)	مهارة
Enthusiastic (adj)	متحمس/حماسي	sleeves (n)	أكمام
glad (adj)	سعيد	tutor (n)	معلم/مرشد
guard (n)	حارس	wrist (n)	معصم
held on to (v)	يتمسك بـ		

## Phrases, Expressions, Idioms &amp; Prepositions

after all	على أية حال	came back to haunt me	عادت تطاردني
as a form of entertainment	كنوع من التسلية	get too much attention	يحصل على اهتمام أكثر من اللازم
at the request of	بناءً على طلب	took turns	يتبادل الأدوار
far from	بعيد عن	ready for	جاهز/مستعد لـ
keep away from	يبتعد عن	unfriendly to	غير لطيف مع
boast about	يتباهى/ يفتخر بـ		



## Reading Text



A few days afterwards, I was invited to dinner at Mr Jaggers' house with Herbert Pocket, Startop and Bentley Drummle.

Mr Jaggers lived in a large, gloomy building, not far from his office. We all sat down at a big table. There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, but Mr Jaggers kept everything at his side, and served us himself.

When he saw Drummle, he immediately asked me who he was.

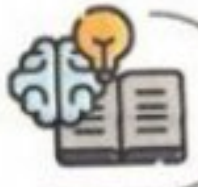
'That is Bentley Drummle,' I replied.

'So, Bentley Drummle is his name, is it?' he said. Mr Jaggers thought about this information for a moment before saying, 'I like the look of him!'

Mr Jaggers spent a lot of time looking at Drummle. He talked to Drummle for a long time, and I heard Drummle **boasting**<sup>(1)</sup> that he was much stronger than Startop and me. We were both annoyed, and Startop and I found ourselves talking boastfully as well. Our conversation became a competition to show who had the best skills.

Mr Jaggers seemed to enjoy our talk as a form of **entertainment**<sup>(2)</sup>. But I didn't enjoy it at all.

I don't know why I said some of the things I did, but being among these people seemed to make me behave that way.



(2) ترفيه

(1) متباهيًا



Just then, a woman of about forty entered the room. She was tall and thin, with pale eyes and long hair, and she gave Mr Jaggers an **anxious**<sup>(1)</sup> look as she put more food on the table. She seemed to be worried that Mr Jaggers would say something bad about the food. He introduced her as Molly, his **housekeeper**<sup>(2)</sup>.

'Now, if you gentlemen want to see some real strength, show them your **wrists**<sup>(3)</sup>, Molly!'

Mr Jaggers continued.

She pulled up her **sleeves**<sup>(4)</sup> and showed them to us. One of her wrists had terrible **scars**<sup>(5)</sup> on it; it must have been cut badly in the past.

'I have never met a man or a woman with stronger hands than Molly,' Mr Jaggers said. 'They are **remarkable**<sup>(6)</sup>! Don't you just think so?'

We all took turns to look at her arms. Then, Mr Jaggers thought that Molly was getting too much attention, so he told her to leave the room again.

'At half-past nine, gentlemen,' said Mr Jaggers, 'we need to finish. Please make good use of your time here.'

Until that time, Drummle continued to boast about things he had done, which Mr Jaggers seemed to encourage. However, when Drummle left the house with Startop, Drummle realised that he no longer had an **enthusiastic**<sup>(7)</sup> audience for his boasting, and the two started to argue.

Before leaving, I told Mr Jaggers that I did not like Drummle at all. He advised me to **keep away**<sup>(8)</sup> from him and then he said good night.

Fortunately, however, Drummle finished his education with Mr Matthew Pocket soon afterwards and returned home, to my great **relief**<sup>(9)</sup>.

A few weeks later, a letter arrived from Biddy. She wrote:

Dear Mr Pip,

I am writing to you **at the request of**<sup>(10)</sup> Mr Joe Gargery to let you know that he is going to be in London and would be very glad to see you. He will arrive at nine o'clock in the morning and hopes that this will be a good time for you. I am sure that you will be happy to see him because you always had a good heart.

Your poor sister is much the same as when you left. We talk about you every day and think about what you are saying and doing.

Yours sincerely,

Biddy



(9) راحة  
(10) بناء على طلب

(7) متحمس/حماسي  
(8) يبتعد

(5) ندبات  
(6) رائع

(3) معصمين  
(4) أكمام

(1) قلق  
(2) مديرة منزل



I wished that I could pay Joe not to come. He was my friend, but I was ashamed of him now. He wanted to visit me at Barnard's Inn, where I still had lodgings with Herbert. It was lucky, I thought, that he was not visiting me at my **tutor's**<sup>(1)</sup> home in Hammersmith. I didn't want to introduce him to everyone there.

Early one morning, Joe arrived at my lodgings. He would not sit down. He looked very uncomfortable and he remained standing. He **held on to**<sup>(2)</sup> his hat nervously. He seemed anxious not to do or say the wrong thing, but I was annoyed. If only he would not call me 'Sir' so often!

We ate breakfast with Herbert, who tried to help Joe to feel comfortable. But Joe coughed too much, sat too far away from the table, and dropped food everywhere. It was only when Herbert left for work, and we were alone, that I found out why he had come.

'Miss Havisham wishes to see you, sir,' Joe said. 'And she wants you to know that Estella has come home.'

I hoped that Joe could not see how I felt.

'Pip, my dear friend,' he said, **affectionately**<sup>(3)</sup>. 'I wish you well!'

Then he left. A few minutes later, I was sorry that I had been so unfriendly to Joe. I hurried outside, hoping to call him back, but it was too late. I could not see him anywhere.

I decided to go home the following day. Although I thought of staying with Joe, I told myself that a room would not be ready for me at the blacksmith's.

I told myself that it would be better for Joe if I stayed at a hotel instead, so I found one near Miss Havisham's house.

As I was waiting to leave London on the **coach**<sup>(4)</sup>, I saw two convicts standing nearby. They wore leg-irons and handcuffs; their guard had a gun. I recognised one of the convicts immediately. It was the man who had given me a shiny new coin at the village inn a long time ago. I hoped that he would not recognise me. After all, I was older now, and dressed like a gentleman!

When the coach arrived, the two convicts and their guard climbed up, sitting just behind me. I tried not to look at them, but I could not avoid their conversation.



(3) بمودة  
(4) عربة ركاب

(1) معلم/مرشد  
(2) تمسك بـ



'When I first went to prison,' I heard the first convict saying. 'I was only inside for a few months. When I was told that I could leave, another convict, Magwitch, asked me to help him. He wanted me to find a boy who had helped him, years before when he had escaped and was hiding on the marshes. Magwitch didn't know me then, but he gave me a **shiny**<sup>(1)</sup> new coin to give to that boy, if I ever found him. And I did!'

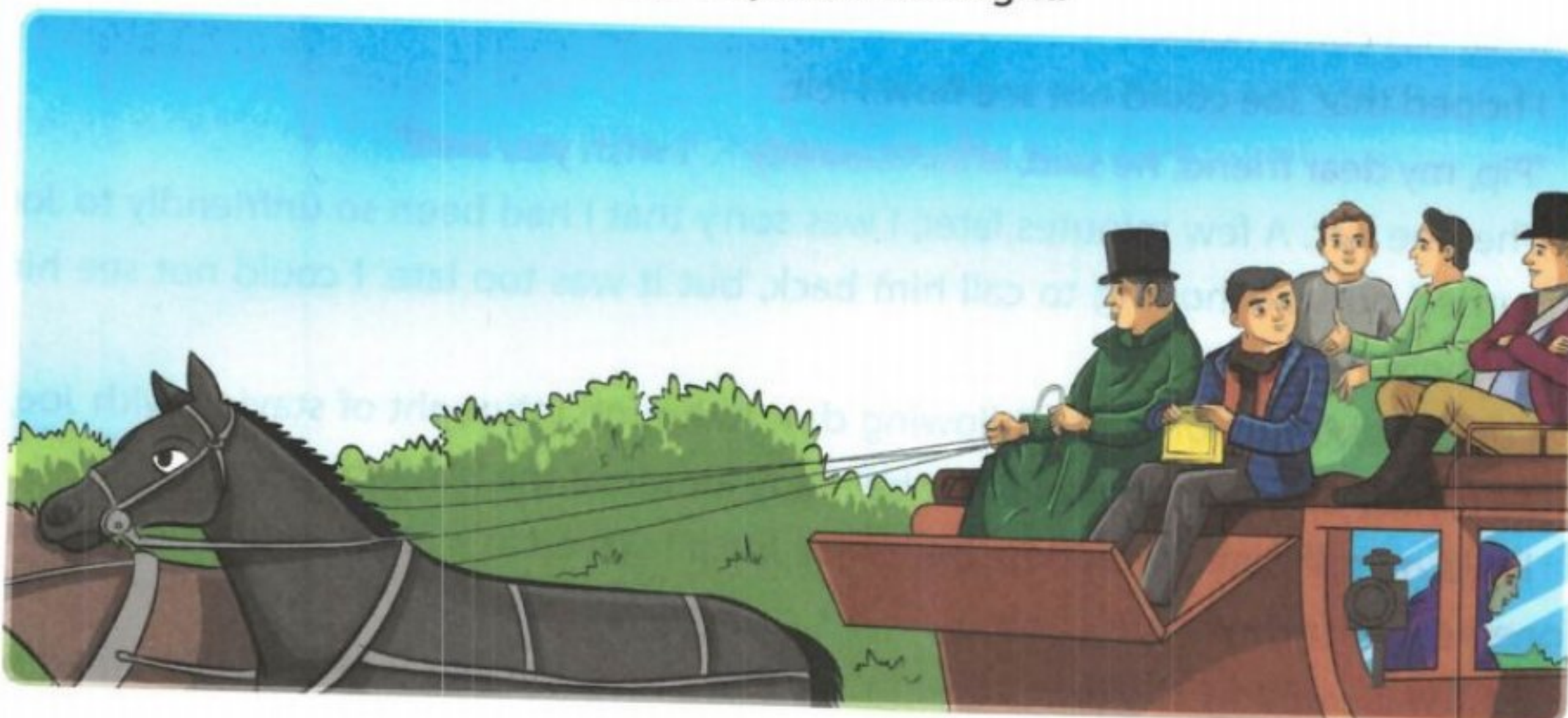
'So the convict I gave the food and file to, all those years ago, is called Magwitch!' I thought.

'Huh!' said the second convict. 'Magwitch **trusted**<sup>(2)</sup> you then, did he?'

'Yes, he did,' the first convict replied. 'But he didn't know me very well.'

'Magwitch got a **life sentence**<sup>(3)</sup> for that escape, you know!' the guard said.

Memories **came back to haunt me**<sup>(4)</sup>, and I was scared. I got off the coach as soon as I could, and walked the rest of the way. It was late when I arrived at the hotel. I was feeling very tired, but I didn't sleep very well that night.



(3) حكم مؤبد  
(4) عادت تطاردني

(1) لامع  
(2) وثق بـ



## Questions & Answers

### (A) Factual questions:

1. Who did Mr Jaggers invite to dinner?

من الذى دعاه السيد جاجرز للعشاء؟

He invited Pip and his colleagues, Herbert, Startop and Drummle.

2. Mr Jaggers appeared to be miserly. Discuss.

يبدو أن السيد جاجرز بخيل. ناقش.

There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, but Mr Jaggers kept everything at his side, and served them himself.

3. Who was Mr Jaggers interested in during the dinner? How?

بمن كان السيد جاجرز مهتمًا أثناء العشاء؟ كيف؟

He was interested in Bentley Drummle. Mr Jaggers spent a lot of time looking at Drummle. He talked to Drummle for a long time.

4. What happened when Drummle started boasting about his strength?

ماذا حدث عندما بدأ درمل فى التباهى بقوته؟

They started talking boastfully as well. The conversation became a competition to show who had the best skills.

5. Who was Molly? Describe her.

من كانت مولى؟ صفها.

She was Mr Jaggers' housekeeper. She was tall and thin, with pale eyes and long hair.

6. What did Mr Jaggers ask Molly to do when she entered?

ماذا طلب السيد جاجرز من مولى أن تفعل عندما دخلت؟

He asked her to show them her wrists. One of her wrists had terrible scars on it; it must have been cut badly in the past.

7. Does Pip enjoy dinner at Mr Jagger's house? Why?

(WB)

هل يستمتع بيب بالعشاء فى منزل السيد جاجرز؟ لماذا؟

No. He doesn't like the way Drummle behaves, or the way he himself behaves in Drummle's company.

8. What did Mr Jaggers advise Pip at the end of the dinner?

بماذا نصح السيد جاجرز بيب فى نهاية العشاء؟

He advised him to keep away from Drummle.

9. Why did Biddy write the letter to Pip?

(WB)

لماذا كتبت بيدي الرسالة إلى بيب؟

Biddy wrote to Pip to tell him that Joe was coming to London.



10. What did Pip think of Joe's visit?

ماذا كان رأى بيب فى زيارة جو؟

He wished that he could pay Joe not to come as he was ashamed of him then.

11. How did Joe behave during his visit to Pip's lodgings?

كيف تصرف جو أثناء زيارته لمسكن بيب؟

He looked very uncomfortable and he remained standing. He held on to his hat nervously.

12. How did Joe behave at breakfast?

كيف تصرف جو فى وجبة الإفطار؟

He coughed too much, sat too far away from the table, and dropped food everywhere.

13. Why did Joe come to visit Pip in London?

لماذا جاء جو لزيارة بيب فى لندن؟

He came to tell him that Miss Havisham wanted to see him and wanted him to know that Estella had come home.

14. When Pip went to see Miss Havisham, where did he plan to stay?

عندما ذهب بيب لرؤية الأنسة هافيشام، أين كان يخطط للإقامة؟

He planned to stay at a hotel near Miss Havisham's house.

15. Who was with Pip while waiting for the coach?

من كان مع بيب أثناء انتظار الحافلة؟

He saw two convicts standing nearby. They wore leg-irons and handcuffs; their guard had a gun.

16. Why was Pip uncomfortable at the coach?

لماذا كان بيب غير مرتاح على الحافلة؟

Because he knew one of the convicts. He was the man who had given Pip a shiny new coin at the village inn a long time ago.

17. How was Pip surprised by the talk between the two men at the coach?

كيف فوجئ بيب بالحديث بين الرجلين على الحافلة؟

When they talked, Pip knew that the convict he helped at the marshes was called Magwitch and he got a life sentence for his escape.

18. Why did Pip get off the coach and walk to the hotel?

(WB)

لماذا نزل بيب من الحافلة وسار إلى الفندق؟

Because he wanted to get away from the two convicts on the coach.

### (B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Pip, would you enjoy Mr Jaggers' dinner?

لو كنت مكان بيب، هل كنت ستستمتع بعشاء السيد جاجرز؟

No, I wouldn't. The subject of the conversation at dinner was boasting which was unpleasant.

2. What do you think of Mr Jaggers' treatment of Molly?

ما رأيك فى معاملة السيد جاجرز لمولى؟

I think he treated her badly. She even looked anxious when she talked to him.



3. Why do you think Mr Jaggers asked Molly to show the young men her wrists?  
لماذا تعتقد أن السيد جاجرز طلب من مولي إظهار معصميهما للشباب؟

I think he wanted to laugh at their boasting about their strength.

4. Was Pip right to feel ashamed of Joe when he visited him at Bernard Inn? Why?  
هل كان بيب محقاً في الشعور بالخجل من جو عندما زاره في برنارد إن؟ لماذا؟

No, he wasn't. Joe was a kind man who always loved and cared for him.

5. What do you think of Herbert's treatment of Joe?

ما رأيك في معاملة هربرت لجو؟

It proves that he is really a kind man as he cared for helping the poor man who didn't know how to behave as a gentleman.

6. Why do you think Joe called Pip 'Sir'?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن جو كان يدعو بيب «سيدى»؟

Because Joe now views Pip as a gentleman and feels uncomfortable around him.

7. If you were Pip, would you stay in Joe's house on visiting Miss Havisham? Why?

إذا كنت بيب، فهل ستبقى في منزل جو عند زيارة الأنسة هافيشام؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I would. This would be like an apology to the kind man for the bad treatment he received in London.

8. Should Pip apologise to Joe for his treatment? Why?

هل يجب أن يعتذر بيب لجو عن معاملته؟ لماذا؟

Yes, he should. He treated him coldly although the man had always been kind and helpful to him.

9. Do you think it was right to transport convicts in a public coach?

هل تعتقد أنه كان من الصواب نقل المحكوم عليهم في حافلة عامة؟

No, I think they should be transported in a special couch for more protection and safety.

10. Why do you think Magwitch wanted to give the money to Pip?

لماذا تعتقد أن ماجويتش أراد أن يعطي المال لبيب؟

I think he wanted to repay Pip for his previous support to him.

11. If you were Pip, would you get off the coach on hearing the convicts' conversation? Why?

إذا كنت بيب، فهل ستنزل من الحافلة عند سماع محادثة المدانين؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I would. Staying on the coach would be dangerous especially if the man had recognised Pip.

12. Why do you think Pip did not sleep well after getting off the coach?

(WB)

لماذا تعتقد أن بيب لم ينام جيداً بعد النزول من العربة؟

Pip did not sleep well because he was anxious having learnt of Magwitch's life sentence.



(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He was ..... that the weather would not improve in time for the party.  
a) keen                      b) relieved                      c) cooled                      d) anxious
- 2 Mrs Hanan is always ..... about how wonderful her children are.  
a) boasting                      b) priding                      c) pasting                      d) blasting
- 3 Make sure you wind يلف that bandage tightly around your ..... so that it doesn't move.  
a) wrath                      b) wrest                      c) wrist                      d) wrap
- 4 Mona wore a dress with long ..... at the meeting this morning.  
a) slaves                      b) sleeves                      c) salivas                      d) sleets
- 5 He has a large ..... on his arm from a cut he got while working in a logging camp last summer.  
a) scar                      b) star                      c) spar                      d) spat
- 6 Mr Ali has a ..... memory. He has the ability to remember things in great detail after seeing them.  
a) remarkable                      b) regrettable                      c) removable                      d) reusable
- 7 The teacher is going to explain the lesson at the ..... of a lot of students.  
a) requirement                      b) inquiry                      c) request                      d) ability
- 8 The boat sank and all the crew drowned except the young sailor, who held ..... some floating wood.  
a) out                      b) onto                      c) out on                      d) off
- 9 After the criminal was arrested, he was sent to prison for a ..... sentence.  
a) life                      b) death                      c) living                      d) dead
- 10 Investing all your money in one place and losing it is an error that would come back to ..... you for years to come.  
a) catch                      b) hatch                      c) hunt                      d) haunt
- 11 Ali cleaned and polished his new leather shoes. They look very ..... now.  
a) shone                      b) shine                      c) shiny                      d) light
- 12 The ..... were clapping for 10 minutes after the play ended.  
a) directors                      b) audience                      c) guards                      d) crew
- 13 There were two security ..... on duty outside the building.  
a) nets                      b) fences                      c) gaps                      d) guards



14 My father smiled ..... at me.

(Longman)

- a) affectionately
- c) foolish

- b) foolishly
- d) affectionate

15 The prisoner was given a life ..... for his crimes.

(Longman)

a) insistence

b) sentence

c) tolerance

d) negligence

16 This research was done ..... the request of the science teacher.

(Longman)

a) from

b) at

c) in

d) for

17 He used to talk proudly about his possessions. He ..... about how much money he had made.

(Longman)

a) complained

b) told

c) boasted

d) beat

18 She is ..... about the project; she speaks about its benefits all the time.

(Longman)

a) kind

b) worried

c) angry

d) enthusiastic

19 When a criminal is arrested, the police put handcuffs on their .....

(WB)

a) wrists

b) knees

c) legs

d) ankles

20 I've just cleaned and polished my new black leather shoes. Look at how ..... they are!

(SB)

a) fixed

b) dim

c) shiny

d) dull

21 We were feeling ..... while we were waiting to get our exam results in case we hadn't done very well.

(WB)

a) arrogant

b) boastful

c) remarkable

d) anxious

22 It's ..... how popular that app has become. Nobody expected it!

(SB)

a) cheerful

b) remarkable

c) boring

d) patient

23 I sometimes wear T-shirts with long ..... in winter.

(SB)

a) collars

b) sleeves

c) sides

d) lengths

24 Wael has a ..... on his knee from an operation.

(WB)

a) sign

b) star

c) scar

d) signal

25 He is very ..... about tennis. He is always talking about it.

(SB)

a) pessimistic

b) enthusiastic

c) optimistic

d) affectionate



**(B) Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were Pip, would you start boasting about your skills just as the other gentlemen did in the dinner? Why?
2. Do you think that Mr Jaggers should have asked Molly to show the gentlemen her wrists?
3. Can you think of a reason why Mr Jaggers advised Pip to keep away from Drummle?
4. What do you think of Mr Jaggers' treatment of the three young men at the dinner?
5. If you were Joe, would you expect Pip's cold behaviour with you in London? Why?
6. Why do you think Joe felt embarrassed when he had breakfast with Pip and Herbert?
7. Pip said he wished to pay Joe not to come to visit him. Do you agree with that? Why?
8. If you were Pip, would you apologise to Joe for the cold behaviour with him? Why?
9. Was Pip right to stay at a hotel and refuse to stay at Joe's house on visiting Miss Havisham? Why?
10. Why do you think Miss Havisham wanted Pip to know that Estella had come home?
11. Do you think that it is polite of the young men to look at Molly's hurt wrists? Why?
12. If you were Pip, would you ask the convict at the couch to tell you more about Magwitch?



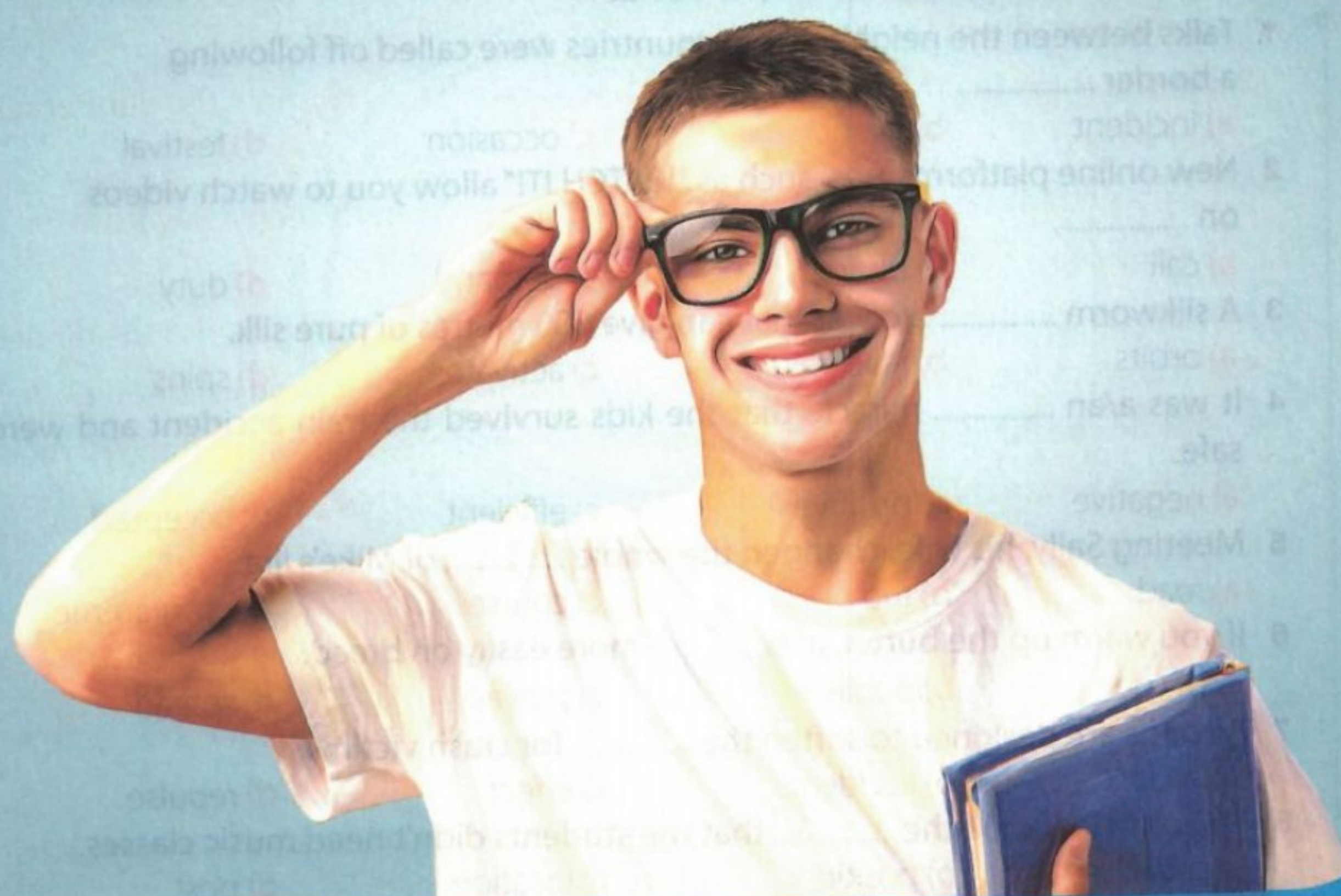
## تطبيق الأضواء

**سنتر الأضواء** احجز دروسك التفاعلية مع  
نخبة من أفضل المدرسين بأسعار مميزة  
وخصومات حصرية لطلاب الأضواء.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:  
[www.aladwaa.com](http://www.aladwaa.com)







# Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises Answers



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Talks between the neighbouring countries were called off following a border .....  
a) incident                      b) event                      c) occasion                      d) festival
- 2 New online platforms منصّات such as "WATCH IT!" allow you to watch videos on .....  
a) call                      b) offer                      c) demand                      d) duty
- 3 A silkworm ..... a cover that can give 800 metres of pure silk.  
a) orbits                      b) revolves                      c) activates                      d) spins
- 4 It was a/an ..... miracle that the kids survived the train accident and were safe.  
a) negative                      b) positive                      c) efficient                      d) accepted
- 5 Meeting Sally, his wife, changed the whole ..... of Mike's life.  
a) road                      b) trip                      c) course                      d) programme
- 6 If you warm up the butter, it'll ..... more easily on bread.  
a) divide                      b) publish                      c) prevail                      d) spread
- 7 Airbags are designed to soften the ..... for crash victims.  
a) impact                      b) accident                      c) effect                      d) repulse
- 8 The principal took the ..... that the students didn't need music classes.  
a) situation                      b) position                      c) location                      d) post
- 9 My younger sister has a marked ..... for learning languages.  
a) bias                      b) balance                      c) present                      d) award
- 10 I don't think your operating system ..... that version of the program anymore.  
a) assists                      b) supports                      c) defies                      d) replies
- 11 I sold my flat last week. I ..... it since I graduated from university.  
a) was having                      b) had                      c) have had                      d) had had
- 12 When we ..... at the forest, it ..... darker.  
a) have arrived/has been getting                      b) arrived/was getting  
c) arrive/is getting                      d) arrive/has been getting
- 13 A few years ago, it ..... that certain cells of the human body never .....  
a) was found/die                      b) had been found/dies  
c) has been found/died                      d) was found/dies
- 14 I just wish they ..... here to see me now.  
a) are                      b) had been                      c) were                      d) will be
- 15 Since his mother ..... ill, he will clean the flat for her.  
a) is                      b) was being                      c) had been                      d) was
- 16 A: 'Do you mind if I smoke?' B: 'Well, I'd rather you .....  
a) don't                      b) didn't                      c) aren't                      d) hadn't



- 17 She does not speak our language, yet she seems to understand what we say.  
"Yet" here means .....  
a) so far      b) because      c) but      d) till now
- 18 She hasn't talked to her neighbours since the police .....  
a) interviewing      b) interviewed      c) was interviewed      d) interview
- 19 I have written stories ..... as long as I can remember.  
a) for      b) since      c) when      d) until
- 20 Things have certainly changed; there ..... lots of small old houses around here when I ..... young.  
a) are/have been      b) would be/was  
c) were/would have been      d) used to be/was

## Unit (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Fluency in three languages can ..... you for work in a foreign company.  
a) reward      b) retrain      c) qualify      d) mature
- 2 Ferial Ashraf is a brave, young woman who ..... hope in everyone she meets.  
a) accepts      b) inspires      c) aspires      d) intends
- 3 Children like to have all kinds of juice through a .....  
a) hay      b) straw      c) barrow      d) stick
- 4 My uncle runs a farm that sells only fresh and organic local .....  
a) produces      b) products      c) productive      d) producers
- 5 Only 10 percent of trainees fail to make the ..... on the course the company offers.  
a) access      b) certificate      c) degree      d) grade
- 6 The new law will help small businesses to compete on ..... terms with large multinational corporations.  
a) straight      b) twisted      c) equal      d) wealthy
- 7 The customer service department ..... the client into withdrawing his complaint.  
a) fought      b) accepted      c) agreed      d) argued
- 8 Sami will be able to run his inherited company when he reaches his ..... age.  
a) majority      b) minority      c) priority      d) superiority
- 9 The workers are unhappy with this year's pay ..... They wanted it to be higher.  
a) prize      b) award      c) present      d) trophy
- 10 We finally made it through the bureaucratic ..... course and got our visas.  
a) academic      b) practical      c) obstacle      d) training
- 11 Did you know that Hady ..... behind because of his bad behaviour?  
a) had left      b) has left      c) had been leaving      d) had been left



- Unit (3)

- 1 My grandfather is very active for a man ..... seventy years of age.  
a) missing                  b) losing                  c) leaving                  d) approaching
- 2 Some vitamins are very beneficial to strengthen your nervous ..... such as Vitamin B.  
a) system                  b) process                  c) formula                  d) procedure
- 3 There's so much to learn about the universe. I feel like we've only scratched the ..... .  
a) depth                  b) roof                  c) surface                  d) layer
- 4 The old businessman is ..... by his wife and two sons to whom he left his money.  
a) attached                  b) survived                  c) recovered                  d) prescribed
- 5 Our maths teacher is used to calling the class ..... to know who is absent.  
a) roll                  b) menu                  c) role                  d) jury



- 6 All wooden roofs must be ..... with a waterproof sealant to protect it against rain.  
a) treated      b) healed      c) cured      d) salinized
- 7 The number of people claiming unemployment ..... fell last month.  
a) pay      b) fare      c) tax      d) benefit
- 8 Naguib Mahfouz had a very ..... style of writing which is still admired everywhere.  
a) team      b) individual      c) vague      d) unclear
- 9 This photo first appeared in the 20<sup>th</sup> ..... of "National Geographic".  
a) value      b) case      c) issue      d) trial
- 10 The mountain climber narrowly ..... death in an avalanche in the Alps.  
a) yielded      b) cheated      c) caught      d) escaped
- 11 By this time tomorrow, the scientist ..... through space for nineteen hours.  
a) is going to fly      b) will fly  
c) will be flying      d) will have been flying
- 12 Next weekend, I ..... my proficiency exam, so I ..... more or less 300 questions so far.  
a) am going to have/finished      b) am having/will finish  
c) am having/will have finished      d) will have/have finished
- 13 The team is determined not to leave ..... they have finished the project.  
a) since      b) by the time      c) until      d) when
- 14 Scientists expect that by 2050, doctors ..... the people suffering from certain illness during their space travel in space.  
a) will be treating      b) are treated  
c) had treated      d) will have been treating
- 15 The young soldier ..... that he ..... in the battle.  
a) fears/is killed      b) fears/will be killed  
c) has feared/is killed      d) feared/was killed
- 16 He has promised his mother ..... the dinner once a week.  
a) will cook      b) to have cooked      c) would cook      d) to cook
- 17 They expected the bridge ..... by next October.  
a) to have built      b) will have built  
c) to have been built      d) would have built
- 18 Work ..... on a new factory building soon.  
a) started      b) is about to start      c) would start      d) will be starting
- 19 His new book ..... next year.  
a) is due to be published      b) will have been published  
c) will publish      d) will be publishing
- 20 After I read this story, I ..... all Taha Hussein's novels.  
a) will read      b) am going to read      c) will be reading      d) will have read



## Unit (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The hard-working clerk was ..... from head director to manager in a few years.  
a) developed      b) offered      c) risen      d) promoted
- 2 Most of the country's industry is ..... in the north.  
a) related      b) appeared      c) concentrated      d) interested
- 3 The young actress is very ..... about her clothes and chooses the best of them.  
a) particular      b) private      c) general      d) public
- 4 All the bad young men ..... off when they heard the police siren.  
a) cleaned      b) cleared      c) crawled      d) attacked
- 5 Humans believe that they are the only creatures to have the power of .....  
a) cause      b) explanation      c) reason      d) justification
- 6 After the show, all the models stood ..... their lips for the camera.  
a) pouting      b) clapping      c) biting      d) deploying
- 7 As she is taller than her mother, Waffaa had her mother's dress ..... to wear it for a special occasion.  
a) changed      b) altered      c) shortened      d) torn
- 8 Mother told my little brother and sister that she wanted them to be on their best ..... at the party.  
a) structure      b) action      c) behaviour      d) duty
- 9 Fuel cells provide electricity generated by a chemical ..... between hydrogen and oxygen.  
a) intention      b) depiction      c) reflection      d) reaction
- 10 When the tourists arrive at the hotel, the manager will be in the lobby to check the ..... tasks of the day himself.  
a) custom      b) routine      c) customer      d) technical
- 11 Ibrahim ..... for the company since he left university.  
a) was working      b) is working  
c) works      d) has been working
- 12 The supermarket ..... at 10:00 in the morning every day.  
a) is opening      b) opens      c) open      d) opened
- 13 There's no point leaving now; the film ..... by the time we reach the cinema.  
a) was starting      b) going to start      c) will have started      d) had started
- 14 This cake ..... wonderful!  
a) tastes      b) is tasting      c) taste      d) tasteful
- 15 My father didn't ..... live in a big city.  
a) used to      b) use to      c) used      d) get used to
- 16 I don't think that Samy has ..... travelled on a plane.  
a) yet      b) never      c) still      d) ever



- 17 Tamer ..... to be falling asleep at his desk.  
 a) appears      b) was appearing      c) is appearing      d) appear
- 18 Jehan ..... already cleaned the kitchen by the time her mother got home.  
 a) has      b) was      c) had      d) is
- 19 He ..... a bath when the doorbell rang.  
 a) had      b) is having      c) has      d) was having
- 20 Ramy is my closest friend - we ..... each other for a long time.  
 a) have been knowing      b) have known  
 c) knew      d) know

## Unit (5)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 I didn't want to get ..... up in endless arguments about this subject.  
 a) brought      b) caught      c) lost      d) released
- 2 We arranged to meet at 7.30, but Reda never ..... up saying he was busy.  
 a) played      b) returned      c) turned      d) caught
- 3 A spokesperson ..... to comment on the cause of the train accident.  
 a) declined      b) decreased      c) diminished      d) increased
- 4 Some diseases can be ..... from animals to humans and the vice versa.  
 a) spoken      b) contacted      c) linked      d) communicated
- 5 I missed my favourite team's match, but I saw the ..... on the evening news.  
 a) icons      b) defects      c) highlights      d) aspects
- 6 Since her husband travelled abroad, Mary has had trouble keeping her teenage sons in .....  
 a) law      b) order      c) arrangement      d) request
- 7 The dry cleaners at our neighbourhood offer a normal or a/an ..... service.  
 a) express      b) impress      c) repress      d) oppress
- 8 The Statue of Liberty has become an American cultural .....  
 a) clip      b) icon      c) flag      d) inferior
- 9 The book explains the complex historical ..... to the Second World War.  
 a) playground      b) result      c) background      d) research
- 10 School teachers say that the internet has become one of the important reasons for the ..... in student performance.  
 a) influence      b) impact      c) jump      d) slide
- 11 My father is too busy ..... his relatives every week.  
 a) visiting      b) visit      c) visits      d) to visit
- 12 As he had a serious illness, he was advised ..... by a specialist in medicine.  
 a) to see      b) to be seen      c) seeing      d) being seen



- 13 When I saw a man ..... in my neighbour's flat, he ran away.  
a) break                      b) broke                      c) breaking                      d) to break
- 14 Ahmed was the first one who ..... to the meeting.  
a) came                      b) to come                      c) coming                      d) come
- 15 Although he allows me to smoke in his home, he doesn't allow ..... in the office.  
a) to smoke                      b) smoking                      c) to smoking                      d) us smoke
- 16 This pen is used to ..... on wood.  
a) be written                      b) being written                      c) writing                      d) write
- 17 "He can't help thinking about the past" means that .....  
a) he wants to think about the past, but he can't  
b) he never thinks about the past as it was dreadful  
c) he always thinks about the past and can't change it  
d) he wants someone to help him think about the past
- 18 Dieting means ..... careful about which foods you buy.  
a) being                      b) to be                      c) to being                      d) be
- 19 They advise that a passport ..... with you at all times.  
a) being carried                      b) be carried                      c) to be carried                      d) to carry
- 20 She insisted ..... a suit to attend the wedding.  
a) he wearing                      b) to wear                      c) on him wearing                      d) on him to wear

## Unit (6)

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1 The photographer wasn't able to ..... the camera well while covering the street fight.  
a) control                      b) manage                      c) focus                      d) distract
- 2 The naughty boy is very impatient and always ..... his teachers in their mid-sentence.  
a) disturbs                      b) interrupts                      c) annoys                      d) heckles
- 3 Samy was taken to ..... for not finishing his reports in time.  
a) task                      b) duty                      c) work                      d) job
- 4 The Minister of Transport said that several road projects are now in ..... and will be completed soon.  
a) practice                      b) breakthrough                      c) advance                      d) progress
- 5 I learned most of what I know about gardening through trial and .....  
a) accident                      b) coincidence                      c) error                      d) misprint
- 6 By law, you must comply with the terms as ..... in any contract you sign.  
a) stated                      b) decided                      c) hidden                      d) announced



- 7 Our officers have to concentrate 100 per cent on the task in .....  
 a) research      b) inspection      c) advance      d) hand
- 8 I admired Amira's confidence, not to ..... the fact that she was intelligent and well spoken.  
 a) speak      b) refer      c) mention      d) advertise
- 9 The sniper قناص took ..... at the soldier, but he was surprised by aircraft over his head.  
 a) gun      b) objective      c) goal      d) aim
- 10 Some kinds of diseases are not ..... to animals; it can be passed on to humans.  
 a) specific      b) private      c) public      d) infectious
- 11 You are always free. Haven't you got anything .....?  
 a) do      b) done      c) to do      d) doing
- 12 I had a hard time ..... his house as it was dark and there was no one to ask.  
 a) finding      b) find      c) to found      d) found
- 13 You should ..... the car ..... last week.  
 a) have/repared      b) make/repair  
 c) have had/repared      d) had/repared
- 14 A: Did someone really write those words on the wall?  
 B: Yes, I actually saw them ..... on the wall.  
 a) to write      b) writing  
 c) to be written      d) written
- 15 A: Did they play that song on the radio?  
 B: Well, I heard it ..... on the radio this morning.  
 a) play      b) played  
 c) playing      d) to be played
- 16 Come in now. I'm sorry ..... you waiting so long.  
 a) to have kept      b) to have got  
 c) to have let      d) to have had
- 17 Every half hour he stops work ..... a cigarette.  
 a) smoking      b) from smoking  
 c) to smoke      d) smoke
- 18 If you don't mind, we will have the car ..... tomorrow.  
 a) being serviced      b) to service  
 c) servicing      d) service



### Unit 1

1. a) incident  
- border incident هنا بمعنى (أزمة حدودية).
2. c) demand  
- on demand هنا بمعنى (عند الطلب).
3. d) spins  
- spin هنا بمعنى (يفزل خيوطًا).
4. b) positive  
- positive هنا بمعنى (أكيد).
5. c) course  
- course هنا بمعنى (مسار الحياة).
6. d) spread  
- spread هنا بمعنى (يمكن فردة على خبز).
7. a) impact  
- impact هنا بمعنى (اصطدام).
8. b) position  
- position هنا بمعنى (رأي/انطباع/وجهة نظر).
9. a) bias  
- bias هنا بمعنى (موهبة فطرية).
10. b) supports  
- support بمعنى (يدعم/يمكنه تشغيل ملف في كمبيوتر أو تليفون محمول).
11. d) had had
12. b) arrived/was getting
13. a) was found/die
14. c) were
15. a) is
16. b) didn't
17. c) but
18. d) interview
19. a) for
20. d) used to be/was

### Unit 2

1. c) qualify  
- qualify هنا بمعنى (يؤهل لمكانة أو وظيفة).
2. b) inspires  
- inspire hope هنا بمعنى (يوحى/يعطى شعورا بالأمل).
3. b) straw  
- straw هنا بمعنى (شفافة).
4. a) produces  
- produce بمعنى (إنتاج زراعي).
5. d) grade  
- make the grade هنا بمعنى (يفي بالشروط).
6. c) equal  
- on equal terms هنا بمعنى (على قدم المساواة/متساو مع).
7. d) argued  
- argue into هنا بمعنى (يقنع بفعل شيء).
8. a) majority  
- age of majority هنا بمعنى (سن البلوغ).
9. b) award  
- award هنا بمعنى (زيادة منتظمة في أجر/مرتب).
10. c) obstacle  
- bureaucratic obstacle هنا بمعنى (عقبة روتينية بيروقراطية).
11. d) had been left
12. b) was listening
13. c) the police chased him
14. a) had gone
15. c) hadn't taken
16. d) both a & b
17. b) played
18. c) has been working
19. a) Had you really never seen
20. c) had always thought



### Unit 3

1. d) approached  
- approach هنا بمعنى (يقترب من)
2. a) system  
- system بمعنى (أحد أجهزة الجسم)
3. c) surface  
- scratch the surface هنا بمعنى (يخدش/يتعامل مع السطح (القدر القليل من)
4. b) survived  
- survive بمعنى (يعيش بعد وفاة أحد الأقارب)
5. a) roll  
- roll هنا بمعنى (قائمة أسماء)
6. a) treated  
- treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج بمادة كيميائية)
7. d) benefit  
- unemployment benefit هنا بمعنى (إعانة بطالة)
8. b) individual  
- individual هنا بمعنى (متميز).
9. c) issue  
- issue هنا بمعنى (طبعة/إصدار).
10. d) escaped  
- escape death هنا بمعنى (ينجو من الموت).
11. d) will have been flying
12. d) will have/have finished
13. c) until
14. a) will be treating
15. b) fears/will be killed
16. d) to cook
17. c) to have been built
18. b) is about to start
19. a) is due to be published
20. d) will have read

### Unit 4

1. d) promoted  
- promote هنا بمعنى (يرقى إلى وظيفة أعلى).
2. c) concentrated  
- concentrated هنا بمعنى (مركز في مكان محدد).
3. a) particular  
- particular هنا بمعنى (شديد الحرص على).
4. b) cleared  
- clear off بمعنى (يختفى).
5. c) reason  
- reason هنا بمعنى (العقل).
6. a) pouting  
- pout هنا بمعنى (يأخذ وضعا معينا أمام الكاميرا).
7. b) altered  
- alter هنا بمعنى (يجعل قطعة ملابس أطول).
8. c) behaviour  
- on their best behaviour هنا بمعنى (يتصرف بأدب شديد).
9. d) reaction  
- chemical reaction هنا بمعنى (تفاعل كيميائي).
10. b) routine  
- routine task هنا بمعنى (مهام يومية روتينية).
11. d) has been working
12. b) opens
13. c) will have started
14. a) tastes
15. b) use to
16. d) ever
17. a) appears
18. c) had
19. d) was having
20. b) have known



## Unit 5

1. **b)** caught  
- **get caught up in** هنا بمعنى (يتورط، في).
2. **c)** turned  
- **turn up** بمعنى (يحضر).
3. **a)** declined  
- **decline** هنا بمعنى (يرفض).
4. **d)** communicated  
- **communicate** هنا بمعنى (ينقل مرض).
5. **c)** highlights  
- **highlights** هنا بمعنى (اللقطات البارزة/الهامة من).
6. **b)** order  
- **in order** بمعنى (منظم/متبع للقواعد).
7. **a)** express  
- **express** هنا بمعنى (سريع).
8. **b)** icon  
- **become an icon** هنا بمعنى (يصبح أحد الأيقونات/العلامات في مجال).
9. **c)** background  
- **historical background** هنا بمعنى (الخلفية التاريخية).
10. **d)** slide  
- **slide** هنا بمعنى (انخفاض).
11. **d)** to visit
12. **b)** to be seen
13. **c)** breaking
14. **a)** came
15. **b)** smoking
16. **d)** write
17. **c)** he always thinks about the past and can't change it.
18. **a)** being
19. **b)** be carried
20. **c)** on him wearing

## Unit 6

1. **c)** focus  
- **focus** هنا بمعنى (يركز أشعة الشمس).
2. **b)** interrupts  
- **interrupt** هنا بمعنى (يقاطع أثناء الكلام).
3. **a)** task  
- تستخدم **(be) taken to task** هنا بمعنى (يتعرض للوم أو التوبيخ).
4. **d)** progress  
- **in progress** بمعنى (مستمر/متقدم).
5. **c)** error  
- **trial and error** هنا بمعنى (التجربة والخطأ).
6. **a)** stated  
- **stated** هنا بمعنى (محدد/معلن/مطبوع).
7. **d)** hand  
- **in hand** هنا بمعنى (يتم التعامل معه).
8. **c)** mention  
- تستخدم **not to mention** بمعنى (ناهيك عن/مع إغفال).
9. **d)** aim  
- **aim** هنا بمعنى (هدف للتصويب).
10. **a)** specific  
- **specific** هنا بمعنى (مقتصر على).
11. **c)** to do
12. **a)** finding
13. **c)** have had/repared
14. **d)** written
15. **b)** played
16. **a)** to have kept
17. **c)** to smoke
18. **d)** service